This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

due T 15 18.93-460

Harvard College Library

FROM

C. W. Sever & Co.

16 August, 1899.

3 2044 102 857 042

UL

MINIMUM
FRENCH GRAMMAR AND READER

WITH

EXERCISES AND GRADED SELECTIONS FOR READING AND DICTATION, AND REVIEW EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION INTO FRENCH

BY

EDWARD S. JOYNES, M.A.

Professor in South Carolina College

THIRD EDITION, REVISED

WITH EXERCISES IN CONVERSATION

NEW YORK

HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

F. W. CHRISTERN

BOSTON: CARL SCHOENHOF

Educ T 1518.93.460

C 3215

Harvard College Library
Gift of
C. W. Sever & Co.
Aug. 16, 1899.

COPYRIGHT, 1898,
BY
HENRY HOLT & Co.

ROBERT DRUMMOND, ELECTROTYPER AND PRINTER, NEW YORK.

To

Dr. M. Schele De Vere

In Commemoration of Fifty Years

Of Unbroken Service

As Professor of Modern Languages

University of Virginia

1844–1894

PREFACE.

THE purpose of this book is briefly indicated in its title. It is, to compress within the minimum of space, time, and labor the essentials of French, necessary as preparation for reading. There is now a general *consensus*—among teachers of whatever creed—in favor of reducing the introductory work in grammar; and the multitude of helpful editions, now accessible in every style of literature, render elaborate introductory Readers no longer necessary. This little book attempts to combine the essentials of Grammar and of Reader, within the briefest compass.

It is assumed that (under whatever ulterior method) the first and chief object in learning French, etc., is *to read it:* after this all other objects and methods become alike reasonable and easy. The effort has been made here to make the progress to *reading* as rapid and as easy as possible, consistently with such foundation of grammar as may insure intelligence and accuracy. For this purpose a double scheme of method has been adopted. Each chapter consists of two parts: one (*A*) pursues briefly the ordinary course of grammatical topics; the other (*B*) presents a continuous verb-lesson. For each division appropriate exercises and selections for reading are provided, with due (yet not excessive) help and suggestion. Thus at an early day the student is prepared to read intelligently, within definite limits; and these limits are constantly and rapidly enlarged.

In such an undertaking the difficult question is, of course, what to include, what to omit; how far to expand, how far to condense. Herein, naturally, no author may expect to satisfy all critics: he must be guided by his own experience and judgment. Within the first eighteen chapters, which comprehend the most essential forms, the treatment has been condensed and rapid; after that, as the topics seemed to require, it becomes somewhat more detailed, yet still within elementary limits. It is advised, therefore, that these eighteen chapters be dispatched as rapidly as possible. Then a review, with the Review Exercises (English-French), may be begun, and the rest of the grammar, except the irregular verbs, studied by reference only, until reached in the review.

The plan here indicated, of leaving all English-French exercises until some progress has been made in reading, the author believes to rest on sound theory and experience. Hence these exercises are placed at the end of the book; but they may be used equally from the first, by those who prefer to do so. No apology is needed for the elementary character of those exercises or of the Reading Exercises:—they are intended purely for grammatical and verbal practice—not as composition, nor as literature; nor need they all be used by any one class.

The Irregular Verbs should be begun, by selection, as soon as the regular verbs are learned, and systematically, as soon as practicable. No pains have been spared to make them easy both to learn and to remember. Here, and elsewhere occasionally, references to Latin are employed *for help*—but nowhere so as to confuse or obstruct the student who does not

know Latin. This feature of the book, it is hoped, may commend it in Latin schools.

Another feature, which the author hopes will be regarded as valuable, is the insistence, in the Selections and in the Vocabularies, upon the resemblances and differences in the French and English forms of kindred words. If this point is stressed by the teacher, the student soon masters the habitual relations of form, and lays a good foundation also for future studies in etymology.

The Pronunciation is placed, where it belongs, at the beginning, but with due help may be better studied along with the earliest grammar lessons than in a body beforehand. The directions given are intended to be simply helpful and approximate: only voice can teach voice. No attempt, however, is made at phonetic transliteration, because none is believed to be helpful in elementary work.

Finally, this little book, born as it is of long experience, claims no high ambition. Its aim is low, but large. To make quicker, easier, and more intelligible the earliest study of a language whose highest forms are the perfection of speech and of literature, is its humble but useful purpose. How far this is accomplished, others must judge.

SOUTH CAROLINA COLLEGE, July, 1893.

NOTE.—In the revised edition, besides occasional corrections and additions, there have been added a synoptical Table of Irregular Verb Forms, and a list of Verbs with the Infinitive.

ADDITIONAL NOTE.

To the present edition have been added some further simple exercises in pronunciation and, in compliance with express requests, also some exercises in conversation. But these are intended to be only suggestive; that is, to indicate how conversation may be based on the topic in hand. The essence of conversation is spontaneousness. So the teacher may always make and inspire conversation, but the book cannot. Hence only a few such exercises are given, as space allowed. It will—with any book—depend wholly on the teacher whether such exercises may be usefully pursued and extended.

August 27, 1896.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	Orthography, Syllables, etc.	1
II.	Pronunciation of Vowels	5
III.	Pronunciation of Consonants	9
IV.	Nasals, Liquids, Linking, Elision	13

A. TOPICAL.

V.	The Articles	17
VI.	Plural of Nouns	22
VII.	The Partitive	28
VIII.	Adjectives—Feminines	34
IX.	Adjectives — Position—Comparison: Syntax	40
X.	Pronouns — Personal, Disjunctive	47
XI.	Personal Pronouns, Conjunctive	55
XII.	**En, Y.** Complex Pronoun Objects	65
XIII.	The Possessives—Adjective and Pronoun	74
XIV.	The Demonstratives—Adjective and Pronoun	83
XV.	The Interrogatives—Adjective and Pronoun	90

B. VERB-LESSON.

Present of avoir, être	20
Regular Verbs—Present and Imperative	25
Selection 1. *Le Nil*	26
Regular Verbs — Imperfect and Preterit	31
Selection 2. *Le Lion*	32
Regular Verbs—Future and Conditional	37
Selection 3. *Les Sept Bâtons.*	38
Regular Verbs—Participles, Compound Tenses	44
Selection 4. *Un Soir d'Été*	46
Verbs — Interrogative and Negative	50
Selection 5. *Le Sansonnet*	54
Avoir. Conjugation—Idioms—Use as Auxiliary	58
Selection 6. *Le Bien Inattendu*	63
Être — Conjugation — Idioms; Use as Auxiliary	69
Selection 7. *La Mort de Cicéron*	72
Regular Verb Conjugations; Formation of Tenses	78
Selection 8. *Probité Scrupuleuse*	81
Orthography of Conj. I.	86
Selection 9. *La Bague Perdue*	88
Reflexive Verbs and Idioms	93
Selection 10. *La Nouvelle Fatale*	96

CHAPTER — PAGE

A. TOPICAL—*Continued.*

XVI. The Relatives . . . 97

XVII. The Indefinites—Adjective and Pronoun 105

XVIII. The Numerals. . . . 111

XIX. Numeral Idioms . . 117

XX. Adverbs 123

XXI. Prepositions . . . 131
Selection 16. *Mort de Sénèque* 132

XXII. Conjunctions . . . 138

XXIII. Compound Nouns and Adjectives — Special Plural Forms 144

XXIV. Gender of Nouns. . 155

B. VERB-LESSON—*Continued.*

Reflexive Verbs — Compound Tenses 100
Selection 11. *Malheureuse Aventure* 104

Impersonal Verbs and Idioms 109
Selection 12. *La Bastille* . . 110

The Passive—Idioms 115
Selection 13. *La Tour des Revenants* 116

The Participles—Syntax of Compound Tenses 120
Selection 14. *Le Lépreux* . . 122

Negatives 126
Selection 15. *Une Conversation* 130

The Infinitive 133

Indicative Tenses — Imperative 140
Selection 17. *Le Songe d'Athalie* 143

The Subjunctive Mood . . . 147

The Subjunctive—*Continued.* 156
Selection 18. *Le Subjonctif* . 161

XXV. Irregular Verbs—Introductory—Conj. I. 163

XXVI. Irregular Verbs, Conj. II 167

XXVII. Irregular Verbs, Conj. III. Verbs in -ire, -ore, -ure . 172

XXVIII. Irregular Verbs, Conj. III; -uire, -aire, -oire . . . 176

XXIX. Irregular Verbs, Conj. III; -re preceded by Consonant 179

XXX. Irregular Verbs in -oir 184

XXXI. Irregular Verbs in -oir 188

Alphabetical List of Irregular Verbs 191
Selection 19. *Le Chien de Brisquet* 193
Selection 20. *La Belle au Bois Dormant* 196

Review Exercises—For Translation into French 204

Appendix: I. Order of Words, . . 230 II. Auxiliary Idioms . . 232
III. Irregular Verb Forms, 233 IV. Infinitive after Verbs, 237

Vocabulary—French-English 241

Vocabulary—English-French 259

Index 275

MINIMUM
FRENCH GRAMMAR AND READER.

CHAPTER I.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

1. The Alphabet.

		Name.			Name.			Name.
A,	a,	*ah.*	J,	j,	*zhee.*	S,	s,	*ess.*
B,	b,	*bey.*	K,	k,	*kah.*	T,	t,	*tee.*
C,	c,	*sey.*	L,	l,	*ell.*	U,	u,	*u.*
D,	d,	*dey.*	M,	m,	*emm.*	V,	v,	*vey.*
E,	e,	*eh.*	N,	n,	*enn.*	W,	w,	*doobleh vey.*
F,	f,	*eff.*	O,	o,	*o.*			
G,	g,	*zhey.*	P,	p,	*pey.*	X,	x,	*ix.*
H,	h,	*ash.*	Q,	q,	*ku.*	Y,	y,	*ee grec.*
I,	i,	*ee.*	R,	r,	*err.*	Z,	z,	*zed.*

NOTE.—*K*, *k*, and *W*, *w*, occur only in foreign words.

ACCENTS.

2. The following written *accents* are employed :

a. The *acute* accent ('), used only over *e* ; as, **été**.

b. The *grave* accent (`), used also over *e*, and in a few cases over *a*, *u* ; as, **mère**, **là**, **où**.

c. The *circumflex* accent (^), used over all the vowels ; as, **âme**, **fête**, **île**, **dôme**, **dû**.

NOTE.—1. The circumflex accent usually marks contraction, arising from omission—most usually of *s*; as, **fête**, for **feste**, *feast*; **île**, for **isle**, *isle*; **âme** (Lat. *anima*), etc. Hence circumflex vowels are usually long.

2. But the circumflex, as also the grave, sometimes serves to distinguish like words; as, **dû** from **du**; **là** from **la**; **où** from **ou**; etc.

3. The accents are named in spelling a word, and must always be written—yet not usually over capitals, except E.

REMARK.—These accents, which are purely orthographic signs and of comparatively recent introduction, must not be confounded with "accent" meaning vocal stress.

OTHER ORTHOGRAPHIC SIGNS.

3. Other signs used in writing or printing are:

a. The *diæresis* (or *tréma*) (¨) marks the separation of two vowels in pronunciation; as, **haïr**, **noël**.

b. The *hyphen* (or *tiret*) (-) marks union, or close connection; as, **peut-être**, **a-t-il**.

c. The *cedilla* (*cédille*) (¸), under the letter *c*, gives to it the sound of *s*, when it would otherwise sound as *k*; as, **façade**, **ça**.

d. The *apostrophe* (') marks the omission of a vowel, usually at the end of a word before a following vowel or *mute h*. This omission is called *élision*.

The marks of *punctuation* are the same as in English.

NOTE.—**Capital Letters.**—Capital initials are less frequent than in English. The pronoun **je**, *I*; the names of months and days; most words used as titles, and proper adjectives (as French, Lutheran, etc.) do not begin with capitals—except, of course, at the beginning of a sentence or of a line of poetry.

SYLLABLES.—STRESS.

4. The general rules for the division of syllables are:

a. A consonant between two vowels is joined with the latter; as, **pro-ba-bi-li-té**, *prob-a-bil-i-ty*. It will be observed that this gives to the vowels a more open and distinct sound than in English.

b. Two consonants must be separated; as, **al-la, im-mor-tel, con-ta.** Except:

c. The liquids *l* and *r* preceded by a mute, also *gn*, *ll* when liquid, and the double consonants *ch*, *ph*, *th*, must not be separated; as, **sa-ble, sa-bre, vo-tre, ro-gnon, so-phis-te.**

d. Syllables ending with a vowel sound are called *open* syllables; those ending with a consonant sound are called *closed* syllables.

5. The vocal stress, or tonic accent, falls regularly on the last syllable that is fully pronounced; as, **re-tour′, con-cert′, re-ve-nu′, nou-vel′-le, par-don′-ne.** But the stress is, in general, far more uniform than in English.

REMARK.—The two features above noted (**4**, *a* and **5**) distinguish French utterance and intonation very sharply from English. Their importance will appear more fully hereafter.

QUANTITY.

6. The quantity of vowels—long or short—is not clearly defined in French. In general:

a. In a closed syllable (**4**, *d*) the vowel is short—hence usually before two consonants.

b. Vowels are long when circumflexed, or before *mute* **e.** Also, usually, before one consonant followed by *mute* **e.**

NOTE.—The terms long and short are, however, frequently used to mark the quality of the vowel, rather than quantity proper (see **8**). In general the value of any syllable in French depends rather on the tonic accent (**5**) than on quantity—as also in English.

SILENT LETTERS.

7. A chief difficulty in French pronunciation arises from the use of silent letters. The following cases are usual:

a. Final *e* (unaccented) is silent in words of more than one syllable.

b. Final consonants are generally silent.

NOTE.—1. This final *e*, though silent in ordinary pronunciation, is yet held as forming a syllable under the rule above given (4, *a*); as, **da-me**, **ma-la-de**. In poetry this *e* is usually sounded.

2. A silent final consonant leaves the syllable *open*, as though the word ended with the preceding vowel; as, **cas**, pronounced *ca*.

For the present such silent letters will be indicated by italics.

EXERCISE I.

ORTHOGRAPHY AND SYLLABICATION.

The pupil will spell the words, naming the accents, etc., and marking the division into syllables: the pronunciation will be given by the teacher.

alla, âm*e*, appa*s*, tulip*e*, cité, mèr*e*, dîn*e*, dîna, di*t*, siècl*e*, sophism*e*, lettr*e*, maîtr*e*, probabl*e*, vérité, véritabl*e*, appell*e*, façad*e*, plaça, naïv*e*, ciguë, a-t-ell*e*, dit-il, l'or, l'ân*e*, s'il, médecin*e*, côt*e*, côté, mi*e*, mêl*e*, mêlé, mêl*ée*, nobl*e*, nobilité, noblesse, espèr*e*, espéré, déjà.

Such exercises should be extended until familiar. *Let the French names be given to the letters, especially to the vowels.*

REMARK.—As soon as the first elements of pronunciation are learned, exercises in oral and written spelling will be useful in impressing the names and sounds of the French letters, and the division of syllables. Simple exercises in copying from the book will also be found helpful to the beginner.

The important principle of word-stress (5) may be usefully illustrated by contrasting words identical, or nearly so, in French and English, such as: **animal**, **fatal**, **facile**, **captive**, **surface**, **probable**, **terrible**, **visage**, etc.

CHAPTER II.

PRONUNCIATION OF VOWEL SOUNDS.

I. SIMPLE VOWELS.

REMARK.—It is impossible to give in print more than general indications. Pronunciation must be learned from the teacher. It is advised that the general rules be first rapidly studied, and then reviewed along with the earliest grammatical lessons—these being also, at first, carefully dictated in advance by the teacher. (But see REM., 23.)

8. The usual pronunciation of the simple vowels is as follows :

a. a *long*, like *a* in *father;*		car, cas, mât, pâte.
" *short*, " " " *alas;*		ma, mal, malle, patte.[1] *
b. e *closed*, " *e* " *met;*		avec, tel, telle, blesse.
" *open*, " " " *over;*		le, me, ne, leva, releva.
" *mute* (see § 7, *a*);		balle, belle, madame, parade.
" *stressed*, like è or é (below) before silent final consonants;[2]		les, mes, est, nez, pied, secret.
" before r, like *e* in *there;*		mer, ver, verre, parterre.
c. é (*fermé*), " " " *they;*		né, gré, été, répété, élevé.
è (*ouvert*), " " " *error;*		dès, près, lève, élève, célèbre.[3]
" before r, " " " *there;*		mère, père, amère, préfère.
ê same as è *long;*		prêt, prête, même, tête, être.
d. i *long*, like *i* in *machine;*		nie, rie, dîne, île.
" *short*, " " " *pique;*		il, mil, mille, inné, ciel.
e. o *long*, " *o* " *robe;*		zéro, mot, nos, tôt, côte, côté.
" *short*, " " " *off;*		fol, folle, mode, école, soldat, porte.[1]

* The numbers refer to the notes below.

f. **u** *long* (see note 4, below);	**muse, sucre, dû, crû, fût mûr.**
" *short,* " " "	**du, duc, sud, nul, lutte, fallu.**
g. **y** like *i*;	**type, style, système. y. il y a.**

NOTES ON VOWEL PRONUNCIATION.—1. The short sound is more usual, except when *final* or *circumflex*.

2. Including also *r* when silent; as, **aller, léger, officier (13, *b*).**

3. Between *e* in *ebb* and *ei* in *heir*—must be learned from the teacher.

4. This sound resembles none of the sounds of our *u*, and has no English equivalent. It may be formed by placing the organs as if to pronounce *e* (as in *me*), and then—without other change of position—rounding the lips as if to utter *u* (as in *rude*). Once formed the sound should be extended and carefully practised.

SPECIAL REMARKS ON ORTHOGRAPHY.

The importance of the following remarks will appear hereafter (they might perhaps be better omitted at first):

REM. 1.—Two successive mute (*e*) syllables may not stand near the end of a word. Hence:

a. Either, the first **e** is then changed to **è**; as, **lève, chère, chères.**

b. Or, the consonant is doubled, if **l, n,** or **t (6, *a*)**; as, **belle, prenne, jette.**

2. In like conditions **é** is also usually changed to **è**; as, **cède, protège, préfère.**

3. In general, **é, è** occur only in *open* syllables (4, *d*).

4. A mute **e**, also a silent **u**, are used orthographically to show the sound of a preceding **g**—as in our *George, guest.* (15, *c.*)

5. The vowel **y** is never final, and usually becomes **i** before *mute* **e**. As the name implies, it occurs especially in words derived from Greek.

6. In general, the short sound of a vowel is often indicated by doubling the following consonant; as, **basse. bonne, jette,** etc. (see REM. 1, *b*, above).

VOWEL COMBINATIONS.

9. The following are merely digraphs (or trigraphs), with single sound:

a. **ai**, *final*, = **é**; **ai, mai, balai, aimai, aimerai.**

ai / **ei** } elsewhere = **è**; { **aie, plaie, aimais, aimerait.** / **reine, veine, pleine, Seine.**

" before **r**, like *e* in *there*; **faire, plaire, corsaire.**

b. **au** / **eau** } = **o** *long*; { **au, faut, maux, saurai.** / **eau, beau, bateau, tableau.**

c. **eu** / **œu** } nearly like *u* in *burn*; { **feu, peu, peur, jeune, heure.** / **vœu, cœur, sœur, œuf, œuvre.**

NOTE.—Except **eu** (= **u**) in parts of the verb **avoir**, *to have*; **as, eu, eut**, etc.

d. **ou**, like *oo* in *moon*; **ou, mou, cou, cour, couleur.**

NOTE.—This sound is quite distinct from **u**; **mu, mou**; **pur, pour**; **dessus, dessous.**

10. The following show combined sounds, more or less distinct:

a. **oi**, like *wa* in *was*: **moi, roi, soit, oiseau, toile.**

b. **ay, oy, uy** double the sound of *y* (= *i-i*) in two syllables: **paya** (*pai-ia*), **payé** (*pai-ié*), **pays** (*pai-is*), **paysage**; **royal** (*roi-ial*), **déploya**, **fuyait** (*fui-iait*), **appuyé.**

c. **i, u, ou** before other vowels sound quickly almost like *y*, *w*: **nia, piano, dieu**; **suave, suite, lui**; **joua, oui** (like *we*).

NOTE.—But **u** before a vowel is usually silent after **g, q**; **as, légua, vague, guéri, guide**; **quart, que, quel, qui, quoi**—yet not always (**12**).

11. In the following cases, no combination occurs:

a. When the vowels are separated by the diæresis; as, **haïr, noël, ciguë.**

b. Accented **é** retains its distinct sound; as, **fléau, déité, réuni, poète.**

c. Mute **e** extends, but does not otherwise modify, a pre-

ceding vowel sound; as, **aimé, aimée; pli, plie; nu, nue; lieu, lieue.** (See 6, *b.*)

NOTE.—This (mute) **e** will no longer be indicated by the type.

The so-called nasal vowels are more conveniently treated after the consonants.

EXERCISE II.

VOWEL PRONUNCIATION.

Consonants not marked as silent are to be pronounced as in English.

Ma, ta, sa, la, il, elle, tu, du, si, fi, lu, mu, cru, plu, car, par, gare, mal, ar*t*, pa*s*, par*t*, près, ci, pri*s*, fi*t*, mi*s*, pré, pla*t*, blé, bleu, bleue, di*t*, dite, ôte, ôté, roi, moi, toi, croi*s*.—Deu*x*, creu*x*, clair, au, beau, fau*t*, ni*d*, pli, cri, crie, gri*s*, sai*s*, plaît, tai*s*, maïs.—Ou, bou*t*, tou*t*, toute, mou, dou*x*, oui, vie, pie, mie, creu*x*, feu*x*, peu*t*, pui*s*, lui, fui, sur, sûr, sûre, pur, peur, vou*s*, tour, four, loue, loué, tournée.—La mère, le père, le frère, la sœur, le*s* pla*ts*, le*s* bra*s*, le*s* ruse*s*.—Après, avare, porte*r*, fer, boule*t*, poète, fuirai, fuye*z*, épai*s*, espoir, été, livre, noyé, reine, nièce.

REVIEW EXERCISE.

Vowels: avala, capitale, vérité, célébré, célèbre, probable, médecine, défini, monotone, parole, rôle, revenu, résolue, future, affût.

Diphthongs, etc.: aimai, hai*s*, haï, naïve, cause, peau, fléau, lieu, heureuse, jeune, fuir, puisse, neuf, nouveau, joie, joyeuse, royauté, joueur, lueur, cour, cœur, vœu, naît, croît, jeûne, où.

Such exercises may be continued at will.

CHAPTER III.

PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS.

12. As already stated (**7**), final consonants are usually silent; as, **pied, allez, met, mets, doigt, doigts.**

13. *a.* But, generally, final **c, f, q, l,** when not *liquid* (**19**), and **r** are sounded; as, **avec, bec; chef, neuf; cinq, coq; mal, miel; fer, partir, cor, pour.**

NOTE.—Yet with exceptions; as, **c** after **n**, **blanc**, etc.; after **r**, **clerc**, etc.; and in a few other words: **estomac, tabac**, etc.; **f** in **clef**, *key;* in the plurals **œufs, bœufs, nerfs**, and the compound **chef-d'œuvre**, *masterpiece;* **l**, in **baril, fusil, cul**, etc. Such cases must be learned by experience.

b. But **r** is silent in final **er** (= **é**) in words of more than one syllable; as, **donner, léger, officier.** This includes a very large number of words.

NOTE.—Except: **amer**, *bitter;* **fier**, *proud;* **cuiller**, *spoon;* **enfer**, *hell;* **hiver**, *winter;* **hier**, *yesterday.*

14. Generally, in monosyllables, in proper names, and in foreign words, final consonants are to be sounded; as, **sud, dot; David, Esther; cancer, hymen,** etc.

15. In general, consonants have the same value as in English. Hence only the chief differences will be noted:

a. **ç** (see **3**, *c*) stands before **a, o, u** with the sound of *s*: **façade, reçoit, reçu.**

b. **ch** = *sh*: **chaîne, cher, choix.** But in some words, chiefly from Greek, = *k*: **chaos, Christ, chœur, orchestre.**

c. **g** before **e**, **i**, **y** = *s* in *pleasure:* **gerbe, gilet, gypse, orageux.** Before **a**, **o**, **u** this sound is shown by inserting silent **e**: **mangea, George, geôle**; and the hard sound (= *g* in *go*) before **e**, **i**, by inserting silent **u**: **léguer, guerre, guide, gueule, vigueur.** (See **10**, note.)

NOTE.—But this **u** is fully sounded when part of the original word (in Latin *); as, **arguer, aiguille, lingual,** etc.; and also in dièresis; as, **aiguë, ciguë,** etc. (See **11**, *a.*)

d. **h** is never actually sounded. But distinction is to be made between **h aspirate** and **h mute.** The aspirate **h** is treated as a consonant (though silent); the mute **h**, just as if the syllable began with the following vowel. This distinction appears especially in *elision* (**23**) and the *linking* of words (**22**). Thus: *aspirate* in **la hache, le héros, la honte, le hibou, les hiboux**; *mute* in **l'habit, l'herbe, l'huile, l'homme, les hommes.**

NOTE.—**h** is mute in the majority of words, especially in most of those derived from Latin or Greek; or, generally, in those which have, by common derivation, the same or nearly the same forms in French and in English.

e. **j** (like soft **g**) = *s* in *pleasure:* **jamais, jeune, joli, juge.**

f. **l** as in English, except when silent (**13**, note) or liquid (**19**). **l** is silent in **fils**, *son* (= *feece*).

g. **m**, **n** as in English, except when nasal (**16**). **m** is silent in **automne, damner**; and both **n** and **r** in **monsieur**, *sir.*

h. **p** is silent before **t** in the numerals **sept, septième,** and a few other words: **baptême, compte, promptitude.**

j. **qu** usually = *k*: **quart, quel, qui, quoi.** But in some derivative (Latin) words = *kw*: **équateur, équestre, quadruple,** etc.

NOTE.—**qu** is used to show the hard (*k*) sound of *c* before *e*, *i* (see *a*); as, **ture, turque**; sometimes even elsewhere; as, **vainquant, vainquons.**

---

* A knowledge of Latin is constantly helpful in the study of French. In this book, however, such references will be made only in simple and obvious cases. Teachers may easily extend them, with advantage to students of Latin.

k. **r**, especially **rr**, has a stronger palatal sound (roll) than in English: **reste, rouge, partir, courte; errai, courrai, acquerrai.**

NOTE.—**r** before a final consonant is always sounded: **égard, perd, mort.**

l. **s** as in English; between vowels = *z*; but **ss** always sharp *s*: **soir, espace, reste; cousine, dés*h*onneur, base; basse.**

Yet also sharp in compounds like **para-sol, préséance,** where properly initial.

s final is sounded only in a few words; as, **fils, jadis, mars, mœurs, ours,** etc. In a few short words, of which **e** is the only vowel, it stresses the sound of **e** (= è): **es, des, les, mes, tes, ses, ces**; but elsewhere makes no change: **rue, rues; parle, parles.**

s is very common as a grammatical ending.

m. **t** usually as in English. But in **ti** preceding a vowel, where the like English words give the sound of *sh* or *s*, **t** sounds like *s* (*not sh*); as, **partial, national, inertie, initiation, ambitieux; démocratie, aristocratie.**

t final is heard in **sept**, *seven*, **huit**, *eight*, and a few other monosyllables; as, **dot, net, est**, *east*, **ouest**, *west* (**14**).

n. **th**, always like **t**: **thé, thème, théâtre.**

p. **x** usually = *x*; but like *s* (sharp) in the numerals **dix**, *ten*, **six**, *six*, **soixante**, *sixty*; like soft *s* (= *z*) in **dix-huit, dix-neuf**, and the ordinals **dixième, sixième, deuxième**, *second*. Silent in **deux**, *two*.

q. **z** as in English; final, silent except in **gaz**, *gas*; as, **nez, avez, assez.**

REMARK.—In general, a vowel is short before a double consonant. Hence, in inflection, a short vowel is sometimes indicated by doubling the following consonant before an added **e**; as, **cruelle, bonne, basse, grosse, jette, nette, sotte.** (Compare long vowels in **fatale, base, rose, secrète, favorite**, etc.) The value of this remark will appear hereafter. (See also **8**, REM. 6.)

EXERCISE III.

CONSONANTS.

A few cases which are exceptional, or refer to the more special rules, are indicated by the type.

Bas, basse, base, beaux, jeux, car, cher, chers, chère, chères, ligue, guère, guéri, argué, aiguë, juge, jugez, neigé, neigea, le hasard, le haut, la hauteur, l'hiver, l'honneur, l'honnêteté, perd, perdu, la clef, l'œuf, les œufs, hier, nationalité, partiaux, initié, amitié, question, chair, choix, avec, clerc, place, plaça, placable, thème, fils, monsieur, quérir, quarto, mer, mers, mars, sud, fat, dix, dixième, turc, turque, jardinier, officier, ver, vers, acquiers, rougeâtre, rougeole.

REMARK.—The following examples may help to illustrate the leading rules, with some important exceptions:

Finals sounded: sac, sec, croc, parc, sud, chef, bœuf, nerf, grog, joug, avril, égal, sol, coq, finir, essor, pur, fer, amer, fier (*adj.*), éther, Esther, atlas, lis, jadis, hélas, huit, mat, dot, brut, tact, exact, direct, est (*east*), Christ.

Finals silent: banc, franc, estomac, tabac, nord, sourd, bœu*fs*, ner*fs*, Strasbourg, fusil, outil, sourcil, cul, drap, loup, trop, aller, parler, fier (*verb*), rocher, février, premier, dos, os, Thiers, bout, mot, tôt, respect, est (*is*), Jésus Christ.

Other silent letters—Consonants: bap*t*ême, scul*p*ter, se*p*t, se*p*tième, pou*ls*, Aisne, Vosges. *Vowels:* geôle, geôlier, purgea (*verb*), gueux, guêpe, guêtre, guitare, vigueur, vogue, longue, *a*oût, pa*o*n, o*i*gnon.

h *aspirate:* la hache, la haie, la haine, le hameau, la harpe, le hasard, la hâte, la hauteur, le héros, le hibou, la honte, le huit, le hussard.—h *mute:* l'habit, l'haleine, l'harmonie, l'herbe, l'héritage, l'héroïne, l'heure, l'histoire, l'hiver, l'homme, l'honneur, l'hôte, l'hôtel, l'huile, l'humeur.

ch = k (*foreign*): archéologie, archaïsme, chœur, chorus, orchestre, écho, trochée. But (*naturalized*): archevêque, architecte, anarchie, monarchie, machiniste, etc.

ti = si: balbutier, initier, initial, national, séditieux. minutie, prophétie, plutocratie, satiété. But: amnistie, modestie, amitié, moitié, matière, fruitier, chrétien, etc.

CHAPTER IV.

PRONUNCIATION—(*Continued.*)

NASAL VOWELS.

16. A vowel sound, with following **m** or **n** in the same syllable, becomes *nasal*, while **m** or **n** loses its distinct sound as a consonant. Such combinations are called *nasal vowels*. This nasal quality is heard in English *sang, song, sung,* etc.—but in French without the final consonant sound. These sounds require careful practice.

a. **am, an, em, en** { like *an* in *wan*, without final sound of *n*: **lamp, ample, flambeau**; **an, plan, manteau**; **temps, temple, empire**; **en, sens, enfant, science.**

NOTE.—But **-ent** is silent (= *e*) in 3d plural of verbs: **aiment, violent** (but adj. **violent**, *violent*, etc.).

b. **im, in, ym, yn** { like *an* in *rang*, without final sound of *g*: **simple, importe**; **fin, vint, indolent**; **symbole, symphonie**; **syncope, syntaxe.**

c. **aim, ain, eim, ein** { the same: **essaim, faim**; **bain, pain, maintenant**; **Rheims**; **sein, frein, enceinte.**

d. **en**, after **i** or **y**, the same, when *final;* also in the verbs **tenir, venir**, and their compounds—as in *meander;* **mien, sien, moyen**; **tiens, viendra.**

NOTE.—But otherwise the usual sound of **i-en** (as above, *a*): **orient, patience**, etc.*

e. **oin**, the same, preceded by *w*, as in *twang:* **foin, loin, moindre.**

* Such are words from original *-ien* in Latin—or, in general, such as have like forms in English. See **15**, *d*, note.

f. **om, on,** like *on* in *song*, as above (*b*) : **nom, plomb, nombre ; on, bon, oncle.**

g. **um, un,** like *un* in *sung*, as above : **parfum, humble ; un, brun, importun.**

17. These rules do not apply when **m, n** are followed by a vowel or silent *h* (see **4**, *a*) ; as, **âme, ami, brune, inhabité (15**, *d*);—or when doubled ; as, **année, ennemi, immortel, innocent**;—or to **mn**; as, **amnistie, hymne.**

NOTE.—But in a few words the prefix **en** (em) is excepted ; as, **enivrer, ennui, emmener.** And in **femme**, *woman*, and adverbs in **-emment, emm** sounds nearly like our *am* ; as, **violemment**, etc.

18. Nor, in general, do these rules apply to foreign words, especially proper names ; as, **harem, hymen, passim, album, Abraham, Memphis, Éden (14).**

LIQUIDS.

19. The so-called *liquid* **l** (*l mouillée*)—in **ill** not initial, and usually in **il** final—sounds like *y* in *bayou.* Final, or before mute *e*, this sound is but slightly heard—elsewhere fully. A preceding vowel does not here combine with *i*, but sounds distinct ; as, **brilla** (*bree-ya*), **billet, trava-illa, conseilla, fouiller; trava-il, conseil, fenouil; fille, pa-ille, oreille** (= **orè-ille**).

NOTES.—1. When preceded by a vowel, **il** final always has this sound. In other cases the **l** is sometimes silent, as in **baril**, etc.; sometimes sounded fully, as in **civil**, etc.; and sometimes liquid, as in **grésil**, etc.—sometimes also with diversity of usage—as must be learned by practice.

2. **œ** and **ue** will here sound as *eu* (**9**, *c*) ; as, **œil** (eu-il), **cueille** (keu-ille), **accueil**, etc

20. But when initial, and in some other words where **ill** represents original *ill* in Latin, *l* retains its full sound; as, **illégal, mille, million, ville, village, pupille, tranquille.** (See **15**, *d*, note.)

21. gn, liquid, sounds as in **cognac** (*co-nyac*)—but slightly heard before silent *e*; as, **compa-gnon, poignard, ré-gner, règne, digne** (called also *liquid* **n**).

NOTE.—A few words are excepted; as, **cog-nat, igné.**

LINKING (*LIAISON*).

22. A final consonant, though otherwise silent, is usually pronounced upon a vowel or mute *h* beginning a word which stands in immediate connection. This is called *liaison*—linking, or connecting, of words; as, **tout ami, tout homme, parlez-en.** Note also:

a. In *liaison f* sounds like *v*; *s* or *x* like *z*; *d* like *t*; *g* like *k*. As, **neuf ans** (like *neu-v-ans*); **ces amis; aux amis; quand il; rang illustre.**

b. m, n, nasal, retain a slight nasal tone, and add the full consonant sound; as, **un ami, nom illustre.**

c. Linking never occurs after the conjunction **et**, *and*;* and neither linking nor elision before the numerals **onze, onzième,** or **oui**, *yes;* as, **le onze, mais oui.**

d. Only the last consonant is usually linked; as, **est allé.**

In general, liaison implies close connection in sense. Its right use or omission requires careful practice.

ELISION.

23. Elision (**3**, *d*) marks the complete loss of the elided vowel, the two words being pronounced as one. It occurs in a few words, mostly monosyllables in **-e**:

a. In the articles **le, la**; the pronouns **je, me, te, le, la, se,** when preceding the verb; the preposition **de**; the negative **ne**; and **que,** in all its senses.

b. In the pronoun **ce** before the verb **être,** *to be;* in **si,** *if,* before **il, ils**; and in a few compound forms, as **quelqu'un, jusqu'à,** etc.

NOTE.—1. In a few cases an elision is falsely indicated; as, **grand'mère**, *grandmother.* (See **206.**)

2. Elision sometimes occurs in sound when not indicated in

* Thus also **et** (= é) is distinguished from **est,** *is* (= è).

writing; as, **je le sais** (like je l' sais); **je ne le vois pas** (like je n' le vois pas), etc.

GENERAL REMARK.—Linking and elision have the like effect of preventing *hiatus*, or the collision of vowel sounds. They both also, by uniting words more closely together, give to French an apparent rapidity of utterance, which with the rule for syllabication (4) and for word-stress (5)—both unlike our own—renders the French pronunciation at first difficult, especially to understand by ear. As some of these characteristic qualities cannot be so well exhibited in single words, the student should as soon as possible be practised in reading and hearing connected discourse.

Let it here be added, finally, that pronunciation, if not well learned at first, becomes much more difficult afterwards. Hence each new word should be carefully pronounced, and, for the present, those in each lesson should be dictated in advance by the teacher. If, however, this caution is observed, it is by no means necessary that all the rules of pronunciation shall be studied before the grammar lessons are begun.

EXERCISE IV.

NASALS, LIQUIDS, ETC.

a. Bon, bonne, quand, personne, besoin, moins, peindre, peint, plein, pleine, avons, ont, sont, bonté, plan, bain, brun, brune, sein, sien, sienne, simple, printemps, innocent, innocence, chien, ancien, orient, oriental, ennemi, emmener, enivré, femme, violemment.

b. Paille, grille, compagnie, mouillé, ligne, bataillon, bataille, veuillez, veuille, peignit, peigne, allemagne, famille, mille, ville, œil, cueillir.

c. L'ami, l'herbe, j'ai, qu'il, qu'on, s'éteindre, s'il vient, s'ils viennent; c'est, c'était, d'or, d'argent, quelqu'une, lorsqu'il, puisqu'elle. Les amis, aux hommes, nous avons, vous avez eu, avec un enfant, les cruels ennemis, elles apprenaient à lire, mon oncle est arrivé, quand il arrive, ce long *h*iver, un grand homme, deux hommes et une femme, il est allé.

CHAPTER V.

A. THE ARTICLES.

24. French has two numbers, singular and plural; two genders, masculine and feminine; and two articles, the definite and the indefinite.

25. The definite article has the following forms:

Sing., masc. **le**, *fem.* **la**; *plur. masc. and fem.* **les**. As:

le père, *the father*	**la mère**, *the mother*
les pères, *the fathers*	**les mères**, *the mothers*

26. Before a vowel or mute *h*, **le**, **la** become **l'** by elision, and **les** is linked (see **22**, **23**). As:

Masc. **l'ami**, *the friend* (*m.*)	**l'homme**, *the man*
Fem. **l'amie**, *the friend* (*f.*)	**l'herbe**, *the herb*
Plur. **les‿amis**, **les‿amies**	**les‿hommes**, **les‿herbes**

NOTE.—Hence the def. art. does not indicate gender before a vowel or mute *h*.

27. The indefinite article is *masc.* **un** (linked before vowel or mute *h*); *fem.* **une**; no plural. As:

un père, *a father*	**une mère**, *a mother*
un‿ami, *a friend*	**une amie**, *a friend*
un‿homme, *a man*	**une herbe**, *an herb*

CONTRACTIONS OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

28. The prepositions **de**, *from, of*, etc., and **à**, *to, at*, etc., are contracted with the *masc. sing.* and the *plural* of the definite article as follows:

de le to **du**; **de les** to **des**;
à le to **au**; **à les** to **aux**. As:

du père, *of the father*	**au père**, *to the father*
des pères, *of the fathers*	**aux pères**, *to the fathers*
des mères, *of the mothers*	**aux mères**, *to the mothers*
des ⌣amis, des ⌣amies	**aux ⌣hommes, aux ⌣herbes**

But the forms **la**, **l'** are not contracted. As:

de la mère, de l'homme ; à la mère, à l'homme

SOME USES OF THE ARTICLES.

REMARK.—The special rules of syntax lie beyond the purpose of this book. Only a few of the most important will be briefly given, where French usage differs from English.

29. The definite article is used more largely than in English. Thus:

a. With nouns taken in the most general sense—sometimes called the *generic* article; as,

l'homme, *man*	**les hommes**, *men*
de l'homme, *of man*	**des hommes**, *of men*, etc.

b. With abstract nouns; as, **la vie**, *life;* **le vice**, *vice.*

NOTE.—In these forms the sense will be determined by the context; **l'homme** is *the man*, or *man* (in general); **le vice**, *the vice*, or *vice* (abstractly).

c. Usually with names of countries; as, **la France**, *France;* **l'Angleterre**, *England.*

NOTE.—Except when preceded by **en**, *in, into;* or by **de** in a purely *local* or *adjective* sense; as, **en France**, *in France;* **il partit de France**, *he started from France;* **les vins de France**, *French wines.*

d. With names of persons or towns, before a title or an adjective; as, **le maréchal Ney**, *Marshal Ney;* **la pauvre Marie**, *poor Mary;* **le beau Paris**, *beautiful Paris.*

NOTE.—But not before **monsieur** (**M.**), *Mr.;* **madame** (**Mme.**), *Mrs.;* **mademoiselle** (**Mlle.**), *Miss.*

e. Sometimes where English uses a possessive (**108**); as, **il lève la main**, *he raised his hand;* or the indefinite article; as, **six francs la livre**, *six francs a pound* (= *each*); **il a le nez très long**, *he has a very long nose.*

30. The indefinite article is sometimes omitted when used in English. Thus:

a. Before a noun in apposition; as, **Racine, poète français**, *Racine, a French poet.*

b. Before a predicate noun standing alone in a descriptive or adjective sense; as, **je suis Américain**, *I am an American;* **Louis est soldat**, *L. is a soldier.*

c. But it is used before an adjective and noun, where often omitted in English; as, **avec un grand courage**, *with great courage*, etc.

NOTE.—The article, def. or indef., is repeated before each distinct noun.

VOCABULARY.*

l'homme, *the man*	**la femme**, *the woman, wife*
le père, *the father*	**la mère**, *the mother*
le frère, *the brother*	**la sœur**, *the sister*
le roi, *the king*	**la reine**, *the queen*
le livre, *the book*	**la plume**, *the pen*
le jardin, *the garden*	**la pomme**, *the apple*
un arbre, *a tree*	**la poire**, *the pear*
le vice, (*the*) *vice*	**la vertu**, (*the*) *virtue*
un oncle, *an uncle*	**une tante**, *an aunt*
un ami, *a friend*	**une amie**, *a friend*

donne, *gives;* **donnent** (*pl.*), *give;* **et**, *and;* **ou**, *or.*

The above nouns form their plural by adding **s**.

EXERCISE V, a.

(1) *Singular Forms.*—1. Le livre du père. 2. L'amie de la reine. 3. La plume de l'oncle. 4. La sœur d'une reine. 5. Le livre d'un ami ou d'une amie. 6. Le frère de la reine. 7. L'oncle ou la tante. 8. Une amie du roi. 9. L'ami *du*† vice ou de *la* vertu. 10. La sœur donne une plume au frère. 11. Le roi donne un livre à l'amie de la reine. 12. La reine donne un jardin à l'ami du roi.

(2) *Singular and Plural Forms.*—13. Les frères du roi. 14. Les pommes du jardin. 15. Les poires des jardins du roi. 16. Les amies de la reine.

* Words in the Vocabularies should be carefully pronounced and learned—and so as to group related words.

† Italics in the Exercises refer to special rules.

17. Les frères des rois. 18. Les_oncles des sœurs. 19. *Les* vices et *les* vertus. 20. Les_amis *du* vice. 21. Les frères donnent les livres aux sœurs. 22. L'oncle donne les poires aux_amis de la tante. 23. Les_arbres des jardins du roi. 24. Le roi et la reine donnent les livres aux_hommes et aux femmes.

B. PRESENT TENSES OF THE VERBS AVOIR, (*to*) *have*; ÊTRE, (*to*) *be*.

31. *a.*

j'ai, *I have*	**nous_avons**, *we have*
tu as, *thou hast*	**vous_avez**, *you have*
il (elle) a, *he, (she) (it) has*	**ils (elles)_ont**, *they have*

b.

je suis, *I am*	**nous sommes**, *we are*
tu es, *thou art*	**vous_êtes**, *you are*
il (elle) est, *he, (she) (it) is*	**ils (elles) sont**, *they are*

NOTE.—1. Observe the elision and linking of the pronouns—also distinguish the sound of **ils sont** from **ils_ont** (= *il-zont*).

2. In place of pronouns of 3d person, of course nouns may stand as subject.

3. The 2d pers. sing. **tu** is used much more largely in French than *thou* in English. Hence **tu** is often translated by *you*.

4. In French, as in English, the plural form of 2d pers. **vous**, *you*, is used generally for singular as well as plural. **Vous** takes always a plural verb, but, when singular in sense, its adjective will be singular—masc. or fem.; as, **vous êtes bon** (*m.*), or **bonne** (*f.*), *you are good*.

VOCABULARY.

Louis, *Lewis*	**Élise**, *Elisa*
Pierre, *Peter*	**Marie**, *Mary*
la France, *France*	**Paris**, *Paris*
l'Angleterre, *f. England*	**Londres**, *London*
l'Italie, *f. Italy*	**Naples**, *Naples*
le fils, *the son, boy*	**la fille**, *the daughter, girl*
le pays, *the country*	**la ville**, *the city, town*
le palais, *the palace*	**la maison**, *the house*
le général, *the general*	**la carte**, *the map*
le soldat, *the soldier*	**la capitale**, *the capital*
grand, *f.* **grande**, *great, large*	**petit**, *f.* **petite**, *small, little*
qui, *who*	**où**, *where*; **dans**, *in*

EXERCISE V, b.

(1) 1. Louis a les livres d'Élise.* 2. Tu as un livre et une plume. 3. Nous avons le papier, vous avez les plumes. 4. J'ai une grande carte de France. 5. La reine a un fils et une fille. 6. La ville de Londres a un grand palais de la reine d'Angleterre. 7. Le roi et la reine ont une grande maison à Naples, ville d'Italie. 8. La petite Marie a une grande pomme.

(2) 9. La France est un grand pays; Paris est une grande ville. 10. Où sont les villes de Londres, de Paris et de Naples? 11. Londres est en Angleterre, Paris est en France, Naples est en Italie. 12. Nous sommes amis. 13. Le roi et la reine sont au palais 14. Louis, fils du général M., est soldat. 15. Vous êtes dans le jardin du palais du roi d'Italie. 16. Monsieur (M.) et madame (Mme.) A. sont à la maison de Mlle. B., dans une petite ville de France.

Exercises in writing from dictation should accompany the earliest lessons in reading. For this purpose the same sentences may be used, with appropriate variations.

REMARK.—The same material may also be used for conversation. Thus:

Où est la ville de Paris? La ville de Paris est en France.—Où est la capitale de la France? Paris est la capitale de la France.—Qui est au palais du roi d'Italie? La reine d'Angleterre est là.—Où êtes-vous, Louis? Je suis dans le jardin, sous l'arbre.—Élise et sa (*her*) mère où sont-elles? Elles sont dans la maison.—Qui a le livre de la petite Marie? Nous avons ses (*her*) livres et ses plumes.

These exercises may be varied and extended by adding a few new words.

* Translate possessive, when required by English idiom.

CHAPTER VI.

A. NOUNS.

32. *a.* The **Gender of Nouns** is determined partly by signification, as male or female names, etc. But nouns neuter in meaning are also masculine or feminine in French —mostly according to their ending, yet with many exceptions. The rules for gender are too complex to be given here, and are, happily, not necessary for reading. The most important will be added hereafter (**219**).

NOTE.—The gender of nouns may be briefly indicated by the articles—the definite article before consonants, the indefinite before vowels. As : **le palais**, *the palace*, **la maison**, *the house ;* **un oiseau**, *a bird*, **une oreille**, *an ear*, etc. It is therefore helpful thus to associate the article with each noun as learned.

b. **Case Declension** does not exist in French nouns, this relation being shown by construction or by prepositions. The English possessive is expressed by **de** ; as, *John's hat*, **le chapeau de Jean** ; the indirect object (with or without preposition in English) by **à**, which must always be expressed *with a noun ;* as, *I give John a book*, **je donne un livre à Jean.**

NOTE.—The prepositions **de**, **à**—also **en**, *in*—must be repeated before each object.

PLURAL OF NOUNS.

33. The plural usually adds **-s** to the singular; as,

le roi, *the king*, *pl.* **les rois**	**la reine**, *the queen*, *pl.* **les reines**
l'ami, *the friend*, *pl.* **les amis**	**l'homme**, *the man*, *pl.* **les hommes**

With the following exceptions:

a. Nouns ending in **s**, **x**, **z** remain unchanged; as,

le fils, *the son*,	*pl.* **les fils**
la noix, *the nut*,	*pl.* **les noix**
le nez, *the nose*,	*pl.* **les nez**.

b. Nouns ending in **au**, **eau**, **eu**, **œu**, and some in **ou**, add **x**; as:

le chapeau, *the hat*,	*pl.* **les chapeaux**
le feu, *the fire*,	*pl.* **les feux**
le vœu, *the wish*,	*pl.* **les vœux**
le bijou, *the jewel*,	*pl.* **les bijoux**, etc.

Other nouns in **ou** are regular; as, **le trou**, *the hole*; *pl.* **les trous**, etc. Details must be learned by observation, or from the dictionary.

NOTE.—All the above nouns sound the same in singular and plural. Hence the plural is heard only in the article, or in the context.

c. Most nouns change final **-al**, **-ail** to **-aux**; as:

le cheval, *the horse*,	*pl.* **les chevaux**
le travail, *the labor*,	*pl.* **les travaux**

But others are regular: **le bal**, *the ball*, **les bals**; **l'éventail**, *the fan*, **les éventails**, etc.

d. A few nouns are specially irregular:

l'aïeul, *the ancestor*,	*pl.* **les aïeux**, *the ancestors*
le ciel, *the sky, heaven*,	*pl.* **les cieux**, *the heavens*
l'œil, *the eye*,	*pl.* **les yeux**, *the eyes*

But the regular **aïeuls**, **ciels**, **œils** are also used, in other senses (209).

34. Proper nouns, used as such, take no plural; as, **les deux Jean**, *the two Johns*; **les Goncourt**, *the Goncourts* (brothers). But they may take a plural when used figuratively or as representative names; as, **la France a eu ses Césars**, *France has had her Cæsars*; **les Raphaëls**, *Raphaels* (paintings), etc.

NOTE.—Usage varies in foreign nouns. The more familiar take plural **s**; as, **albums**, **opéras**, etc. Others do not; as, **des alibi**, **des Te-Deum**; and a few take foreign forms; as, **des errata**, **les ladies**, etc.

35. The plural of adjectives, masc. and fem., is formed just as in nouns of like ending. As:

bon, *good*, *pl.* **bons**; *fem.* **bonne**, *pl.* **bonnes**
beau, *fine*, *pl.* **beaux**; *fem* **belle**, *pl.* **belles**, etc.

For the plural of compound nouns and adjectives, see Chapter XXIII.

VOCABULARY.

le neveu, *the nephew*
le cousin, *the cousin*
le voisin, *the neighbor*
le bras, *the arm*
le cheval, *the horse*
le bal, *the ball*
le travail, (*the*) *labor*, *work*
le chapeau, *the hat*
le tableau, *the picture*
le bijou, *the jewel*
deux, *two*
pour, *for*
la nièce, *the niece*
la cousine, *the cousin*
la voisine, *the neighbor*
un œil, *an eye*
un animal, *an animal*
le ciel, *the heaven*, *sky*
un éventail, *a fan*
un oiseau, *a bird*
le feu, *the fire*
le joujou, *the toy*
beau, *f.* **belle**, *beautiful*, *fine*
joli, *f.* **jolie**, *pretty*

EXERCISE VI.

1. Les fils des voisins ont les jolis joujoux de la petite Marie. 2. Les petits oiseaux sont dans les arbres. 3. Vous avez deux bras et deux yeux. 4. Les travaux des chevaux sont grands. 5. Les deux Corneille sont frères; les deux Racine sont père et fils. 6. Les neveux des généraux ont deux beaux chevaux. 7. Les grands yeux des animaux. 8. Les palais sont les grandes maisons des rois et des reines. 9. Nous sommes les neveux du général Mont. 10. Vous êtes la cousine de la jolie nièce du général. 11. Les aïeux du roi et de la reine d'Italie. 12. Les Bourbons de France et d'Espagne. 13. Les grands feux des cieux. 14. J'ai les tableaux des aïeux du roi d'Espagne. 15. Qui a les beaux tableaux des jolis oiseaux et des grands animaux dans le jardin du roi? 16. Nous avons deux jolis éventails pour les grands bals.

B. REGULAR VERBS: PRESENT AND IMPERATIVE.

36. There are three conjugations of verbs, known by the ending of the infinitive:

I. Infinitive ends in **-er**; as, **donner**, *to give*
II. " " " **-ir**; as, **finir**, *to finish*
III. " " " **-re**; as, **rompre**, *to break*

Of these the first is by far the largest, and has the fewest irregular verbs.

NOTE.—Infinitives ending in **-oir** are sometimes counted as Conj. III, and those in **-re** as Conj. IV. But those in **-oir** are best treated as irregular—as is generally done in the best recent grammars. (See Chapter XXX.)

37. The present tenses are as follows:

I. **donner**, *to give.*	II. **finir**, *to finish.*	III. **rompre**, *to break.*	
je donne	finis	romps,	*I break, do*
tu donnes	finis	romps	*break, am*
il donne	finit	rompt	*breaking,*
nous donnons	finissons	rompons	etc.
vous donnez	finissez	rompez	
ils donnent	finissent	rompent	

a. Verbs in III whose stems end in **c, d, t** omit **t** in 3d singular of present; as, **vendre**, *to sell;* **il vend**, *he sells*, etc. Those ending in **-ttre** drop **t** besides, throughout present singular; as, **battre**; **je bats, tu bats, il bat**, *to beat*, etc.

NOTE.—Observe that the simple present in French corresponds to the several English forms: *I give, do give, am giving*, etc., as the sense may require.

38. The imperatives are as follows:

	I.	II.	III.	
2d sing.	donne	finis	romps	—— (thou)
1st plur.	donnons	finissons	rompons	(let us ——)
2d plur.	donnez	finissez	rompez	—— (ye)

Observe that the imperative forms are the same as the corresponding forms of the present, *without the subject*—except that **s** is dropped in the singular of I.

Hence the imperative is said to be *derived* from the present.

REMARK.—The teacher must judge how far at present to make analysis or comparison of the verb forms. The notation given above—and hereafter—by the type is intended only as an aid to eye and memory; not for historical or etymological distinction, which may be left for later study.

SELECTION FOR READING.

NOTE.—The first selections will be interlinear. In order to call early attention to resemblances between French and English words, those identical, or nearly so, in form and meaning will be indicated by ——, with only such addition as may suggest the difference of form. The numerals correspond to the notes below.

VOCABULARY.—VERBS.

I.

cesser, *to cease*
couler, *to flow*
déborder, *to overflow*
enfler, *to inflate, swell*

II.

remplir, *to fill*
tarir, *to dry up,*

III.

entendre, *to hear*
répandre, *to spread*

1. Le Nil (*Nile*).

Le Nil offre[1] aux voyageurs[2] un merveilleux spec-
—ers (the) ——ers marvellous ——
tacle. Considérons le volume de ses eaux, et
—— Let us —— —— its *pl.* water
examinons les phénomènes qui accompagnent son[3]
(let us) —— ——a which ——ny
cours. Ce fleuve ne cesse jamais[4] de couler.
——e. This river not ever to
Lorsque la plupart[5] des sources tarissent, le Nil
When most —— spring (*pl.*)
enfle ses eaux. Le débordement des fleuves est
overflow, *n.*
presque toujours un signal de calamités et répand
almost always —— ——y, *pl.*

ordinairement la[6] terreur; l'inondation du fleuve
———arily () ——or ————
d'Égypte est la source de tous[7] les biens, et lorsqu'il
——— ——— () good(s)
déborde, on entend des bénédictions sur ses rives.
one () ———— on banks
Ses eaux abreuvent tous les animaux, toutes les
refresh ———ls
plantes, remplissent un grand nombre de canaux,
——— ——— *pl.* ———
couvrent[1] tous les champs, et répandent partout la
cover fields everywhere ()
fertilité.
———y.

[1] Present, like Conj. I, but of an irregular verb. [2] Here *travellers;* often the corresponding words are used in different senses. [3] **son**, *f.* **sa**, *pl.* **ses**, *his, hers, its*—agree with following noun. [4] **ne . . . jamais**, *never*. [5] Compound noun = *majority*. [6] The sign ( ) denotes omission in the English idiom. [7] **tout**, *f.* **toute**, *pl.* **tous**, **toutes**, *all*, with article.

CONVERSATION.

1. (EX. VI.)

Qui sont les deux grands jeunes hommes? Ils sont les neveux de M. (monsieur) Barre.—A qui (*whose*) sont les beaux chevaux? Ils sont les chevaux du général Roche. —A qui sont les belles plumes? Elles sont à la petite Jeanne (*Jane*).—De qui avez-vous les jolis éventails? Ils sont de ma (*my*) mère.—Quels tableaux avez-vous là? Ce sont (*they are*) les portraits de deux sœurs.—Leurs yeux sont très beaux, n'est-ce pas? Oui, et leurs bras aussi. Et quelles belles couleurs, quels beaux ciels (*skies*) dans ces tableaux!

2.

Où est le fleuve du Nil? Le fleuve du Nil est dans le nord de l'Afrique.—Comment coule-t-il? Il coule du nord au sud.—Quand déborde-t-il? Il déborde dans l'été.—Quel est le volume de ses eaux? Le volume des eaux du Nil est très grand.—Quel est l'effet de l'inondation? Elle répand la fertilité par (*through*) tous les champs.—La terre d'Égypte est-elle fertile? Oui, à cause du Nil.

CHAPTER VII.

A. THE PARTITIVE.

39. The preposition **de**, *from, of*, with the definite article (**28**) before a noun is used to give the sense expressed in English by *some* or *any*, or by the noun alone. As: **avez-vous du vin—de la bière—de l'eau —des livres?** *have you (any) wine—beer—water—books?* **Nous avons du vin**, etc., *we have (some) wine*, etc. This is called the *partitive form* of the noun, and the *partitive article.*

40. The partitive form may stand in any relation of the noun, except after the preposition **de**, when the partitive article will be omitted. As: **Des hommes donnent des livres à des enfants**, *some men give some books to some children;* **avec du courage**, *with courage.* But **un homme de courage** (not **de du courage**).

41. But the *partitive preposition* **de** (**d'**) is used alone, without the article, in the following cases:

a. When an adjective precedes the noun. As: **de bon vin**, (*some*) *good wine;* but **du vin excellent**, etc., where the adjective follows the noun.

NOTE.—Except in some phrases in which adjective and noun form one idea; as, **du bon sens**, *good sense;* **des jeunes gens**, *young people* (*youths*), etc.

b. After a limiting noun or adverb of ***quantity***, **etc.**, including adverbs of *negation.* As:

une bouteille de vin, *a bottle of wine*
combien de vin, *how much wine?* **beaucoup de vin**, *much wine*
assez—trop—peu de vin, *enough—too much—little wine*
pas de vin, *no wine;* **je n'ai pas de vin**, *I have no wine*, etc.

NOTE.—Except **bien**, *much, many*, which requires the partitive article; as, **bien du vin**, *much wine;* **bien des livres**, *many books.*

42. Somewhat similar is the use of **de** to express *material* or *kind*—in English often translated by an adjective idiom; as, **une chaîne d'or**, *a gold chain;* **une maison de campagne**, *a country house.*

NOTE.—In all these uses, the partitive article or preposition must be repeated before each noun (see **32**, *b*, note).

REMARK.—These partitive forms, often not indicated in English, are characteristic in French and require careful attention. Observe that the partitive always includes **de**, but not always the article, which is usually excluded by any other limiting word preceding **de** or before the noun (except **bien**).

VOCABULARY.

le pain, *the bread*
le beurre, *the butter*
la viande, *the meat*
le fromage, *the cheese*
un œuf, *an egg*
le café, *the coffee*
le thé, *the tea*
le sucre, *the sugar*
l'eau, *f.*, *the water*
l'encre, *f.*, *the ink*
le vin, *the wine*
le gant, *the glove*
le papier, *the paper*
le crayon, *the pencil*
l'or, *m.*, *the gold*
l'argent, *m.*, *the silver, money*
excellent, *excellent*
bon, *f.* **bonne**, *good*
un, une, *one*
mais, *but*
que, *than, as*
ici, *here;* **là**, *there*

le morceau, *the piece*
la paire, *the pair*
la douzaine, *the dozen*
la livre, *the pound*
la bouteille, *the bottle*
la chaîne, *the chain*
la montre, *the watch*
combien, *how much, how many* (with **de**)
assez, *enough* (with **de**)
beaucoup, *much, many*, **peu**, *little, few*, **plus**, *more*, **moins**, *less*, **trop**, *too much, too many*, **trop peu**, *too little* (with **de**)
bien, *much, many* (with article)
avez-vous, *have you?*
je n'ai pas, *I have not*
il (elle) n'a pas, *he (she) has not*
voici, *here is (are)*
voilà, *there is (are)*

EXERCISE VII.

1. Voici du pain et du fromage. 2. Où est le beurre? 3. Je n'ai pas de beurre. 4. Qui a du beurre? 5. Voici de bon vin. 6. Avez-vous de la viande? 7. Oui, j'ai de bonne viande. 8. Combien de sucre avez-vous? 9. J'ai deux livres de sucre. 10. Voilà des œufs et du fromage excellent. 11. La fille a deux paires de gants. 12. Combien de thé avez-vous? 13. Je n'ai pas de thé, j'ai du café et de bon vin. 14. Combien d'argent avez-vous? 15. Je n'ai pas assez d'argent. 16. Le bon voisin a trop d'amis. 17. Voici une chaîne d'or et une montre d'argent. 18. La bonne femme donne à Guillaume du pain, de la viande et de l'eau. 19. La reine a des bijoux d'or et d'argent. 20. Le roi a beaucoup de palais et de maisons de campagne. 21. La femme a plus de fils que de filles. 22. Il a bien de l'argent, mais peu d'amis. 23. Une douzaine d'œufs. 24. Louis a de bon papier et des crayons excellents.

B. SIMPLE PAST TENSES.

43. There are two simple past tenses, which are distinguished more clearly and regularly than in English.

1. The *imperfect* expresses action incomplete, continued, repeated, habitual, etc.

2. The *preterit* expresses action complete, single, definite—hence often called the *Past Definite.*

In English the imperfect is often rendered by *was doing, used to do,* etc.; but often the two senses are without distinction, though always sharply distinguished in French.

NOTE.—The distinction will appear more clearly in connected discourse—the imperfect being *descriptive*, the preterit *narrative*—the former standing more usually in subordinate, the latter in principal sentences.

The forms are as follows:

44. Imperfect.	I.	II.	III.
	je donnais, *I gave,*	finissais	rompais
	tu donnais *was giv-*	finissais	rompais
	il donnait *ing,* etc.	finissait	rompait
	nous donnions	finissions	rompions
	vous donniez	finissiez	rompiez
	ils donnaient	finissaient	rompaient

NOTE.—The final endings of the imperfect are the same in all verbs. For the syllable -iss in II, see the present plural (37).

45. Preterit.	I.	II.	III.
	je donnai, *I gave,*	finis	rompis
	tu donnas *did give,*	finis	rompis
	il donna etc.	finit	rompit
	nous donnâmes	finîmes	rompîmes
	vous donnâtes	finîtes	rompîtes
	ils donnèrent	finirent	rompirent

NOTE.—1. In II and III the endings of the preterit are the same; also in plural of I, except in the connecting vowel.

2. Note circumflex accent in 1st and 2d plural of all preterits. For the endings ai, ais, see 9, *a.*

VOCABULARY.—VERBS.

approcher, *to approach*
armer, *to arm, cock* (*a gun*)
arriver, *to arrive*
chercher, *to seek*
quitter, *to quit*
rester, *to remain*
sembler, *to seem*
rugir, *to roar*
attendre, *to wait* (for).
descendre, *to descend, go down*

2. Le Lion (*Lion*).

J'appris' que le lion quittait son repaire au coucher
—— . den set
du soleil et qu'à la nuit il descendait dans la plaine.
sun ( ) night ———
La rencontre sembla infaillible, et je commence*
meeting inevitable ———begin
à charger les deux fusils. Je finissais cette opération,
to load gun this ———.——
lorsque j'entendis le lion qui rugissait[3] dans la
rel. pron.
montagne. Je donnai mon second fusil à mon *hôte*
mountain my ——— host
et nous partîmes.[3] Après un quart d'heure nous arri-
After quarter hour
vâmes sur le bord d'un ruisseau. Les rugissements
on edge brook roaring, *n.*
approchaient continuellement. J'armai mon fusil et
———ally
j'attendis. Tout à coup,[4] de la rive opposée[5] du ruis-
all at once bank ———ite
seau, j'entends un long soupir guttural. Je levai*
—— sigh ——— raised
les yeux et juste en face[6] de moi, comme deux
(29, *e*) —— —— me like
charbons ardents, je vis' les yeux terribles du lion.
coal burning ———

---

* These verbs, though not really irregular, are not included in the vocabulary, because they do not exactly follow the paradigms given.

Un moment je restai immobile, puis mon doigt cher-
——— motionless then finger
cha doucement la détente.
softly trigger

[1] Pret. irreg. **apprendre**, *to learn*. [2] Rel. clause transl. by pres. part. *-ing*. [3] Pret. **partir**, *to start*. [4] Compound adverb phrase. [5] Adjective following noun. [6] Phrase: *opposite to*. [7] Pret. irreg. **voir**, *to see*.

NOTE.—Words once given will not generally be repeated. See the general vocabulary.

CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette histoire? C'est l'histoire d'une chasse au lion.—A quelle heure ce lion quitta-t-il son repaire? Au coucher du soleil.—Où descendit-il alors? Alors il descendit dans la plaine.—Combien de fusils ce chasseur avait-il (*had*)? Il avait deux fusils.—A qui donna-t-il un de ses fusils? A son hôte.—Que firent-ils (*did*) alors? Ils partirent pour la chasse.—Où arrivèrent-ils en peu de temps? Au bord d'un petit ruisseau.—Qu'entendirent-ils là? Ils entendirent les rugissements du lion qui approchait.—Et alors? Alors ils armèrent leurs fusils et attendirent.—Et le lion, où est-il maintenant? Il est sur la rive opposée du ruisseau.—Voient-ils (*see*) le lion? Non: mais ils entendent un long soupir.—Et que voient-ils alors? Ils voient ses yeux terribles.—Et les chasseurs que font-ils (*do*)? Ils restent immobiles.—Et après? Mais c'est la fin de l'histoire.

CHAPTER VIII.

A. ADJECTIVES.

46. An adjective agrees with its subject in gender and number—usually with a change of form. The rules for inflection of adjectives apply also to participles, when inflected. (For agreement with **vous**, see **31**, note 4.)

47. The rule for forming the plural of adjectives has been given (**35**). As exceptions, **bleu**, *blue*, pl. **bleus**; **tout**, *all*, pl. **tous**; and *all* adjectives in **ou** have plural in **s**; as, **fou**, **fous**, etc. (See **33**, *b*.)

FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

48. The feminine of all adjectives ends in **-e**; plural **-es**.

Hence adjectives in **-e** are the same in both genders; as, **sage**, f. **sage**; pl. m. f. **sages**.

49. Adjectives not ending in **-e** add **e**, usually without other change; as, **grand**, f. **grande**; **petit**, f. **petite**; **âgé**, **âgée**.

50. But often with further change; as:

a. Final **f** becomes **ve**; as, **actif**, **active**.

b. Final **x** becomes **se**; as, **heureux**, **heureuse**.

c. Final **eur** becomes **euse**, in adjectives (properly nouns) derived from verbs; as, **trompeur**, **trompeuse**.

51. Other changes are partly orthographical. (See **8**, Remarks 1, 2; also Ch. III, end):

a. Adjectives ending in **e** before a final consonant either change **e** to **è**; as, **cher, chère**; **secret, secrète**; **bref, brève** (*e long*);

b. Or, they double the final consonant, if **l, n, t** (*e short*); as, **cruel, cruelle**; **ancien, ancienne**; **net, nette**; **muet, muette.**

c. Many others double the final consonant, especially monosyllables in **n, s, t** after a single (*short*) vowel, and those in **eil**; as, **bon, bonne**; **gros, grosse**; **sot, sotte**; **pareil, pareille**; **gentil, gentille**; **nul, nulle.**

d. Final **c** becomes **que** (15, *j*, note); as, **turc, turque**; **public, publique.** Final **g** becomes **gue** (15, *c*); as, **long, longue.**

NOTE.—But **gu** becomes regularly **gu**ë; as, **aigu, aigu**ë (15, *c*, note).

e. Irregularly **grec** becomes **grecque** (*e short*); and **blanc, franc, sec** become **blanche, franche, sèche.**

52. Some adjectives resume in the feminine letters which have been dropped in the masculine; as, **bénin, bénigne; favori, favorite; coi, coite.**

53. A few in **-x, -s,** are specially irregular:

doux, douce, *sweet*	**frais, fraîche,** *fresh*
faux, fausse, *false*	**tiers, tierce,** *third*
roux, rousse, *red*	

NOTE.—A comparison of the original Latin forms would show that in most cases the feminine is nearer to these than the masculine—often retaining letters that have been modified or lost in the masculine.

54. The following five adjectives have a special masc. form ending in **-l**, used only before a vowel or mute **h**, from which also is formed the fem. sing. and plur., while the masc. plur. follows the usual form:

beau, bel,	*f.* **belle, -s,** *beautiful*
nouveau, nouvel,	*f.* **nouvelle, -s,** *new*
fou, fol,	*f.* **folle, -s,** *foolish*
mou, mol,	*f.* **molle, -s,** *soft*
vieux, vieil,	*f.* **vieille, -s,** *old*

—but masc. plur. **beaux, nouveaux, fous, mous, vieux.**

NOTE.—Here also the -l forms are original (as **mol**, Lat. *mollis*, etc.). Compare the article forms **du**, **au**, etc. (**28**), and like forms hereafter.

REMARK.—The foregoing rules and exceptions do not claim to be exhaustive. Fuller details will be found in larger grammars or in the dictionary. How far, also, explanation of irregular forms shall be introduced (as, **doux**, **douce**, Lat. *dulcis;* **faux**, **fausse**, Lat. *falsus*, etc.) is left for each teacher to judge. For Compound Adjectives, see Ch. XXIII, A.

VOCABULARY.

aigu, *sharp*
amer, *bitter*
ancien, *ancient, old*
anglais,* *English*
bas, *low, base*
beau, *beautiful, fine*
blanc, *white*
bleu, *blue*
cher, *dear*
cruel, ——
doux, *sweet, soft*
favori, *favorite*
faux, *false*
fermé (*part.*), *closed*
fou, *foolish, mad*
fidèle, *faithful*
frais, *fresh*
français, *French*
grec, *Greek*
heureux, *happy*
long, ——
muet, *mute, dumb*
obéissant (*part.*), *obedient*
oisif, *idle*
rouge, *red*
roux, *red, reddish*
sec, *dry*
trompeur (*noun*), *deceitful*
turc, *Turk(ish)*
vieux, *old*
un espoir, *a hope*
la fenêtre, *the window*
un habit, *a coat*
le héros, *the hero*
une histoire, *a history, story*
la langue, *the language, tongue*
la médecine, *the* ——
la nation, *the* ——
la robe, *the* ——, *dress*
la terre, *the earth, land*
la tête, *the head*
la vie, *the life*
la voix, *the voice*

EXERCISE VIII.

NOTE.—As appears in the following exercise, adjectives in French often stand after the noun. The rules of position, given in next chapter, are here in part anticipated.

1. Une belle femme. 2. De† bons vins. 3. Des† vins excellents. 4. Une fausse histoire. 5. Une

* See **3**, note.

† Translate as partitive, and note effect of the position of the adjective (**41**, *a*).

plume aiguë. 6. Des œu*fs* frais. 7. De l'eau bleue. 8. Une robe blanche. 9. Une mère cruelle. 10. De grands et beaux chevaux. 11. Une voix douce. 12. La langue anglaise. 13. Avec des robes blanches. 14. Les fenêtres fermées. 15. Une fille obéissante. 16. Une vie heureuse. 17. Une femme trompeuse. 18. Les grands héros français. 19. Une belle fille française. 20. Les *h*abits bleus des soldats français. 21. Une longue *h*istoire. 22. Une vieille femme anglaise. 23. La langue grecque. 24. La nation turque. 25. De l'eau fraîche. 26. La fille favorite du roi d'Espagne. 27. Les chapeaux rouges. 28. Une médecine amère. 29. Une bonne et chère amie. 30. Une fille muette. 31. Une terre sèche. 32. Une tête rousse. 33. Les nations anciennes. 34. Une vie oisive. 35. Une voix basse. 36. La belle France.

B. FUTURE AND CONDITIONAL TENSES.

55. The future of regular verbs is as follows:

I.	II.	III.	
je donnerai	finirai	romprai	*I shall (will)* ——
tu donneras	finiras	rompras	
il donnera	finira	rompra	*he will (shall)* ——
nous donnerons	finirons	romprons	
vous donnerez	finirez	romprez	
ils donneront	finiront	rompront	

Observe that the endings are everywhere the same.

56. The conditional is as follows:

I.	II.	III.	
je donnerais	finirais	romprais	*I should (would)* ——
tu donnerais	finirais	romprais	
il donnerait	finirait	romprait	*he would (should)* ——
nous donnerions	finirions	romprions	
vous donneriez	finiriez	rompriez	
ils donneraient	finiraient	rompraient	(See **9**, *a*.)

NOTE.—1. Endings are related as above (55). Note also that the endings of the conditional are the same as in the imperfect (44), the conditional being an *imperfect* or *past future*—related as in English *should, would* to *shall, will.*

2. Note also that the future and conditional are nearly like the infinitives; hence they are said to be *derived* from the infinitive. They are in fact formed by adding to the infin. the present and imperfect, respectively, of **avoir**, *to have;* as, **donner-ai**, *I have to give*, etc.

VOCABULARY.

compter *to count, pay*
lier, délier, *to tie, untie*
présenter, *to* ———
résister (à), *to* ———
réfléchir, *to reflect*
réussir, *to succeed*
perdre, *to lose, destroy*
répondre (à), *to answer*

3. Les Sept Bâtons.

Les se*pt* fils d'un paysan perdaient beaucoup
seven countryman
de temps en disputes. Un jour le père leur[1] pré-
time ——— one day to-them
senta sept bâtons fortement liés ensemble et dit:[2] A
stick strongly tied together
celui qui réussira à rompre[3] ce faisceau je compterai
him bundle
cent écus. Tous l'essayèrent, et chacun dit
a hundred crowns it tried each-one
à la fin: cela est impossible. Le père délia le
end that ———
faisceau et rompit les bâtons l'un après l'autre. Un
other
enfant les romprait de cette manière, dirent[2] les fils
child them *fem.* ce manner
indignés. Mes[4] fils, répondit le père, si vous
indignant if
réfléchissiez, ces bâtons vous[5] donneraient une leçon
(imperfect) *pl.* ce lesson
utile. Aussi longtemps que vous resterez unis, vous
useful As ——-(time) as united
résisterez à tout.[6] Mais dès que vous romprez
( ) as-soon

les liens de l'amitié entre vous, il vous[5] arrivera[6]
bonds friendship between there
la même chose qu'à ces bâtons. Vos ennemis
same thing Your enemies
vous perdront, l'un après l'autre.

[1] Pron. obj. preceding verb. [2] Pret. irreg. **dire**, *to say, tell.* [3] Idiom, *in breaking.* [4] **mon**, f., **ma**, pl., **mes**, *my.* [5] Indirect object. [6] Impersonal: **il arrive**, *there happens.*

CONVERSATION.

Quelle histoire avons-nous ici? C'est l'histoire des sept bâtons.—De quels sept bâtons? De sept bâtons qu'un père présenta à ses fils.—Combien de fils avait-il? Il avait sept fils.—Donna-t-il un bâton à chaque fils? Non; les bâtons étaient liés ensemble dans un faisceau.—Et que dit-il aux fils? Il dit: Rompez de faisceau.—Et les fils que firent-ils? Ils essayèrent de rompre le faisceau.—Réussirent-ils? Non, ils le trouvèrent impossible.—Et le père que fit-il alors? Il délia le faisceau et rompit les bâtons l'un après l'autre.—Et les fils que dirent-ils? Ils étaient indignés.—Mais que dirent-ils? Ils dirent qu'un petit enfant pouvait (*could*) rompre les bâtons de cette manière.—Quelle leçon le père donna-t-il aux fils par ces bâtons? La leçon de l'amitié.—Comment cela? La leçon dit: Seuls vous êtes faibles, comme (*as*) les bâtons; ensemble vous êtes forts, comme le faisceau.

CHAPTER IX.

A POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

57. Adjectives precede or follow their nouns. There are some which regularly precede; others which regularly follow. A few precede or follow with different meanings; and sometimes position is determined by the context or by euphony.

REMARK.—For reading French, which is the purpose of this book, detailed rules are needless. A few general statements only will be given.

58. Adjectives which regularly precede are:

a. Pronominal adjectives and numerals (except in titles).

b. A few very common adjectives; as, **beau**, *fine;* **bon**, **mauvais**, *good, bad;* **grand**, **gros**, **petit**, *great, big, little;* **jeune**, **vieux**, *young, old;* **joli**, **vilain**, *pretty, ugly.*

59. Adjectives which regularly follow are:

a. Adjectives expressing sensible qualities, *color*, *taste*, etc.; or characteristics, as *blind*, *deaf*, etc.; or *nationality*, *religion*, *office*, etc. As, **un chapeau rouge**, *a red hat;* **une fille muette**, *a dumb girl;* **un soldat français**, *a French soldier;* **une église catholique**, *a Catholic church*, etc.

b. Participles and nouns used as adjectives; as, **une fille chérie**, *a beloved daughter;* **un livre amusant**, *an amusing book;* **un espoir trompeur**, *a deceitful hope.*

60. Position sometimes changes with meaning or use:

a. Adjectives which follow in ordinary use, will precede when used figuratively, or as *epithets* (implied in the noun),

or with emphasis; as, **une noire pensée**, *a dark thought;* **la verte prairie**, *the green prairie;* **le noble héros**, *the noble hero.*

b. In some cases with distinct idiomatic senses; as:

un grand homme, *a great man*	**un homme grand**, *a tall man*
un pauvre homme, —— *poor (pitiful)*	**un homme pauvre**, —— *poor (indigent)*
un cher ami, *a dear friend*	**un livre cher**, —— *dear (costly)*
une certaine chose, *certain (indefinite)*	**une chose certaine**, *certain (sure)*
la dernière année, *last (of a series)*	**l'année dernière**, *last (preceding)*

—and others. Such uses will be found in the dictionaries.

c. Sometimes position may depend on the context, or construction; as, **un homme cher à ses amis; un vaillant soldat de la république**, etc.

61. In general, outside of special rules, shorter adjectives precede, longer adjectives follow. In many cases usage varies, according to euphony or emphasis.

NOTE.—If there be two or more adjectives, each will stand as usual; but if connected by a conjunction, they will follow the noun, unless *each* would singly precede it; as, **un beau jeune homme; une belle fille anglaise; un livre français amusant. But une femme belle et courageuse.**

For the form of the partitive, as dependent on the position of the adjective, see **41**, *a.*

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

62. The comparative is formed by placing before the adjective the adverb **plus**, *more* (or **moins**, *less*); as, **plus grand**, *greater;* **moins grand**, *less great*, etc.

The superlative is formed by placing the definite article before the comparative. If the adjective follow the noun, the article is repeated. As: **le plus grand homme; l'homme le plus vertueux**, *the most virtuous man.*

NOTE.—1. The possessive adjective may take the place of the article before the noun; as, **mon plus cher ami**; **mon ami le plus dévoué**, *my most devoted friend.*

2. The so-called absolute superlative *most* is expressed by adverbs, **très**, **fort**, etc., or by the superlative with **de**; thus: **un très beau pays**; **un livre des plus amusants** (= *of the most amusing*), *a most amusing book.*

63. The following are irregular:

bon, *good*	**meilleur**	**le meilleur**	The regular forms are used also in special senses.
mauvais, *bad*	**pire**	**le pire**	
petit, *little*	**moindre**	**le moindre**	

64. *Than* after a comparative is **que**; *in* or *of*, after a superlative, is **de**; as, **plus jeune que Louise**; **la plus belle fille de la ville**, —— *in the town.* Equality in comparison, *as* — *as*, is **aussi . . . que**; after a negative, also **si . . . que**; as, **Marie est aussi belle que Louise**; **mais elle n'est pas aussi** (or **si**) **bonne**, *but she is not*, etc.

SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

65. The adjective agrees with its noun in gender and number. Note also:

a. If the adjective belong to two or more nouns, it will be plural; and masculine if the nouns are of different gender; as, **l'homme et la femme sont morts** (*dead*)—and, more usually, the masculine will stand nearest to the adjective, especially if no verb intervene.

b. If the nouns are used as alternative (with **ou**, *or*) or as synonymous, the adjective agrees with the nearest: **un palais ou une maison ruinée** (*ruined*); **un courage, une prudence étonnante**, *an astonishing courage and prudence.*

c. A plural noun may take several distinctive adjectives in the singular; as, **les cinquième et sixième siècles**, *the fifth and sixth centuries;* **les langues française et anglaise**, *the French and English languages.*

d. An adjective that *precedes* must be repeated before successive nouns; as, **un bon père et une bonne mère.**

66. An adjective with an article is often used as a noun; as, **un malade**, *a sick man;* **la malade**, *the sick*

woman; **les riches,** *the rich* (generally); **le beau,** *the beautiful* (abstractly).

REMARK.—The use of prepositions with adjuncts of the adjective, and other matters belonging to general syntax, not necessary for the beginner, are not here included.

VOCABULARY.

âgé, *aged, old*	**jeune,** *young*
pauvre, *poor*	**riche,** *rich*
malade, *sick*	**mortel,** *mortal*
amusant, *amusing*	**utile,** *useful*
le chien, *the dog*	**une armée,** *an army*
le chat, *the cat*	**la souris,** *the mouse*
la fleur, *the flower*	**la rose,** *the rose*
le fer, *the iron*	**le métal,** *the metal*
la maladie, *the disease*	**la nouvelle,** *the (piece of) news*
le marchand, *the merchant*	**le médecin,** *the physician*
le jour, *the day*	**la nuit,** *the night*
un hiver, *a winter*	**un été,** *a summer*
une année, *a year*	**un (une) enfant,** *a child*
demain, *to-morrow*	**souvent,** *often;* **toujours,** *always*

EXERCISE IX.

1. Les portes et les fenêtres sont fermées. 2. La maison du général est la plus belle (maison) de la ville. 3. Louis est plus âgé que Marie, mais il n'est pas si âgé que Guillaume. 4. La rose est la plus belle des fleurs. 5. Donnez-moi (*me*) une meilleure plume. 6. Le pauvre homme a une maladie mortelle; le médecin n'a pas le moindre espoir. 7. Le chat est le plus mortel ennemi des souris. 8. Le marchand vend des livres chers. 9. Le cheval est l'animal le plus utile aux hommes. 10. L'Angleterre et la France sont les pays les plus riches de l'Europe. 11. Les pauvres sont souvent plus heureux que les riches. 12. En hiver les nuits sont plus longues qu'en été. 13. Le fer est le plus utile des métaux, mais il (*it*) est moins

cher que l'or et l'argent. 14. La vieille femme arriva dans la ville le dernier jour de l'année dernière. 15. J'ai des livres français des plus amusants. 16. Donnez-moi de l'eau plus fraîche. 17. Les plus grands hommes sont souvent les moins heureux. 18. Je finirai demain un certain travail très utile. 19. J'attends une nouvelle certaine du pauvre malade. 20. Le vin rouge est le meilleur. 21. Les jours et les nuits sont beaux en été. 22. Le roi est un homme grand et beau; la reine est aussi bonne que belle. 23. La jeune fille a une robe et un chapeau blancs. 24. Les nations anglaise et française—la nation anglaise et la française.

B. PARTICIPLES.

67. The simple participles are two, *present* and *past* (or *perfect*), as in English: *loving, loved; seeing, seen*, etc. The former ends always in **-ant**, the latter differently in each conjugation. Thus:

Present Participle.	*Past Participle.*
I. donn**ant**	donn**é**
II. finiss**ant**	fin**i**
III. romp**ant**	romp**u**

NOTE.—Observe that the form of the present participle closely resembles that of the imperfect (**44**). Hence the imperfect is said to be *derived* from the pres. part.

68. Participles when used as adjectives are inflected as such (**46**): as, **une fille désobéissante**, *a disobedient girl;* **une canne rompue**, *a broken cane.* Otherwise, the present participle is without inflection.

For the inflection of the past participle, further rules will be given hereafter (**173**).

NOTE.—As already noted, the present participle is not used in compound tenses, like *I am breaking, was breaking*, etc., these being expressed by the simple verb tenses: **je romps, je rompais**, etc.

69. The past participle, as in English with *have, be*, is used with **avoir** and **être** as auxiliary verbs, to form *compound verb forms*. Thus:

Aimer, *to love*.

j'ai aimé, *I have loved*	**je suis_aimé**, or **aimée**, *I am loved*
tu as_aimé, *thou hast l.*	**tu es_aimé**, or **aimée**, *thou art l.*
il (elle) a aimé, *he (she) has l.*	**il (elle) est_aimé** (-ée), *he (she) is l.*
nous_avons_aimé, etc.	**nous sommes_aimés**, or **aimées**, etc.
vous_avez_aimé, etc.	**vous_êtes_aimés**, or **aimées** (see **31**, 4)
ils (elles) ont_aimé, etc.	**ils (elles) sont_aimés**, or **aimées**, etc.

—and so with other parts of **avoir** and **être**—as hereafter.

69*a*. Observe that in the foregoing tenses formed with **être**, the past part. agrees with the subject. The like forms are sometimes *passive*, as above; sometimes *intransitive;* as, **la pluie est tombée**, *the rain is (has) fallen.* (See hereafter **104, 105.**)

NOTE.—1. Remember that in such compound forms—as also in English—*it is the auxiliary that is the verb.* Hence statements made about *verbs* apply, in compound tenses, to the auxiliary. It is misleading to speak of the "auxiliary and the verb"—as in some (so-called) English grammars.

2. Also that **avoir** and **être** are "auxiliary verbs" *only when used as such.*

VOCABULARY.

bourdonner, *to buzz, hum*	**rassembler**, *to gather*
cacher, *to hide*	**replier**, *to fold*
coucher, *to couch, lay down*	**reposer**, *to rest*
fermer, *to shut*	**tomber**, *to fall*
partager, *to share*	**étendre**, *to stretch out*
pencher, *to bend*	**suspendre**, *to suspend*

4. Un Soir d'Été.

Le soleil est descendu à l'occident: la rosée de la
west dew
nuit tombe. Les fleurs ont replié leurs feuilles
their leaves
colorées et penché leur tête[1] sur leur tige légère.[1]
——ed head stalk slight
Les poussins sont rassemblés sous l'aile de la poule,
chicks wing hen
et sont en repos. Les petits oiseaux ont suspendu
——e
leur ramage, et chacun d'eux a caché sa tête sous son
warbling each-one them
aile. Les abeilles ont cessé de bourdonner; elles ont
bees
fini leur ouvrage, et reposent enfermées dans leurs
work enclosed
cellules de cire. Les moutons sont couchés sur leur
cells wax sheep
douce toison. Tous les hommes sont étendus dans
fleece ( )
leurs lits paisibles. L'obscurité[2] est répandue dans les
bed peaceful ——————
cieux et sur la terre: tous les yeux sont fermés: le
repos de la nature est partagé par tous les animaux.
( )
L'œil de Dieu veille sur toutes ses créatures; sa main
God watches ———— hand
est toujours étendue sur nous, aussi bien dans les
well
ténèbres[3] qu'à la clarté du soleil.
darkness as in light

[1] English would here require plural—French regularly singular. [2] Often another English word is preferable, as here, *darkness*. [3] This word always plural.

CHAPTER X.

REMARK.—The numerals are mostly adjective words; but as they differ in important respects from other adjectives, and present also other peculiarities in French, they will be reserved for more comprehensive treatment hereafter.

The so-called *pronominals*, or *adjective pronouns*, may also be more comprehensively treated under Pronouns.

A PRONOUNS.

70. It is a remarkable characteristic of many pronouns, also of some pronominals, in French, that they have two forms, a stronger and a weaker, according to the greater or less independence or emphasis of use. In the personals, and some others, these forms are determined by relation to the verb, and are called *disjunctive* or *conjunctive**; in other cases by relation to the noun, as *pronoun* or *adjective* forms, i.e., used *for* or *with* a noun. In some cases, however, the two forms coincide (as in English).

In some pronouns there is also a remnant of case inflection, which has been entirely lost in nouns.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

71. The personal pronouns are: 1. *Conjunctive*, construed immediately with a verb; 2. *Disjunctive*, not so construed.

For convenience all the forms will be exhibited together; and the disjunctive, which are simpler, will be given first:

* Also *tonic* or *atonic*, with reference to form and stress.

	1st Per.	2d Per.	3d Per. Mas.	3d Per. Fem.
SINGULAR.				
Disjunctive (*Subj. or Obj.*),	**moi**	**toi**	**lui**	**elle**
Conjunctive, *Subject*,	**je**	**tu**	**il**	**elle**
" *Obj. direct*	**me**	**te**	**le**	**la**
" " *indirect*	"	"	⌣ **lui** ⌣	
PLURAL.				
Disjunctive (*Subj. or Obj.*),	**nous**	**vous**	**eux**	**elles**
Conjunctive, *Subject*,	**nous**	**vous**	**ils**	**elles**
" *Obj. direct*	"	"	⌣ **les** ⌣	
" " *indirect*	"	"	⌣ **leur** ⌣	

REFLEXIVE.

Disjunctive { in 3d person only, all genders } **soi**
Conjunctive { and numbers, direct or indirect } **se**

These forms must be carefully distinguished. Note the following:

a. The disjunctives are invariable in all relations.

b. **Nous**, **vous**, **elle**, **elles** are both disjunctive and conjunctive; also **lui**, but in different senses.

c. The indirect object has distinct forms only in the third personals—elsewhere the same as the direct object.

d. The direct objects **le**, **la**, **les** are distinguished from the article only by use with a verb (instead of a noun).

NOTE.—As already remarked (**31**, note 3), the second singular pronouns, **toi**, **tu**, **te**, *thou*, etc., are used more frequently than in English—especially in speaking to relations or intimates, to little children, and sometimes to inferiors, etc. The same applies to the corresponding pronominals. *In all cases the English idiom must be preserved in translation.*

THE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

72. The disjunctive forms are used whenever the pronoun is not immediately construed with a verb, as *subject* or *object*. Hence:

a. With prepositions; as, **pour moi**, **avec lui**, **chez elle**.

b. In the predicate; as, **c'est moi**, *it is I*; **c'est lui**, *it is he*.

c. When the verb is suppressed, or the pronoun is used absolutely; as, **qui est là? Moi**, *who is there? I (am)*;

elle est plus jeune que lui, *she is younger than he (is)*; **toi! ingrate!** *thou ungrateful*, etc.

d. When emphatically separated from the verb; as, **lui seul bâtit la maison**, *he alone built the house;* **lui, que j'ai tant aimé, est mort**, *he, whom I have so loved, is dead;* **elle n'aime que lui**, *she loves only him.*

e. When different pronouns are connected by a conjunction, or are emphatically contrasted. In such cases, the proper conjunctive form is usually added with the verb; as, **lui et moi, nous aimons la ville**, *he and I (we) love the town;* **moi, j'aime la ville, lui, (il) aime la campagne**, *I love the town, he loves the country;* **elle nous aime, lui et moi**, *she loves (us) him and me.*

73. Intensive Forms.—The word **même**, *pl.* **mêmes**, is joined, with the hyphen, to the disjunctives in the emphatic sense of *-self, -selves*; as,

moi-même, *myself;*	*plur.*	**nous-mêmes**, *ourselves*
lui-même, *himself;*	"	**eux-mêmes**, *themselves (m.)*
elle-même, *herself;*	"	**elles-mêmes**, " *(f.)*
etc.		etc.

Vous-même corresponds to *yourself* (31, note 4).

NOTE.—This use of *-self, -selves* must not be confounded with the simple reflexive, without emphasis; as, **il se tua**, *he killed himself.* Here (as in some other cases) forms alike in English are clearly distinguished in French.

73*a*. Soi, soi-même are rarely used except in the singular, and in a general or indefinite sense, **lui-même, elle-même** being used instead; as, **on parle trop de soi(-même)**, *one speaks too much of one's self.* But, **il (elle) parlait de lui-même (d'elle-même)**, etc.

VOCABULARY.

apporter, *to bring*
bâtir, *to build*
demeurer, *to dwell*
dîner, *to dine*
jouer, *to play*
oublier, *to forget*
parler, *to speak*
penser, *to think*
une affaire, *an affair*
la lettre, *the letter*
la devise, *the motto*
l'autre, **les autres**, *the other, others*
aujourd'hui, *to-day*
chez, *at the house of, with*
contre, *against;* **seul**, *alone*

EXERCISE X, a.

1. Louis et Marie parlent souvent de nous. 2. Je parle de lui, d'elle et de toi aussi (*also*). 3. Qui pense à (*of*) moi? Moi, je pense toujours à vous. 4. Lui et moi, nous demeurerons en France. 5. Qui a apporté la lettre? Moi. 6. Nous avons bâti la maison pour nous-mêmes. 7. Je suis plus grand que lui, mais il est plus âgé que moi. 8. Qui (*whoever*) pense trop à (*of*) soi, oublie souvent les autres. 9. Elles parlent trop d'elles-mêmes. 10. Les enfants ont joué avec moi; jouez vous-même avec eux. 11. Le pauvre petit! lui seul reste de tous les enfants. 12. Tous *les* hommes parlent contre lui. 13. Mon meilleur ami demeure chez moi. 14. C'est (*it is*) moi qui pense toujours à toi. 15. Aujourd'hui Louis a dîné chez nous; demain nous dînerons tous chez lui. 16. "Chacun pour soi" est une mauvaise devise.

B. THE VERB INTERROGATIVE.

74. The verb is made interrogative by placing the subject pronoun immediately after it, with hyphen. In the 3d singular, when ending in a vowel, -t-* is inserted; as,

a. **ai-je**, *have I?*	**suis-je**, *am I?*	**donne-t-il**, *does he give?* or,	
as-tu, etc.	**es-tu** etc.	**finit-il**	*is he giving?*
a-t-il	**est-il**	**rompt-il**	etc.
avons-nous	**sommes-nous**	**donna-t-il**	
avez-vous	**êtes-vous**	**donnera-t-il**	
ont-ils	**sont-ils**	etc.	

NOTE.—In Conj. I, 1st present, final **e** becomes **é**; as, **donné-je**, *do I give*, etc. (by exception from **8**, Remark 1).

* This -t-, now purely euphonic, is a remnant of the Latin t (*habet*, etc.), used by analogy with other endings in t.

b. In compound tenses the pronoun is attached to the auxiliary (**69**, note 1); as,

ai-je aimé, *have I loved?*		**suis-je aimé (aimée)**, *am I loved?*	
as-tu aimé	etc.	**es-tu aimé (aimée)**	etc.
a-t-il aimé	etc.	**est-il aimé**	etc.

75. If the subject is a noun, this precedes, and the proper pronoun then stands after the verb; as, **Jean a-t-il le livre?** *has John the book?* **Marie a-t-elle fini le thème?** *has Mary finished the exercise?*

76. But, especially when the question is emphatic, or sometimes only for euphony, the phrase **est-ce que**, *is it (true or possible) that*, is used to ask a question. As, **est-ce que Jean est malade?** *is John sick?* **est-ce que vous avez fini?** *have you (really!) finished?*

NOTE.—This form is usual, for euphony, in 1st present III: **est-ce que je romps?** for **romps-je?** etc. (see **181**, **220**, *b.*)

THE VERB NEGATIVE.

77. In French the negative with a verb usually consists of two elements. The first is always **ne** (n') and stands before the verb, just after the subject; the second is usually **pas** (more emphatically, **point**), which stands after the verb. In the infinitive both often precede. As:

a. **je ne donne pas**, *I do not* **je ne finis pas**, *I do not finish*,
tu ne donnes pas *give*, etc. **je ne romps pas** or *am not*
il ne donne pas **il ne rompt pas** *finishing*,
etc. etc. etc.

ne pas donner, finir, rompre; or **ne donner pas**, etc.

b. In compound tenses, **ne** precedes, **pas** (**point**) follows, the auxiliary (**69**, note 1); as:

je n'ai pas donné **je ne suis pas aimé (aimée)**
tu n'a pas donné **tu n'es pas aimé (aimée)**
il n'a pas donné **il n'est pas aimé**
etc. etc.

ne pas avoir donné; or **n'avoir pas donné**, etc.

THE VERB NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE.

78. The negative verb is made interrogative just as in **74**—other parts remaining unchanged. Thus:

ne donné-je pas	**n'ai-je pas donné—fini—rompu**
ne donnes-tu pas	**n'as-tu pas donné**, etc.
ne donne-t-il pas	**n'a-t-il pas donné**, etc.
etc.	etc.

Similarly:

est-ce que je ne romps pas ? est-ce que je n'ai pas fini ? etc.

REMARK.—1. The verb forms (except as in **74**, note) remain the same in all combinations. They might, indeed, be simply learned alone—without even subject pronoun—except for the elisions and linkings, with which the beginner should become familiar. This done, the ground forms alone may be usefully employed, in writing out or reviewing the verbs. All the combinations may be formed from these, by the simple rules.

2. Remark also the simple tense forms in French, corresponding to the several forms in English: *I give, do give, am giving, did give, was giving*, etc. Herein English has great advantage of expression.

VOCABULARY.

louer, *to praise*	**le domestique**, *the servant*
pleurer, *to weep*	**le maître**, *the master, teacher*
choisir, *to choose*	**le thème**, *the exercise*
haïr, *to hate*	**pourquoi**, *why?*
obéir (à), *to obey*	**que**, *what?* **quand**, *when?*
punir, *to punish*	**tant**, *so much*

EXERCISE X, b.

1. Que cherchez-vous? 2. Avez-vous trouvé une montre?—est-ce que vous avez trouvé une montre? 3. Pourquoi les enfants pleurent-ils? pourquoi ne jouent-ils pas? 4. Pourquoi n'avez-vous pas parlé au maître? 5. Ne donnerez-vous pas un peu *de* pain au pauvre homme? 6. Qui ne louerait pas les beaux

palais et les belles maisons de cette (*this*) ville? 7. Pourquoi pleuré-je? pourquoi ne suis-je pas heureux? 8. Est-ce que la bonté (*goodness*) de Dieu n'est pas partagée (*shared*) par toute la nature?

9. Que choisirez-vous? 10. Le domestique n'a pas rempli les verres. 11. Pourquoi n'a-t-il pas rempli les verres? est-ce qu'il ne remplira pas les verres? 12. Pourquoi haïssez-vous tant les Anglais?—est-ce que vous ne haïssez pas un Anglais? 13. Est-ce que vous n'avez pas fini le thème? quand finirez-vous le thème? 14. Ne choisissons pas un livre amusant; pourquoi ne choisirons-nous pas un livre utile? 15. Les enfants n'obéissent pas au maître; le maître punira-t-il les enfants? 16. Qui ne punirait pas une fille désobéissante?

17. Le marchand vend-il des robes et des chapeaux? 18. Qui ne défendrait pas un ami? 19. Avez-vous répondu à la lettre du maître? 20. Ne descendrez-vous pas? est-ce que vous ne descendrez pas? 21. N'avez-vous pas entendu la grande nouvelle? 22. Le soleil est-il descendu à l'occident? les petits oiseaux sont-ils en repos dans les arbres? 23. La main de Dieu n'est-elle pas toujours étendue sur nous? 24. Petit homme, où es-tu? qu'as-tu là (qu'est-ce que tu as là)?

VOCABULARY.

aller, *to go* *	**rentrer**, *to re-enter, return*
amuser, *to amuse*	**trouver**, *to find*
appeler, *to call*	**voler**, *to steal, rob*
crier, *to cry out*	**saisir**, *to seize*
garder, *to keep*	**rendre**, *to render, pay*

* **Aller**, *to go*, is irregular in some of its parts.

5. Le Sansonnet (*Starling*) Volé.

Un vieux chasseur gardait dans sa chambre un
hunter
sansonnet, qui savait[1] parler quelques paroles. Par
knew (how) a-few words. For
exemple, quand son maître appelait: Sansonnet, où
when master
es-tu? l'oiseau intelligent répondait toujours: Me
voici.[2] Le petit Charles, fils d'un de ses voisins,
aimait beaucoup à voir[3] et à entendre ce sansonnet, et
much to see
rendait souvent visite à son vieil ami, pour jouer
54 (for) to
avec l'oiseau. Un jour il arriva pendant l'absence du
during
chasseur. Il saisit vite l'oiseau, le mit[4] dans sa poche
quick(ly) put pocket
et allait[5] courir chez lui[6] avec son larcin. Mais dans
run booty
ce moment le chasseur rentra. Trouvant Charles
dans sa chambre, pour amuser son petit voisin il ap-
pela, comme d'habitude[7]: Sansonnet, où es-tu? Me
as of habit
voici, cria de toute sa force l'oiseau caché dans la
poche du petit garçon. Ainsi l'oiseau découvrit[8] lui-
boy
même le voleur.[9]
thief

[1] Impf. irreg. **savoir**, *to know (how)*. [2] Lit. *me see-here: here I am.* [3] Irreg. infin. [4] Pret. irreg. **mettre**, *to put.* [5] Impf. *was going, was about-to.* [6] Simply: *home.* [7] Adv. phrase, *as usual.* [8] Pret. (itself regular) of irreg. **découvrir**, *to discover, expose.* [9] Deriv. of verb **voler.**

CHAPTER XI.

A. THE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

The use of the conjunctive pronouns as subject of the verb has already been shown by examples. Their use as objects is as follows:

SINGLE PRONOUN OBJECT.

79. The pronoun object *immediately precedes* the verb (except **80**); as:

je te donne, *I give* (*to*) *thee*
je lui donne, *I give* (*to*) *him*, or *her*
je le cherche, *I seek him* or *it*
je les cherche, *I seek them*

a. In a compound tense, therefore, the pronoun object immediately precedes the auxiliary; as:

je vous ai donné, *I have given* (*to*) *you*
je l'ai cherché, *I have sought him*, or *it*

b. This position remains the same in the interrogative and negative forms; as:

me donne-t-il, *does he give* (*to*) *me*
le cherchez-vous ? *do you seek him*, or *it?*
ne me donne-t-il pas ? *does he not give* (*to*) *me?*
je ne vous donne pas, *I do not give* (*to*) *you*
je ne vous ai pas donné, *I have not given* (*to*) *you*
ne m'a-t-il pas donné ? *has he not given* (*to*) *me?*

In all these examples it will be seen that the subject pronoun, and the negatives **ne . . . pas**, stand as heretofore, except that in every case the pronoun object comes *next before the verb* (or *auxiliary*).

80. But in the *imperative affirmative,* the pronoun object immediately follows the verb, with hyphen. In this case **moi, toi** are used instead of **me, te**; as:

donnez-moi, *give (to) me* **parlez-lui**, *speak to him,* or *her*
lève-toi, *lift thyself (rise)* **donnez-le**, *give it*

The imperative *negative,* however, follows the usual rule:

ne me donnez pas, *do not give (to) me* **ne leur parlons pas**, *let us not speak to them*

REMARK.—1. The conjunctive pronoun *object* is, therefore, either *proclitic,* i.e., immediately depending *before* the verb; or *enclitic,* immediately depending *after* it. In no case can it be used apart from the verb. See foot-note, p. 47.

2. It also appears that the conjunctive subject or object, following the verb, is always connected with it by the hyphen.

81. Outside of verb-objects proper, the conjunctives are also used:

a. As direct object of **voici, voilà** (from **vois**, *see,* and **ici**, *here,* **là**, *there*), meaning *here* or *there is, are*; as, **me voici**, *here I am;* **le voilà**, *there he is,* etc.

b. As indirect object of a predicate adjective, forming one idea with the verb; as, **ce conseil lui sera utile**, *this counsel will be useful to him.*

LE, LA, LES AS EXPLETIVES.

82. The direct objectives **le, la, les** are also used as "expletives," that is, as conjunctive predicates with the verb **être,** to represent a preceding noun, adjective, or phrase. In this case:

a. If the reference is to a definite noun, the pronoun agrees with it; as, **êtes-vous la reine? Oui, je la suis,** *I am (she).*

b. If the reference is to an adjective, or a noun used descriptively, **le** alone is used; as,

êtes-vous reine, *are you a* **je le suis**, *I am queen?* (30)
sera-t-elle heureuse, *will she be* **elle le sera**, *she will be* (*so*) *happy?*

83. Outside of this use, **le** stands often as expletive to represent an entire predicate, objectively; as, **je vous le défends**, *I forbid you it* (= *to do so*); **l'affaire finit comme il l'avait dit**, *the affair ended as he had said* (*it would*).

NOTE.—The term *expletive* here simply implies omission in English.

VOCABULARY.

confesser, *to confess*
manger, *to eat*
offenser, *to offend*
pardonner (ā), *to pardon*
porter, *to carry, wear*
la canne, *the cane*
la grammaire, *the grammar*
le prix, *the price*
aussi, *also, so, as*
partout, *everywhere*

EXERCISE XI, a.

1. Où est ma grammaire française? je la cherche partout. 2. Ne la cherchez pas; je l'ai; la voici. 3. Où est Charles? je lui ai prêté ma canne. 4. Donnez-moi *des* plumes; ne me donnez pas *de* papier. 5. Il me parla; je lui ai parlé aussi. 6. Apportez-moi de l'eau fraîche, s'il vous plaît (*if you please*). 7. Le maître nous donnera des leçons françaises; quand les commencera-t-il? 8. Où est Louise? je l'attends. La voilà. 9. Pardonnez-lui, monsieur, s'il vous a offensé. 10. Es-tu malade, ma chère fille? Oui, je le suis. 11. Êtes-vous les neveux de M. (monsieur) B.? Oui, nous les sommes. 12. Que nous apportez-vous? Nous vous apportons des lettres et de bonnes nouvelles. 13. Ne leur parlons pas de l'affaire; je le défends (*forbid*). 15. Les filles de Mme. (madame) B. me sont très chères; je les attends chez

moi demain. 16. L'affaire n'était pas si difficile (*difficult*) qu'il le pensait.

B. CONJUGATION OF **AVOIR**, (*to*) *Have*.

84. The present tense of the verb **avoir** has already been given (**31**), and its use as auxiliary in part indicated (**69**). The full conjugation will now be given.

NOTE.—1. Observe that in every case the compound parts are formed by combining the corresponding part of **avoir** as auxiliary with the past participle (**eu** = *had*). See **9**, *c*, note.

2. The infinitive and participles are placed first, because they belong to the "principal parts" of the verb, as will appear hereafter.

85. THE IRREGULAR VERB **AVOIR**.

	SIMPLE FORMS.	COMPOUND FORMS.
Infinitive	**avoir**, (*to*) *have*	**avoir eu**, (*to*) *have had*
Present Participle	**ayant**, *having*	**ayant eu**, *having had*
Past Participle	**eu**, *had*	———

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT	COMPOUND PRESENT, OR PERFECT.
j'ai, *I have*	**j'ai eu**, *I have had*
tu as, *thou hast*	**tu as eu**, etc.
il a, *he has*	**il a eu**
nous avons, etc.	**nous avons eu**
vous avez	**vous avez eu**
ils ont	**ils ont eu**
IMPERFECT.	COMPOUND IMPERFECT, OR PLUPERFECT.
j'avais, *I had*	**j'avais eu**, *I had had*
tu avais, etc.	**tu avais eu**, etc.
il avait	**il avait eu**
nous avions	**nous avions eu**
vous aviez	**vous aviez eu**
ils avaient	**ils avaient eu**

PRETERIT, OR PAST DEFINITE.

j'eus, *I had*
tu eus, etc.
il eut,
nous_eûmes
vous_eûtes
ils_eurent

COMPOUND PRETERIT, OR PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

j'eus_eu, *I had had*
tu eus_eu, etc.
il eut_eu
nous_eûmes_eu
vous_eûtes_eu
ils_eurent_eu

FUTURE.

j'aurai, *I shall have*
tu auras, *thou wilt have*
il aura, etc.
nous_aurons, *we shall have*
vous_aurez, *you will have*
ils_auront, etc.

COMPOUND FUTURE, OR FUTURE PERFECT.

j'aurai eu, *I shall have had*
tu auras_eu, *thou wilt have had*
il aura eu, etc.
nous_aurons_eu
vous_aurez_eu
ils_auront_eu

CONDITIONAL.

j'aurais, *I should have*
tu aurais, *thou wouldst have*
il aurait, etc.
nous_aurions
vous_auriez
ils_auraient

COMPOUND CONDITIONAL, OR CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

j'aurais_eu, *I should have had*
tu aurais_eu, *thou wouldst, etc.*
il aurait_eu, etc.
nous_aurions_eu
vous_auriez_eu
ils_auraient_eu

IMPERATIVE MOOD.*

aie, *have (thou)*
ayons, *let us have*
ayez, *have (ye)*

These forms are nearly like the corresponding persons of the present subjunctive, following.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.†

PRESENT.

j'aie
tu aies
il ait
nous_ayons
vous_ayez
ils_aient

Has various idiomatic translations.‡

COMPOUND PRESENT, OR PERFECT.

j'aie eu
tu aies_eu
il ait_eu
nous_ayons_eu
vous_ayez_eu
ils_aient_eu

---

* Other forms, sometimes called imperative, are really subjunctive; as, qu'il ait, *let him have;* qu'ils_aient, *let them have.*

† To complete the paradigm, the subjunctive forms are here added, for future reference. They may perhaps be omitted for the present, as well as the following notes.

‡ The forms of the subjunctive are generally given with the conjunction que; as, que j'aie, que tu aies, etc. This is mis-

PAST, OR IMPERFECT.*		COMPOUND PAST, OR PLUPERFECT.
j'eusse	Has various idiomatic translations.	j'eusse eu
tu eusses		tu eusses eu
il eût		il eût eu
nous eussions		nous eussions eu
vous eussiez		vous eussiez eu
ils eussent		ils eussent eu

NOTE.—1. The infinitive may be, in English, *have*, *to have*, or *having*.

2. The perfect is often called the *past indefinite*, in contrast with the *preterit*, or *past definite*.

3. Note in English the double forms, *shall*, *will*, *should*, *would*.

Interrogative and negative forms are formed as heretofore. (See **78**, Remark.) †

SOME IDIOMATIC USES OF **AVOIR**.

86. Avoir is used in some idiomatic phrases, relating to *persons*, which in English require the verb (*to*) *be*. Such are:

avoir chaud, *to be hot*, or *warm*	**j'ai chaud**, *I am hot*, or *warm*
avoir froid, *to be cold*	**j'avais froid**, *I was cold*
avoir faim, *to be hungry*	**j'eus faim**, *I was hungry*
avoir soif, *to be thirsty*	**j'ai eu soif**, *I have been thirsty*
avoir sommeil, *to be sleepy*	**je n'ai pas sommeil**, *I am not sleepy*
avoir raison, *to be right*	**a-t-il raison?** *is he right?*
avoir tort, *to be wrong*	**n'avait-il pas tort?** *was he not wrong?*
avoir honte, *to be ashamed*	**de quoi avez-vous honte?** *of what are you ashamed?*
avoir peur, *to be afraid*	**il a peur du chien**, *he is afraid of the dog*

---

leading, as **que** forms no part of the subjunctive, and does not always precede it. For a like reason, no form of translation is here given for the subjunctive; its idiomatic translations are so various that any one form would mislead. See Ch. XXIII, B.

* The name *imperfect subjunctive*, usually employed, is objectionable. For this tense, while connected *in use* alike with the imperfect and the preterit of the indicative, is *in form* connected with the preterit, not with the imperfect. The name *past*, here used, expresses its relation, generally, to the *past tenses* of the indicative.

† Such repetitions will not be deemed necessary. The teacher should, however, secure familiarity by oral practice.

NOTE.—The words **chaud, froid**, etc., are really nouns, objects of **avoir**, meaning *heat, cold*, etc., the form being, literally, *have you heat?* etc.

Other idioms are: **avoir lieu**, *to take place;* **avoir soin**, *to take care;* **qu'avez-vous?** *what is the matter with you?* **quel âge avez-vous?** *how old are you?* etc.

AVOIR AS AUXILIARY.

87. Avoir is used as auxiliary to form the compound tenses of all transitive verbs, and of most intransitives. As:

j'avais donné, j'avais fini, j'avais rompu, *I had given*, etc.
j'aurai donné, j'aurai fini, j'aurai rompu, *I shall have given*, etc.
j'ai couru, j'aurai couru, *I have run, shall have run*, etc.

88. In compound tenses formed with **avoir**, the past participle is inflected to agree only with the *direct object preceding;* as,

avez-vous vu ma sœur? *have you seen my sister?*	**oui, je l'ai vue,** *yes, I have seen her*
avez-vous vu mes frères, or **mes sœurs?**	**oui, je les ai vus,** or **vues**
m'avez-vous vu, or **vue?**	**oui, je vous ai vu,** or **vue** (*m.* or *f.*)
nous avez-vous vus, or **vues?**	**oui, je vous ai vus,** or **vues**

j'ai lu les lettres que vous avez reçues, *I have read the letters which you have received.*

But **je leur ai parlé—elle nous a obéi,** the objects being *indirect.*

NOTE.—1. Observe that this rule embraces *two* conditions: the object must be *direct*, and must *precede the verb.* The failure of *either* of these conditions leaves the past participle unchanged.

2. Also, that some verbs transitive in English are intransitive in French; as, **obéir (à)**, *to obey;* **résister (à)**, *to resist*, etc.—as will be seen more fully hereafter (**187**, note).

89. As there can be no direct object, it follows that the past participle of intransitive verbs whose auxiliary is **avoir**, remains always unchanged.

VOCABULARY.

Past Participles.

arrivé, *arrived*
écouté, *listened* (*to*)
envoyé, *sent*
couru, *run*
lu, *read*
reçu, *received*

la faute, *the fault*
le mensonge, *the lie*
la pitié, (*the*) *pity*
le plaisir, (*the*) *pleasure*
la prudence, (*the*) *prudence*
le temps, (*the*) *time*
vite, *fast, quick(ly)*

quand, *when;* quel-le, *what, which.*

EXERCISE XI, b.

1. Aurai-je (est-ce que j'aurai) une montre d'or? 2. Non (*no*), vous aurez une montre d'argent. 3. La femme avait trois fils et deux petites filles; elle a perdu un fils et une fille. 4. Nous aurions beaucoup de plaisir, si nous avions assez d'argent. 5. Ayez pitié de (*on*) nous; nous aurons plus de prudence. 6. Nous avons eu beaucoup de plaisir au bal. 7. Nous aurions eu plus de plaisir, si nous avions eu plus de temps. 8. Avez-vous trouvé la canne que (*which*) j'avais perdue? 9. Oui, je l'ai trouvée; je l'apporterai demain chez vous. 10. Avez-vous reçu les lettres que je vous ai envoyées? 11. Oui, je les ai reçues, mais je ne les ai pas lues. 12. Les domestiques ont couru bien (*very*) vite, mais ils ne sont pas arrivés à (*in*) temps. 13. Le marchand aurait-il vendu les maisons? 14. Il les aurait vendues, s'il ne nous avait pas écoutés. 15. N'ai-je pas eu raison à (*to*) le punir? 16. Non, vous avez eu tort; j'aurais eu pitié du pauvre homme. 17. Nous leur avons parlé de l'affaire, mais ils ne nous ont pas écoutés. 18. J'ai trop chaud; pourquoi avez-vous fermé les fenêtres? 19. Je ne les ai pas fermées; le domestique les aura (*has probably*) fermées. 20. Pourquoi ne nous avez-vous pas répondu? 21. Quand cette affaire eut-elle lieu? 22. Elle eut

lieu l'année dernière. 23. Quel âge aviez-vous, lorsque cette affaire eut lieu ? 24. Ayant fini le thème, nous aurons maintenant assez de temps pour *le* plaisir.

VOCABULARY.

bénir, *to bless*
demander (à), *to ask (of)*
fondre, *to melt, burst*
glisser, *to slip*
pâlir, *to turn pale*
remercier, *to thank*
réveiller, *to awake*
saluer, *to salute*
soulager, *to comfort*
tirer, *draw, draw out*

6. Le Bien Inattendu (*Unexpected Blessing*).

Un soir le grand Frédéric, roi de Prusse, trouva
evening —ia
son page endormi. Il allait[1] le réveiller lorsqu'il vit[2]
— asleep
un papier dans sa poche. C'était une lettre de la
It was
mère du jeune homme, dans laquelle elle le remerciait
(the) which
de ce qu"il lui envoyait une partie de ses gages pour
for that part wages
la soulager dans sa pauvreté, et lui dit que Dieu le
poverty
bénirait pour sa bonne conduite envers elle. Le
conduct towards
roi, après l'avoir[4] lue, rentra dans sa chambre, prit[5] un
rouleau de pièces d'or et le glissa, avec la lettre, dans
roll — 42
la poche du page. Alors il réveilla le dormeur, qui,
Then sleeper
dans son embarras, mit[6] par hasard la main dans la
—ment chance 29,*e*
poche et sentit[7] le rouleau. Il le tire[8], pâlit et fond
en larmes. Qu'as-tu ? lui demanda le roi. Ah, sire!
tears —

je suis perdu; d'où[9] vient[10] cet argent que je trouve
comes this
dans ma poche? Mon ami, répondit le roi, Dieu nous donne souvent un bien inattendu. Envoie[11] cet or à ta mère; salue-la de ma part[12], et dis-lui que j'aurai soin d'elle et de toi.
care

[1] See **5**, note 5. [2] See **2**, 7. [3] Phrase = *because;* or *for sending.* [4] **Après** with infin., *after having;* **lue** refers to **lettre.** [5] Pret. irreg. **prendre,** *to take.* [6] See **5**, 4. [7] Pret. **sentir,** *to feel.* [8] Present for past. [9] From where = *whence.* [10] Pres. irreg. **venir,** *to come.* [11] Imperat. **envoyer.** Why i? [12] On my part = *for me.*

References are to notes on former selections.

CONVERSATION.

De qui racontons-nous cette histoire? D'un roi de Prusse et de son page.—De quel roi? De Frédéric, nommé le Grand.—Pourquoi porte-t-il ce surnom? A cause de ses grandes guerres et de son caractère extraordinaire.—Où était le page? Il était dans l'antichambre du roi.—Pourquoi ne répondit-il pas, lorsque le roi sonna? Il dormait.—Et le roi que fit-il? Il alla dans l'antichambre pour le réveiller.—Et que vit-il dans la poche du jeune homme? Il y vit un petit bout de papier.—Que fit-il après? Il prit ce papier et le lut.—Qu'était-ce? C'était une lettre dans laquelle la mère du page le remerciait de sa bonté envers elle.—Et le roi que fit-il alors de cette lettre? Il la remit dans la poche du page avec un rouleau d'argent.—Et puis? Puis il le réveilla.—Racontez-nous vous-même la suite de l'histoire.

2.

Quels pronoms avons-nous étudiés? Nous avons étudié les pronoms personnels.—Et quelles classes de ces pronoms avons-nous vues? Nous avons vu les pronoms disjonctifs et les conjonctifs.—Et aussi? Aussi quelques-uns qui sont des deux classes.—Est-il facile de les répéter tous? Non, c'est assez difficile, mais c'est possible.—Essayons-le.

CHAPTER XII.

A. CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS—(*Continued.*)

THE CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLES EN, Y.

90. Outside of the conjunctive pronouns proper, **en** and **y** are also used conjunctively, as indirect pronoun objects.

NOTE.—**En** (Lat. inde) and **y** (Lat. ibi) are primarily adverbs, meaning *thence, there,* and are still used also as such.

91. **En** represents the third person, *it* or *them,* in the relations expressed by the preposition **de,** *of, from, with,* etc.; also the partitive *some, any,* referring to an antecedent noun; as:

j'en parle, *I speak of it, of them*
parlez-en, *speak of it, of them*
n'en parlez pas, *do not speak of it, of them*
en avez-vous? *have you any?*
j'en ai, *I have some*
je n'en ai pas, *I have none (not any)*

92. An adjective belonging to **en** will be construed with **de** after the verb, and will agree with the noun referred to. As:

Avez-vous du vin? J'en ai de très bon, { *I have some (of) very good*
Avez-vous des poires? J'en ai de très bonnes, { *I have some (of) very good (ones)*

93. **Y** represents the third person, *it* or *them,* in the relations expressed by the preposition **à,** *to, at.* As:
Avez-vous répondu à ma lettre? Oui, j'y ai répondu, *I have answered (to) it*
Je n'y pense pas, *I am not thinking of it (them).*

94. The 2d sing. imperative, if ending in a vowel, adds **s** before **en** or **y**, dependent upon it; as, **donnes-en**, *give some;* **portes-y**, *carry there;* **vas-y**, *go there.**

95. **En** and **y** usually represent objects *not personal.* But **en**, more rarely **y**, may be used for persons where no ambiguity is possible. The use of **en** for the possessive will be given hereafter **(110)**.

NOTE.—1. **En** and **y** retain also their conjunctive construction when used as adverbs; as, **il s'en alla**, *he went off;* **il y alla**, *he went there*, etc.

2. **En** and **y**, being indirect objects, will not cause agreement of past participle **(88)**; as, **ses fleurs, il m'en a donné**, *some (of them)*; **mes lettres, il y a répondu**, *has answered them.*

3. Observe, especially, that **en** indicates the relation of **de**, **y** the relation of **à**, with the verb. Hence **j'en réponds** has the sense of **répondre de**; **j'y réponds**, that of **répondre à**; **j'en pense (penser de)**; **j'y pense (penser à)**, etc.

REMARK.—**En** and **y** have many idiomatic uses, and (especially **en**) are often hardly translatable into English. Thus they often stand for the entire subject-matter of a preceding sentence (like **le, 83**).

In general, **en** corresponds to the Latin *genitive*, **y** to the *dative*, and each to some of the uses of the *ablative.*

COMPLEX PRONOUN OBJECTS.

96. If the pronoun objects are both direct, or both indirect, both will be disjunctive, after the verb **(72, *e*)**. The proper conjunctive object may also precede; as:

je (les) vois lui et elle, *I see him and her*
je (vous) parle à toi et à lui, *I speak to you and to him*

97. When the direct object is any other than **le, la, les**, the indirect will be disjunctive (except **en, y, 90**). As: **je vous présente à lui**, *I present you to him*
il se présenta à moi, *he presented himself to me*
But **je vous la présente**, *I present her to you*

* By analogy with other imperatives in **s**; as **74**.

98. In all other cases, both objects will be conjunctive, and will both precede or both follow the verb (**79, 80**) in the following order:

a. If both objects are of the same (*third*) person, the indirect always follows the direct; as,

je le lui donne, *I give it to him (her)*
donnez-le-leur, *give it to them*
ne le leur donnez pas, *do not give it to them*

NOTE.—Except **se**, which precedes **le, la, les** (**148**).

b. If the objects are of different persons, the direct always stands nearest the verb; as,

je vous le donne, *I give it to you*
me le donnera-t-il, *will he give it to me?*
donnez-les-moi, *give them to me*

99. But **en** or **y** will always follow other conjunctives; and **en** follows **y**:

a. **je vous en donne**, *I give you* **donnez-lui-en**, *give him some*
some
je les y porte, *I carry them* **portez-l'y**, *carry it there*
there
je vous y en porterai, *I will carry you some there*

b. After the verb **m'en, t'en** are used instead of **moi-en, toi-en**; and sometimes **y-moi, y-toi** for **moi-y, toi-y** (but usually **là**, *there*, for **y**); as,

donnez-m'en, *give me some* **envoyez-moi là**, *send me there*

See foot-note, Appendix I, p. 230.

REPETITION OF PRONOUN OBJECTS.

100. Conjunctive objects must be repeated with each verb; as:

il m'aime et (il) me loue, *he loves and praises me*

a. Hence in compound tenses (**69**, note) no repetition occurs unless the auxiliary is repeated; as,

je l'ai vu et entendu, *I have seen and heard him*

b. But both auxiliary and object must be repeated if the latter stands in *different relation* to the verbs; as,

je l'ai entendu et je lui ai obéi { *I have heard and obeyed him* (**88**, note 2).

101. With successive imperatives the object of the second (contrary to **80**) will often precede the verb; as:

aimez-moi et me louez, *love me and praise me*
faites-nous cet honneur, et l'acceptez pour gendre, *do us this honor, and accept him for son-in-law*

NOTE.—The conjunctive subject may or may not be repeated, according to emphasis or the nature of the connection.

VOCABULARY.

corriger, *to correct*
demander, *to ask (for)*
présenter, *to present, introduce*
remercier, *to thank*
une école, *a school*
un écolier, *a school-boy*
une écolière, *a school-girl*

EXERCISE XII.

1. Voici de bon pain; mangez-en. 2. J'en mangerai, s'il vous plaît. 3. Avez-vous aussi de bonne viande? 4. Oui, j'en ai d'excellente. 5. Voilà la chambre du malade; portes-y de l'eau fraîche. 6. Je n'en ai pas de fraîche; j'en apporterai. 7. Avez-vous répondu à la lettre que vous avez reçue ce matin (*morning*)? 8. Je n'y ai pas répondu; j'y répondrai demain. 9. Si vous avez les livres que le maître m'a demandés, donnez-les-moi. 10. Je ne vous les donnerai pas; je les lui ai déjà envoyés. 11. Voilà de bonnes poires; donnez-m'en. 12. Je ne vous en donnerai pas; je les ai apportées pour la malade. 13. Le malade demande de l'eau fraîche; portez-lui-en. 14. J'ai vu (*seen*) lui et elle à l'école; où étiez-vous,

vous et Élise? 15. Élise et moi, nous étions chez nous; nous y sommes restés tout le matin. 16. Voilà votre (*your*) mère; présentez-moi à elle, s'il vous plaît. 17. Et mon père aussi; je vous présenterai avec plaisir à elle et à lui. 18. Et voici mes enfants; je vous les présente. 19. Combien de fautes avez-vous eues dans votre thème? Moi, j'en ai eu beaucoup. 20. Le maître les a-t-il corrigées? 21. Il en a corrigé de très mauvaises; je corrigerai les autres moi-même. 22. Voilà ma maison; portez-y mes livres. 23. Je ne les y porterai pas; je les porterai au maître. 24. Ne les lui portez pas; ils sont à moi; lui, il n'en a pas besoin (*need*).

102. B. THE IRREGULAR VERB ÊTRE, (*to*) *Be.*

(See 84.)

	SIMPLE.	COMPOUND.
Infinitive	être, (*to*) *be*	avoir été, (*to*) *have been*
Pres. Part.	étant, *being*	ayant été, *having been*
Past Part.	été, *been*	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	COMP. PRESENT, OR PERFECT.
je suis, *I am*	j'ai été, *I have been*
tu es, *thou art*	tu as été, etc.
il est, *he is*	il a été
nous sommes, etc.	nous avons été
vous êtes	vous avez été
ils sont	ils ont été
IMPERFECT.	**COMP. IMPERFECT, OR PLUPERFECT.**
j'étais, *I was*	j'avais été, *I had been*
tu étais, *thou wast*	tu avais été, *thou hadst been*
il était, *he was*	il avait été, *he had been*
nous étions, etc.	nous avions été, etc.
vous étiez	vous aviez été
ils étaient	ils avaient été

Preterit, or Past Definite.	Comp. Preterit, or Preterit Anterior.
je fus, *I was*	j'eus été, *I had been*, etc.
tu fus, *thou wast*	(Other compound tenses as above. See avoir, 85.)
il fut, *he was*	
nous fûmes, etc.	
vous fûtes	
ils furent	

Future.	Conditional.
je serai, *I shall be**	je serais, *I should be*
tu seras, *thou wilt be*	tu serais, *thou wouldst be*
il sera, *he will be*	il serait, *he would be*
nous serons, etc.	nous serions, etc.
vous serez	vous seriez
ils seront	ils seraient

Imperative Mood.

sois, *be (thou)*	(See Imperative of avoir, 85.)
soyons, *let us be*	
soyez, *be (ye)*	

Subjunctive Mood.*

Present.		Past.	
je sois tu sois il soit nous soyons vous soyez ils soient	See corresponding form of avoir, 85.	je fusse tu fusses il fût nous fussions vous fussiez ils fussent	See corresponding form of avoir, 85.

Note.—It is seen that the compound forms of être differ from those of avoir only in the participle été instead of eu. The like is true of all verbs whose auxiliary is avoir.

Some Idiomatic Uses of Être.

103. The phrase **être à**, *to be* (*belong*) *to*, may be used for the predicate possessive; as, **à qui est le livre?** *whose* (*to whom*) *is the book?* **Le livre est à moi—à Jean—au maître**—*mine, John's, the teacher's.*

* See notes to 85.

For the use of **est-ce que**, introducing a question, see **76**.

ÊTRE AS AUXILIARY.

104. As already seen (**69**), **être** as auxiliary, with the past participle of a transitive verb, forms, as in English, the passive voice, or passive conjugation—the past participle agreeing with the subject; as, **le père est aimé—la mère est aimée—le père et la mère sont aimés; le livre n'est pas fini; la canne a été rompue**, *the cane has been broken*, etc.

NOTE.—1. It is needless to detail the passive conjugation—the rule being (as **84**, note) to make each passive form by combining the corresponding form of **être** with the past participle (inflected as above). As:

PRESENT.	COMPOUND PRESENT.
je suis aimé (aimée)	**j'ai été aimé (aimée)**
IMPERFECT.	COMPOUND IMPERFECT.
j'étais aimé (aimée)	**j'avais été aimé (aimée)**
FUTURE (*Plural*).	COMPOUND FUTURE.
nous serons aimés (aimées)	**nous aurons été aimés (aimées)**
etc.	etc.

—with interrogative and negative forms, as heretofore.

2. Further remarks on the use of the passive will be given hereafter (**163**, etc.).

105. **Être** is used also as auxiliary with some intransitives—chiefly verbs of motion and a few others which express a change of condition. As:

aller, *to go*	**décéder**, *to decease*
arriver, *to arrive*	**mourir**, *to die*
partir, *to depart*	**naître**, *to be born*
sortir, *to go out*	**rester**, *to remain*
venir, *to come*	**tomber**, *to fall*, etc.

—the past participle in this case also agreeing with the subject. As:

les soldats sont partis, *the soldiers have (are) set out*
les lettres sont arrivées, *the letters have (are) arrived*

NOTE.—1. As was seen (87), some intransitives have **avoir** as auxiliary. The use of **être** is usually indicated in the dictionary.

2. Some verbs take **avoir** when expressing *action* only; **être** when expressing *condition, position,* as result of action or motion. Others take **avoir** or **être** in special senses. Such uses are also indicated in the dictionary.

REMARK.—**Être** with intransitives is usually translated *have.* But the use of *be* in English was formerly more common than now. For **être** as auxiliary with reflexive verbs, see **148.**

VOCABULARY.

arrêter, *to arrest, stop*
condamner, *to condemn*
couper, *to cut, cut off*
espérer, *to hope*
gagner, *to gain, reach*
laisser, *to leave, let*
marcher, *to march, proceed*
ordonner (à), *to order*
passer, *to pass, cross*
sauver, *to save*
tâcher, *to try*
tuer, *to kill*
la mort, *death*
la fois, *the time (repetition)*

7. La Mort de Cicéron (*Cicero*).

Cicéron avait été condamné à mort par les triumby ———
virs. Il savait[1] bien qu'il ne lui était pas possible
—— well it
d'espérer de grâce.[2] Il était sorti[3] de Rome et son
to ———
premier dessein fut de passer la mer avec son frère,
first design sea
pour aller dans le camp de Brutus. Les deux frères
———
marchaient ensemble quelque temps, déplorant leur
together some ———ing their
infortune. Enfin ils gagnèrent une maison de
mis——— At-last
campagne[4], et Cicéron quitta son frère, pour y rester.
country
Je mourrai[5], dit-il, dans ma patrie[6], que j'ai tant de
so-many ( )

fois[1] sauvée. Quelques jours après, ses gens le
A-few people
tirèrent de cette maison, pour tâcher de le mettre[6] en
to
sûreté. Ils n'en[9] eurent pas le temps. Ceux qui le
security Those
cherchaient pour le tuer étaient déjà arrivés. Ses
already
gens voulaient[10] le défendre; il leur[11] ordonna d'arrêter la litière. En même temps il mit[12] la tête hors
litter same out
de la portière, et le centurion Herennius la lui[13]
window
coupa.

[1] Impf. irreg. **savoir**, *to know.* [2] Partitive, *any grace*, or *pardon.* [3] Past part. irreg. **sortir**, *to go out.* [4] Adjective phrase; see **42.** [5] Fut. irreg. **mourir**, *to die.* [6] *Native country;* dist. from **pays.** [7] See **41**, *b.* [8] Irreg. infin. object of **de.** [9] *For it*, or, *to do so*, **95**, Rem. [10] Impf. irreg. **vouloir**, *to wish.* [11] Here indir. obj., same form as poss. adj. l. 5. [12] See **5**, 4. [13] Ind. obj. (*him*)—not transl.

CONVERSATION.

Quels verbes avons-nous étudiés? Nous avons étudié les verbes *avoir* et *être.*—Comment ces verbes sont-ils employés comme (*as*) auxiliaires? Avec un participe passé, pour former les temps composés.—Quel est l'auxiliaire des verbes transitifs? C'est l'auxiliaire *avoir.*—Et des verbes passifs? C'est l'auxiliaire *être.*—Et des verbes intransitifs? C'est tantôt *avoir* et tantôt *être.*—Quels sont les modes du verbe français? Ce sont *l'infinitif*, *l'indicatif*, *l'impératif*, et le *subjonctif.*—Et les temps simples? Ce (*they*) sont le *présent*, *l'imparfait*, le *prétérit* (ou *passé défini*), le *future*, et le *conditionnel.*—Et les temps composés? Ce sont le *parfait*, le *plus-que-parfait*, le *prétérit antérieur*, le *futur antérieur*, et le *conditionnel antérieur.* —Donnez des exemples de chacun de ces temps, simples et composés.

CHAPTER XIII.

A. THE POSSESSIVES.

The possessives are either *adjective, with* a noun; or *pronoun, for* a noun (see **70**).

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

106. The possessive adjectives are as follows:

		M.	*F.*	*Pl. M. & F.*	
Sing. 1*st Pers.*		**mon**	**ma**	**mes**	*my*
2*d*	"	**ton**	**ta**	**tes**	*thy* (see 71, note)
3*d*	"	**son**	**sa**	**ses**	*his, her, its, one's*
Plur. 1*st*	"	**notre**	**notre**	**nos**	*our*
2*d*	"	**votre**	**votre**	**vos**	*your*
3*d*	"	**leur**	**leur**	**leurs**	*their*

a. The possessive adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun following, not with the person referred to. As, **mon oncle**, *my uncle;* **ma tante**, *my aunt;* **son frère**, *his* or *her brother;* **sa sœur**, *his* or *her sister;* **ses pieds**, *his, her,* or *its feet,* etc.

b. Before a feminine noun beginning with a vowel or silent *h*, **mon, ton, son** are used instead of **ma, ta, sa**; as, **mon encre**, *my ink;* **son épée**, *his,* or *her, sword.*

NOTE.—Once these forms were elided; as, **m'amour**, *my love;* **m'amie** (hence now, **ma mie**), *my dear.*

c. Like the articles, the possessive adjectives must be repeated before each noun; as, **mon frère et ma sœur**, *my brother and (my) sister.*

NOTE.—But such repetition will not occur when the successive nouns designate the same object; as, **mon ami et protecteur**, *my friend and protector.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

107. The possessive pronouns are used without a noun, and are regularly preceded by the definite article:

	M.	*F.*	*Pl. M.*	*Pl. F.*	
1*st Sing.*	le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	*mine*
2*d* "	le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	*thine*
3*d* "	le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes	*his, hers* / *its, one's*

	M. F.	*M. F.*	
1*st Plur.*	le, la, nôtre	les nôtres	*ours*
2*d* "	le, la, vôtre	les vôtres	*yours*
3*d* "	le, la, leur	les leurs	*theirs*

Similarly, **du mien, de la mienne ; des miens, des miennes** ; *of mine.*

au mien, à la mienne ; aux miens, aux miennes, *to mine*, etc.

a. Like the possessive adjectives, the possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the noun referred to, not with the person ; as :

mon frère a sa plume et ma sœur a la sienne, *hers* (agreeing with **plume**).

mon frère a ses livres et ma sœur a les siens, *hers* (agreeing with **livres**).

POSSESSIVE IDIOMS.

REMARK.—The term *idiom* is used to denote forms of expression unlike the English, even though—as is often the case—the peculiarity of form may be in English rather than in French.

108. Possessive Adjective Idioms.

a. The possessive adjectives are used before names of kinship, where omitted in English ; as, **bonjour, ma sœur,** *good morning, sister.* (But not before **papa** and **maman.**)

NOTE.—With such names of kinship preceded by **votre,** *your,* the titles **monsieur, madame, mademoiselle,** are often politely prefixed ; as, **monsieur votre père est-il ici ?** *is your father here?*

b. In cases of obvious reference to the same personal subject, the definite article alone is often equivalent to the English possessive adjective; as, **il leva la main**, *he raised his (the) hand*, etc. (**29**, *e*).

c. Or, the indirect object of the personal pronoun referred to will also be expressed; as, **il se cassa la jambe**, *he broke his leg (to himself the leg)*; **je lui ai coupé le doigt**, *I have cut off his finger (to him the finger)*.

NOTE.—This idiom is sometimes called the *indirect* or *dative* possessive. It is limited mainly to expressions concerning the *body, dress*, etc., where no ambiguity is possible.

109. Possessive Pronoun Idioms.

a. The possessive pronouns are used absolutely (as nouns), in the singular, in the sense of *property, one's own;* in the plural, in the personal sense of *family, friends*, etc.; as, **chacun aime le sien—les siens**, *everybody loves his own (property)—his own (friends)*; **les nôtres ont fui**, *our (soldiers) have fled.*

b. The expression **est le mien**, etc., is distinctive of *mine* from *thine*, etc.; **est à moi** simply asserts my *ownership;* as, **quel livre est le vôtre?** *which book is yours?* **cette bague est à moi**, *this ring is mine—belongs to me.*

c. The expression, *a friend of mine, of ours*, etc. (meaning *one of my friends*, etc.), is rendered by **un de mes—nos—amis**, etc. The idiomatic *this heart of mine* is simply **mon cœur**, etc. **Un sien oncle**, *an uncle of his*, etc.

EN FOR THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE.

110. The possessives *its, their* (of *things*—more rarely of *persons*) may be expressed by **en** (**91**), when they do not refer to the subject of the verb, or belong to a noun governed by a preposition; as, **Paris est une belle ville—j'en admire les grandes rues**, *I admire its large streets.* But, **Paris a ses beautés** (referring to the subject); **j'admire la grandeur de ses rues** (the noun governed by a preposition).

REMARK.—Generally, **en** can never refer to the subject of the verb, nor limit a noun depending on a preposition.

Special vocabularies will no longer be given. Words may be found in the general vocabulary, at end of the book. The Exercises will, however, be still held strictly to the illustration of the progressive topics of the grammar, with utmost simplicity of phrase.

EXERCISE XIII.

1. Le marchand a vendu sa voiture et ses chevaux. 2. Le général avait perdu son épée, mais son domestique l'a trouvée. 3. La tante aime son neveu plus que sa nièce. 4. Avez-vous apporté mes livres ou les vôtres? 5. J'ai apporté les miens; la servante apportera les vôtres et Élise apportera les siens. 6. Donne à chacun le sien (*own*). 7. A qui sont ces belles robes, avec leurs couleurs brillantes? 8. Elles sont à Marie: elles sont plus belles que les miennes. 9. Le pauvre homme leva la tête et étendit les mains vers le ciel. 10. Chaque siècle a ses vices et ses vertus; les anciens avaient les leurs; nous avons les nôtres. 11. Lorsque le fils rencontra (*met*) son père, il l'embrassa et lui baisa les mains. 12. L'intérêt des nôtres nous est cher. 13. J'ai rencontré ce matin monsieur votre père et madame votre mère. 14. Voilà un bel arbre; je n'en connais (*know*) pas le nom, mais j'en admire les grandes et belles feuilles. 15. Cette ville est remarquable par (*for*) ses richesses; n'en admirez-vous pas les belles rues et l'élégance de ses maisons? 16. Bonjour, ma sœur; viens (*come*) avec moi; un de nos anciens amis est chez nous (*an old friend*, etc.).

B. REGULAR VERB CONJUGATIONS.

The regular verb-forms, heretofore given separately, will now be collated—the subjunctive being added for future reference.

NOTE.—As the great majority of regular verbs of Conj. III end in -d, one of these will be here substituted for **rompre**. The only difference is in the 3d present indicative (37).

111. COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE THREE CONJUGATIONS.

The table separates the roots and the endings. The points of difference are indicated by the type.*

	INFINITIVE.	PRES. PART.	PAST PART.
I.	donn -er	-ant	-é
II.	fin -ir	-issant	-i
III.	vend -re	-ant	-u

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I.	donn -e	-es	-e	-ons	-ez	-ent
II.	fin -is	-is	-it	-issons	-issez	-issent
III.	vend -s	-s	-(t)	-ons	-ez	-ent

IMPERFECT.

I.	donn -ais	-ais	-ait	-ions	-iez	-aient
II.	fin -issais	-issais	-issait	-issions	-issiez	-issaient
III.	vend -ais	-ais	-ait	-ions	-iez	-aient

PRETERIT.

I.	donn -ai	-as	-a	-âmes	-âtes	-èrent
II.	fin -is	-is	-it	-îmes	-îtes	-irent
III.	vend -is	-is	-it	-îmes	-îtes	-irent

* This comparison might be followed into much further detail, but it is thought best to give only such simple analysis as may be understood by all classes of learners. Here, as elsewhere throughout French grammar, students who know Latin may derive much advantage from additional explanations by the teacher, with reference to the Latin forms.

FUTURE.

I.	donn	-erai	-eras	-era	-erons	-erez	-eront
II.	fin	-irai	-iras	-ira	-irons	-irez	-iront
III.	vend	-rai	-ras	-ra	-rons	-rez	-ront

CONDITIONAL.

I.	donn	-erais	-erais	-erait	-erions	-eriez	-eraient
II.	fin	-irais	-irais	-irait	-irions	-iriez	-iraient
III.	vend	-rais	-rais	-rait	-rions	-riez	-raient

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

I.	donn	-e	-ons	-ez	*See the present*
II.	fin	-is	-issons	-issez	
III.	vend	-s	-ons	-ez	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I.	donn	-e	-es	-e	-ions	-iez	-ent
II.	fin	-isse	-isses	-isse	-issions	-issiez	-issent
III.	vend	-e	-es	-e	-ions	-iez	-ent

PAST.

I.	donn	-asse	-asses	-ât	-assions	-assiez	-assent
II.	fin	-isse	-isses	-ît	-issions	-issiez	-issent
III.	vend	-isse	-isses	-ît	-issions	-issiez	-issent

RECAPITULATION.

112. A comparison of the foregoing forms will show the following principal points of difference in the three conjugations:

a. The different endings of the *infinitive.*

b. The distinctive syllable **-iss-** in the present participle, and some other parts of Conj. II.

c. The different endings of the *past participle.*

d. The singular of the *present* and of the *preterit.* In both, I lacks the endings **s** and **t** of the first and third persons; and in the present, III lacks the connecting vowel (and sometimes **t**).

e. A difference of the vowel connecting the ending with the root. This is in I, **a** or **e**; in II, **i**; in III, **i** or *none.*

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB.

113. The leading forms indicating these differences of conjugation are called the *principal parts*, from which the others are said to be *derived*.*

The principal parts are the *Infinitive*, the *Present Participle*, the *Past Participle*, the *Present* and the *Preterit* (*Indicative*) *Singular*.

114. The following are the rules for the

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

a. From the *infinitive* are formed the *future* and the *conditional* by adding the endings **-ai**, **-ais**, etc. (**-e** final being dropped in III). See **56**, note 2.

b. From the *present participle* are formed the *imperfect*, by changing **-ant** into **-ais**, etc.; the *present subjunctive*, by changing **-ant** into **-e**, etc.; and the plural of the *present*, by changing **-ant** into **-ons**, **-ez**, **-ent**.

c. With the *past participle* are formed all the *compound tenses*—by the help of the proper auxiliary **avoir** or **être**.

d. From the *present* is formed the *imperative*, the singular being the same as the first person present, and the plural the same as the same persons in the present.

e. From the *preterit* is formed the *past subjunctive*, by adding **-se**, etc., to the second person singular.

115. With these rules, the forms of the regular verbs may be reduced to the following synopsis, from which the other parts may be easily formed:

SYNOPSIS OF THE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.	I.	II.	III.
Infinitive.	**donner**	**finir**	**vendre**
Pres. Part.	**donnant**	**finissant**	**vendant**
Past Part.	**donné**	**fini**	**vendu**
Pres. Indic.	**donne**	**finis**	**vends**
Pret. Indic.	**donnai**	**finis**	**vendis**

* Of course no such actual derivation is implied—the grouping is for convenience only.

REMARK.—1. The above rules and synopses will require some modification for the irregular verbs (hereafter). Let the synopses and the tense formations be practised until familiar.

2. Here should logically follow the irregular verbs. But this subject is so large that it is better reserved for comprehensive treatment hereafter (Ch. XXV, etc.). Meantime, however, the Introduction to Ch. XXV may be studied with advantage, and the teacher may select some of the more important irregular verbs for gradual study. Also, such forms as occur in the reading may be made familiar, by reference to the List at the end of the book (p. 233).

8. Probité Scrupuleuse.

———y ————ous

Le maréchal de Turenne rentrant tard un soir chez
marshal late
lui, sa voiture fut arrêtée par des voleurs. Comme
robbers
ils allaient lui[1] prendre une bague à laquelle[2] il
take ring
attachait beaucoup de prix, le maréchal leur promit[3]
——— value
une somme de vingt louis, s'ils consentaient[4] à la lui
sum twenty —— to
laisser[5]. Les voleurs trouvant cette proposition fort
leave ———— very
avantageuse acceptent et laissent partir[6] le maréchal
adv———— ———
en liberté. Le caractère de Turenne était connu[7], et
——y ————
les bandits ne doutaient point de sa fidélité à remplir
——— ——b—— 77 ——y fulfil
sa promesse.
——ise.

Aussi, le lendemain, l'un d'eux se présenta chez
So next-day ( ) ————
Turenne, qui avait grande compagnie, et lui demanda
———ny

à l'oreille[8] s'il avait oublié l'engagement pris[9] par lui
ear forget
la veille. Le maréchal compta la somme au voleur;
evening-before sum
et, lui ayant laissé le temps de partir, il raconta
recount
l'aventure, et sa conclusion fut qu'on devait[10] tenir
adv one keep
inviolablement sa[11] parole.
y word

[1] Indir. obj.; here, *from him*. [2] Fem. of **lequel**, *which*. [3] Pret. irreg. **promettre**, *to promise*. [4] Impf. irreg. **consentir**, *to consent*. [5] Infin. dep. on **à**. [6] *Let the m. go*, etc.—note the order of words. [7] Irreg. p. part. **connaître**, *to know*. [8] Phrase = *in a whisper*. [9] Irreg. p. part. **prendre**, *to take*. [10] Impf. irreg. **devoir**, *to owe*—here *ought to*. [11] Here *one's*, ref. to the indef. **on**, *one*.

Conversation.

Quelles sont les parties (ou formes) principales du verbe français? Les parties principales du verbe sont *l'infinitif*, le *participe présent*, le *participe passé*, et le *présent* et le *prétérit* de l'indicatif.—Pourquoi sont-ce les parties principales? Parce que d'elles on peut (*can*) former toutes les autres parties par des règles de dérivation.—Quelles sont les parties formées de l'infinitif? De l'infinitif se forment (*are formed*) le futur et le conditionnel.—Et du participe présent? Du participe présent se forment l'imparfait, le présent du subjonctif, et le pluriel du présent de l'indicatif.—Et du participe passé? Du participe passé se forment les temps composés, avec l'aide d'un auxiliaire, *avoir* ou *être*.—Et du présent? Du présent se forme l'impératif.—Et du prétérit? Du prétérit se forme le prétérit du subjonctif.—Essayons des exemples de ces formations, pour chacune des trois conjugaisons. Par exemple:

CHAPTER XIV.

A. THE DEMONSTRATIVES.

The Demonstratives are adjective or pronoun (70).

THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE.

116. The demonstrative adjective (*that, this, those, these*) is **ce** (before vowel or mute *h* **cet**), *f.* **cette**, *pl.* **ces**; as, **ce livre, cet homme, cette femme; ces livres, ces hommes, ces femmes.**

117. The specific distinction *this* or *that* is made by appending **-ci** (*here*) and **-là** (*there*), with hyphen, to the noun; as, **ce livre-ci**, *this book;* **ces livres-là**, *those books*, etc.

NOTE.—Other demonstrative expressions are formed with the article; as, **l'autre**, *the other;* **le même**, *the same*, etc.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonstrative pronouns are:

118. The uninflected **ce** (**c'**), *that* (*it*), used:

a. As antecedent to a relative (not personal), **ce qui, ce que**, meaning *that which* or *what* (as hereafter, **144**).

b. As grammatical subject of the verb **être** (*that is, it is*, etc.). If the predicate (logical subject) is of 3d plural, the verb agrees with it; otherwise with **ce**; as, **est-ce vous?** *is it you?* **c'est moi**, *it is I.*

But, **ce sont eux**, *it is they;* **c'étaient nos amis**, *it was our friends.*

Là may be added for emphasis: **ce sont là mes gants**, *those are my gloves.*

NOTE.—Observe that in English the verb always agrees with the *grammatical* subject: "It is facts we want."

119. The uninflected compounds **ceci, cela** = *this, that,* in noun sense; as, **donnez-moi ceci,** or **cela,** *give me this,* or *that.*

NOTE.—**Cela** is contracted familiarly to **ça.**

120. The inflected

	celui,	*f.* **celle,** *that* (*one*)
pl.	**ceux,**	**celles,** *those*

expresses no complete sense, but always requires to be further determined:

a. By the affixes **-ci, -là.** As, **quelle robe préférez-vous?** *which dress do you prefer?* **je préfère celle-ci,** or **celle-là,** *I prefer this one,* or *that one.* In this use, **celui-là,** etc., often = *the former,* **celui-ci,** *the latter.*

b. By a limiting noun, with **de,** *that of,* etc., often = the English possessive; as, **ma maison et celle de mon frère,** *my house and my brother's* (*that of my b.*); **ces gants et ceux de ma sœur,** *those gloves and my sister's,* etc.

c. By a restrictive or defining relative, which must immediately follow (*he who, that* [*one*] *which,* etc.). As:

celui qui est content est heureux, *he who is content is happy*
cette maison et celle que j'ai vendue, — *that* (*one*) *which I have sold*

NOTE.—1. But if the antecedent is separated from the relative, **celui-là** must be used; as, **celui-là est heureux qui est content,** *he is happy who is content.*

2. Also, if the antecedent is *already defined,* **celui-ci** or **celui-là** will be used. As, **des deux robes je préfère celle-ci, qui coûte moins, à celui-là, qui est plus chère,** — *this one, which costs less, to that one, which is dearer.* (Note that here the relative is preceded by a comma—as also in English.)

REMARK.—**Celui,** etc., is the regular antecedent of the restrictive relative, instead of the personal pronoun, as in English (*he who,* etc.).

121. The adverb **là**, *there*, is construed as a demonstrative pronoun, with some prepositions; as, **de là**, *from that*; **par là**, *by that*; or as prefix: **là-dessus**, *upon it* (*thereupon*), etc.

FURTHER USE OF CE.

122. Ce, as subject of **être** (118, *b*), must be distinguished from il:

a. In the sense of *it is*, il is used in expressions of *time*; or when the predicate is an *adjective* referring to a logical subject *following*; as, **il est trop tard**; **il est six heures**, *it is too late; it is six o'clock*; **il est impossible de faire cela**, *it is impossible to do that*; **il est évident que vous avez tort**, *it is evident that you are wrong.*

b. In other cases **ce** is used; as, **je ne ferai pas cela**, **c'est impossible**, *I will not do that, it is impossible*; **vous avez tort, c'est évident**, *you are wrong, it is evident*; **c'est dommage**, *it is a pity*; **c'est moi**, etc.

c. In the sense of *he is, she is*, etc., **il**, **elle**, etc., are used if the predicate is an adjective, or a noun used alone in a simply adjective sense; as, **il est anglais**, *he is an Englishman* (*English*); **il est médecin**, *he is a physician.*

d. But **ce** is used if the predicate noun have an article or adjective; as, **c'est un héros**, *he is a hero*; **c'est un médecin anglais**, *he is an English physician.*

NOTE.—With *impersonal verbs* (Ch. XVII, B) il is used; also in a few phrases taken indefinitely; as, **il est vrai**, *'tis true*, etc.

123. Ce, with **être**, often repeats a foregoing subject; as:

a. A noun, or an infinitive, emphatically; as, **l'empire, c'est la paix**, *the empire is peace*; **mourir pour la patrie, c'est le sort le plus beau**, *to die for one's country is*, etc.

b. Especially a relative subject clause, **ce qui**, **ce que**, etc. As, **ce que je souhaite, c'est de vous voir**, *what I desire, (it) is to see you.* But not if the predicate is an adjective; as, **ce qui est bon est beau**, *what is good is beautiful.*

NOTE.—**Ce** stands in some idioms as subject of the verbs **devoir, pouvoir, sembler**; as, **ce me semble,** *it seems to me*—and some other phrases, where we might expect **il**.

REMARK.—The demonstrative pronouns and adjectives must be carefully distinguished in form and use, because their equivalents are often identical in English.

EXERCISE XIV, a.

1. Ces thèmes sont très faciles; avez-vous fini les vôtres? 2. Je n'ai pas fini cette sentence-ci; c'est très difficile. 3. Mes enfants et ceux de mon frère sont dans cette maison-là. 4. Ceci est pour moi, cela est pour vous. 5. Ne me parlez pas de ça; c'est une chose impossible. 6. Est-ce toi, mon fils? Non, mon père; c'est moi; c'est ta fille. 7. Voici deux robes de soie blanche; préférez-vous celle-ci ou celle-là? 8. Votre voisin est-il anglais? Non, il est français. 9. Connaissez-vous (*do you know*) cet homme-là? C'est un officier français. 10. La vie des nations est semblable (*similar*) à celle des hommes. 11. De ces deux généraux celui-là était heureux; celui-ci était malheureux; c'est tout. 12. Celui-là est heureux qui est content de peu. 13. Oubliez les services que vous avez rendus; n'oubliez pas ceux que vous avez reçus. 14. Ne dis (*say*) pas cela: ce ne sont pas là les conseils d'un ami. 15. Ce sont des thèmes assez difficiles; mais il est possible de (*to*) les finir avant minuit. 16. Non; il est trop tard; il est déjà onze heures; finissons celui-ci, laissons celui-là à demain.

B. ORTHOGRAPHICAL CHANGES IN CONJ. I.

In accordance with orthographical rules already stated (**8**, Remarks) some verbs of Conj. I undergo change in certain forms, as follows:

124. A silent **e**, and usually **é**, may not stand at the end of a syllable before **e** in the next syllable. Hence:

a. Where such cases would arise, **e**, **é**, usually become **è**. As:

acheter, *to buy;* **achète**, **achèterai**, etc.
geler, *to freeze;* **gèle**, **gèlera**, etc.
mener, *to lead;* **mènes**, **mènerais**, etc.
lever, *to lift;* **lèvent**, **lèverait**, etc.
céder, *to yield;* **cède**, **ils cèdent**, etc.
régner, *to reign;* **règne**, etc. (**gn** liquid, **4**, *e*).

NOTE.—But **é** is usually retained in future and conditional; as:

espérer, *to hope;* **espère**; but **espérerai-s**, **régnerai**, etc.

b. Some verbs double **l** or **t**; as:

appeler, *to call;* **appelle**, **appellerai**, etc.
jeter, *to throw;* **jettes**, **jettent**, **jetteront**, etc.

NOTE.—Special cases—including also some diversities of form—must be learned by experience.

125. Before silent **e**, **y** usually becomes **i**; as:

payer, *to pay;* **paie**, **paierai**, **paiera**, etc.
noyer, *to drown;* **noient**, **noierait**, etc. (yet not always).

126. To retain the soft sound of **c**, **g**, verbs in **-cer** have **ç**, and verbs in **-ger** insert **e**, before **a**, **o**; as:

placer, *to place;* **plaçant**, **plaçons**, **plaçais**, etc
manger, *to eat;* **mangeant**, **mangeons**, **mangeais**, etc

NOTE.—On the other hand, **u** added after **g** to give the hard sound, is retained throughout; as, **fatiguer**, **fatigua**, **fatiguons**, etc. (**15**, *c*).

REMARK.—The foregoing changes are purely orthographical, and are not to be considered as irregularities. Further examples will be seen in the irregular verbs.

EXERCISE XIV, b.

1. La mère lève la main: les enfants lèvent les mains. 2. La mère élève soigneusement ses enfants; elle espère qu'ils seront bons et heureux. 3. Menez

les enfants à l'école; après je les mènerai à l'église. 4. Qui m'appelle? Je ne vous appelle pas; j'appelais Jean. 5. Il rangea les livres sur la table et commença à écrire. 6. Les enfants jettent des pierres par la fenêtre. 7. Le dernier roi régna dix ans; celui qui règne maintenant est un petit enfant. 8. Préférez-vous ces pommes-ci ou celles-là? 9. Je préfère celles-ci; donnez-m'en, s'il vous plaît. 10. Il achète bien des choses, mais il ne paie pas toujours ce qu'il a acheté. 11. Quand vous aurez commencé votre thème, appelez-moi; nous essaierons de l'écrire ensemble. 12. Espérons toujours; qui (*he who*) désespère est déjà perdu.

As the most essential forms have now been given, the interlinear will no longer be used. So far as possible, the selections will be still kept within the preceding topics of grammar, necessary explanations being added in the notes.

9. La Bague Perdue.[1]

Le refus de la Belle affligeait fort le jeune prince. Son petit chien, appelé Cabriole, lui dit: Mon cher maître, ne désespérez point de votre bonne fortune; vous êtes trop aimable pour n'être pas[2] heureux. Le lendemain le prince se lève[3] et descend au jardin, d'où[4] le petit chien le mène insensiblement au bord de la rivière. Là il se promenait,[5] le chapeau sur les yeux, songeant toujours à son malheur, quand tout à coup[6] il entendit une voix qui l'appelait. Qui m'appelle? dit-il. Alors il vit une belle carpe, qui nagea vite au bord de l'eau et lui dit: C'est moi; vous m'avez sauvé[6] la vie dans le pré, où je serais restée[7]

sans vous. La bague que je vous jetterai, c'est celle que la Belle vous envoie chercher[8]. Portez-la-lui; elle ne vous refusera plus[9]. Avec ces mots elle jeta une belle bague d'or aux pieds du prince et s'enfonça[10] dans l'eau.

[1] *The Lost Ring.* The Beauty requires her lover, as the price of her favor, to find a ring which she had dropped into the river. This selection is altered from an old fairy tale. [2] What other arrangement possible? **77.** [3] Reflexive verb—the pron. **se** not translated. [4] *From where = whence.* [5] Adv. phrase: *all on a sudden.* [6] **108**, *c.* [7] **105.** [8] *Sends to seek = sends you after.* [9] **ne . . . plus**, *no longer.* [10] Reflèx. verb, **se** = *herself.*

At this point, with some help from the teacher, easy supplementary reading might be introduced—such as is found p. 193, *etc.—to be followed, as soon as possible, by an easy French Reader.*

CONVERSATION.

Est-ce que vous allez à Paris, monsieur? Oui, monsieur; et vous? Moi aussi.—Combien de temps y restez-vous? Quelques semaines ou peut-être un mois.—Quand comptez-vous partir? Je pars demain matin.—Et moi aussi; nous aurons le plaisir de voyager ensemble.—Avez-vous fait tous vos préparatifs? Oui, tout est prêt.—Avez-vous pris votre billet? Oui, je l'ai déjà pris.—De quelle classe? De deuxième classe.—C'est bien. Mon billet est aussi de deuxième classe. J'espère que nous serons dans le même coupé.—Je l'espère bien, monsieur.—A quelle heure arriverons-nous? Dans trois heures au plus.—Eh bien, nous aurons assez de temps pour causer.—Fumez-vous, monsieur? Ah! oui.—Voulez-vous accepter un cigare? Je vous remercie bien.—Avez-vous du feu? Oui, voici des allumettes.—Merci!—Monsieur, vous êtes Américain, n'est-ce pas? Oui, je suis de Boston, aux États-Unis. —Quand êtes-vous parti? Je suis parti le neuf du mois passé.—Avez-vous fait une belle traversée? Non, nous avions un temps horrible. Nous étions dix jours en mer.—C'était bien désagréable, vraiment. Mais vous oublierez tout cela à Paris. Ah! le beau Paris!

CHAPTER XV.

A. THE INTERROGATIVES.

The interrogatives are adjective or pronoun, and in part also conjunctive or disjunctive with reference to the verb (70).

THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE.

127. The interrogative adjective *which* or *what* is *m.* **quel**, *f.* **quelle**; *pl. m.* **quels**, *f.* **quelles**; as, **quel livre**, *which* (or *what*) *book;* **quelles fleurs**, *which* (or *what*) *flowers.* Or, predicatively, **quelles sont ces fleurs?** (*of*) *what* (*kind*) *are these flowers?*

NOTE.—**Quel** is also used in exclamations for *what a*, or *what!*, with or without an adjective following; as, **quel homme**, *what a man!* **quels hommes**, *what men!* **quels beaux chevaux**, *what fine horses!*

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

128. The definite interrogative pronoun *which*, *which one*, is *m.* **lequel**, *f.* **laquelle**; *pl. m.* **lesquels**, *f.* **lesquelles.**

NOTE.—**Lequel** is composed of the definite article and **quel**, and receives the usual contractions of the article; as, **auquel de ces messieurs avez-vous écrit?** *to which* (*one*) *of these gentlemen have you written?*

129. The indefinite interrogative pronoun *who? whom?* of persons is **qui**, which is indeclinable; as,

Qui est là? *who is there?*
Qui cherchez-vous? *whom do you seek?*
De qui—à qui—parlez-vous? *of whom—to whom—do you speak?*

NOTE.—*Whose* is **à qui** (103) or **de qui**; as, **de qui êtes-vous fils?** *whose son are you?* **à qui est-ce livre?** *whose is this book?*

130. The indefinite interrogative pronoun *what?* of *things*, has two forms, which are also indeclinable:

1. **Quoi**, *what?* is *disjunctive;* as:

Quoi! *what!* **De quoi parlez-vous?** *of what do you speak?*
Je ne sais quoi, *I don't know what.*

2. **Que**, *what? conjunctive,* is used:

a. As direct object before the verb; as:

Que cherchez-vous? *what are you looking for?*
Je ne sais que faire, *I don't know what to do.*

b. As subject, **que**, *what?* is used only with **être** and with some impersonal verbs; as, **qu'est-ce?** *what is it?* **qu'arriva-t-il?** *what happened?*

c. Elsewhere *what?* as subject, must be expressed by the compound phrase **qu'est-ce qui?** *what is it that?* as, **qu'est-ce qui vous effraie?** *what (is it that) frightens you?*

NOTE.—1. Similar phrases are frequent in other relations; as, **qu'est-ce que,** *what* (as object); **qui est-ce qui,** or **que,** for *who,* or *whom;* **qu'est-ce que c'est (que cela),** *what is it (that),* etc. Compare **est-ce que, 76.**

131. The exclamatory *what!* standing alone is **quoi.** **Quoi de,** *what!* is used before an adjective, without verb; as, **quoi de plus beau que cela!** *what more beautiful than that!* **Que de** is used before a noun in the sense of *how many! what!* as, **que de choses sont passées!** *how many things have happened!*

NOTE.—**Que** has also an adverb use in exclamation, or exclamatory (rhetorical) question, *how! why?* as, **qu'elle est belle!** *how beautiful she is!* **que courez-vous si vite?** *why do you run so fast?*

132. The adverb **où**, *where?* is construed as an interrogative pronoun, with the prepositions **de**, **par** (see **là**, **121**); as, **d'où**, *wherefrom, whence?* **par où**, *whereby.*

NOTE.—Observe that in French the preposition must always stand immediately before its object; as, *what are you talking of?* **de quoi parlez vous?** See also Remark, **123.**

EXERCISE XV, a.

1. Quelle est cette fleur? j'en ai oublié le nom. 2. Quelles fautes avez-vous eues dans votre thème? 3. Quelle belle dame! quels beaux garçons! 4. Laquelle de ces fleurs préférez-vous? 5. Voici celle que je préfère: qu'elle est belle! 6. Auquel des écoliers le maître donnera-t-il le prix? 7. De qui avez-vous reçu cette lettre? d'où vient-elle (*comes*)? par qui fut-elle apportée? 8. Que voulez-vous—qu'est-ce que vous voulez (*wish*)? 9. A quoi pensez-vous? de quoi parlez-vous? 10. Quelle chose étonnante! quoi de plus étonnant que cela! 11. Que pensez-vous de cela?—qui est-ce qui vous l'a dit (*told*)? 12. Que sont les hommes devant Dieu! que notre vie est courte et incertaine! 13. Que de guerres dans le monde! que de tués, de blessés, dans une seule guerre! 14. Quoi! qu'est-ce qui vous étonne? que tremblez-vous tant? 15. Qui est-ce que vous désirez voir; je ne sais (*know*) que penser de vous! 16. Qu'est-ce? qu'est-ce que cela? qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?

B. REFLEXIVE VERBS.

133. Verbs whose action is reflected upon the subject are called *reflexive* verbs. The object is always a *pronoun* corresponding to the subject. Hence such verbs are sometimes called *pronominal* verbs.

134. The reflexive object stands just like other pronoun objects (**79, 80**). In the third person, it is the special reflexive form **se**; elsewhere, the usual objectives, **me, te,** etc. When the subject is a pronoun, the pronouns occur *in pairs;* thus,

1st. **je me** ——	pl. 1st. **nous nous** ——
2d. **tu te** ——	2d. **vous vous** ——
3d. **il (elle) se** ——	3d. **ils (elles) se** ——

Except in the imperative, where the object alone is usually expressed (as **80**).

135. The reflexive object may be direct or indirect —without difference of form in the simple tenses (**71**). The former is more usual, as in the following:

REFLEXIVE CONJUGATION—SIMPLE TENSES.

Infin. **Se* lever,** *to raise one's self, to rise*
Pres. Part. **Se† levant,** *rising*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

je me lève, *I rise* (**124**)	**nous nous levons,** *we rise*
tu te lèves, *thou risest*	**vous vous levez,** *you rise*
il (elle) se lève, *he (she) rises*	**ils (elles) se lèvent,** *they rise*

IMPERFECT.	PRETERIT.
je me levais, *I rose, was rising*	**je me levai,** *I rose, did rise*
tu te levais, etc.	**tu te levas,** etc.
etc.	etc.

* **Se** here represents the reflexive object generally. It may equally be **me lever, te lever**; **me levant, te levant,** etc.

† The past part. can occur only in compound tenses.

FUTURE.	CONDITIONAL.
je me lèverai, *I shall rise*	je me lèverais, *I should rise*
tu te lèveras, etc.	tu te lèverais, etc.
etc.	etc.

IMPERATIVE.

lève-toi, *rise (thou)* — levez-vous, *rise (ye)*
levons-nous, *let us rise*

NOTE.—The interrogative and negative forms are as usual:

	INTERROGATIVE.	NEGATIVE.
Present.	me levé-je (74, note), or	je ne me lève pas
	est-ce que je me lève ?	tu ne te lèves pas
	te lèves-tu ?	il (elle) ne se lève pas
	se lève-t-il (elle) ?	nous ne nous levons pas, etc.
	nous levons-nous ?	
	vous levez-vous ?	INTERROG.-NEGATIVE.
	se lèvent-ils (elles) ?	ne me levé-je pas ?
	etc.	ne te lèves-tu pas ?
Imperat.	ne te lève pas	est-ce que je ne me lève pas ?
	etc.	etc.

THE REFLEXIVE IDIOM.

136. The reflexive idiom is used in French much more largely than in English, and is variously translated:

a. By the English reflexive, *self, selves;* as **vous vous flattez**, *you flatter yourself.*

b. By the intransitive; as, **le soleil se lève**, *the sun rises.*

c. By the passive; as, **les chameaux se trouvent en Asie**, *camels are found in Asia.*

d. By the reciprocal, *each other, one another* (with *plural* subject); as, **ils se haïssent**, *they hate each other;* **nous nous parlions**, *we talked to each other.*

e. By the transitive—especially in connection with a secondary object; as, **il s'approcha de la ville**, *he approached (himself to) the city;* **il se cassa le bras**, *he broke his arm* (**108**, *c*).

137. On the other hand, these several forms in

English will often be rendered idiomatically into French by the reflexive.

a. Especially when, as frequently in English, the same verb is used as both transitive and intransitive, the *intransitive* sense is commonly expressed in French by the reflexive; as, **arrêter**, *to stop* (*trans.*); **s'arrêter**, *to stop* (*intrans.*), etc.

138. Many verbs are used almost exclusively as reflexives; others have peculiar idiomatic meanings in the reflexive form. *This, therefore, must always be looked for in the dictionary;* as, **douter**, *to doubt*, but **se douter**, *to suspect*, etc.

Examples of common reflexive verbs are:

s'affliger (de), *to be sorry* (*for*), *to grieve*
s'appeler, *to be named*
s'approcher (de), *to approach*
s'arrêter, *to stop*
s'attendre (à), *to expect*
se battre, *to fight*
se coucher, *to go to bed, to set*
se douter (de), *to suspect*
s'écrier, *to cry out*
se fier (à), *to trust, rely on*
se hâter, *to make haste*
se lever, *to rise, get up*
se moquer (de), *to ridicule*
se passer, *to happen*
se porter, *to be, do* (*in health*)
se promener, *to take a walk*
se réjouir (de), *to rejoice* (*in* or *at*)
se rendre, *to surrender*
se répandre, *to spread abroad*
se tromper, *to be mistaken* (*to deceive one's self*)
se trouver, *to be, be found*
se vanter (de), *to boast* (*of*)
se vendre, *to be sold*

EXERCISE XV, b.

1. Comment vous portez-vous? Je me porte bien. 2. A quelle heure vous couchez-vous? 3. Je me couche à onze heures; je me lève à six heures. 4. Nous nous promenons tous les (*every*) matins; quand vous promenez-vous? 5. Pourquoi vous battez-vous? Nous nous battons parcequ'il se moquait de moi. 6. Vous attendiez-vous à cela? vous doutiez-vous de cela? 7. Je ne m'y attendais pas; je ne m'en doutais pas (**95**, note 3). 8. Le bruit se répand que les

ennemis s'approchent de la ville. 9. Les plus beaux monuments se trouvent en Italie. 10. Qui (*he who*) se fie à tout le monde se trompe souvent. 11. Tout le monde se réjouira de cette nouvelle. 12. A quoi vous attendiez-vous? s'écria-t-il. 13. Levons-nous; hâtons-nous de nous habiller. 14. Couche-toi; nous nous promènerons un peu dans le jardin. 15. Je me lave les mains; pourquoi ne te laves-tu pas aussi les mains? (**108**, *c.*) 16. Il est temps de se réjouir; il n'est pas temps de s'affliger (indef. *one's self*).

10. La Nouvelle Fatale.

Le roi Henri IV (quatre) avait un cheval qu'il aimait follement. Ce cheval tomba malade et le roi s'en[1] affligeait très fort. On[2] avait ordre de lui apporter à chaque heure des nouvelles de son cheval, n'importe[3] où il se trouvait. Quand on lui annonça que le noble animal ne donnait plus d'espérance[4], il s'abandonna à sa douleur, et s'écria qu'il pendrait celui qui annoncerait sa mort. Néanmoins la pauvre bête mourut[5] le lendemain. Mais qui braverait la colère du roi? Un officier s'offrit. Hélas, sire! s'écria-t-il, en[6] entrant dans l'appartement de sa Majesté—votre cheval! votre beau cheval! Ah! s'écria le roi, je pense qu'il est mort. Sire, répond[7] l'officier, c'est vous qui vous annoncez vous-même[8] cette triste nouvelle.

[1] Refers to preceding predicate. [2] Indef. *one*; say: *order was given*. [3] Impers. phrase: *no matter*. [4] Partitive: *no longer any* (**41**, *b*). [5] Pret. irreg. mourir, *to die*. [6] Prep., *on entering*. [7] Pres. for pret. [8] Refers to subject, **73**.

CHAPTER XVI.

A. THE RELATIVES.

As in English, the interrogatives are also used as relatives, and the two must be carefully distinguished. The relatives are all *pronouns*, yet, like the interrogatives, are in part *conjunctive* or *disjunctive*, with reference to the verb.

139. The usual relative, *who, which, that*, of persons or things, is

Subject **qui**
Conj. object **que**
Disj. object **qui** (*only of persons*); as: **l'homme qui parle; les femmes qui parlent; la maison, les maisons, que j'achetai; les personnes à qui je parlais,** *to whom I was speaking*, etc.

140. The relative *of whom, of which, whose*, is usually **dont**, which must always stand at the head of the clause; as, **la femme dont vous parliez—dont la fille était ici—dont vous avez lu la lettre,** *whose letter you have read*, etc.

NOTE.—1. **Dont** thus appears that **dont**—like *of whom*, but unlike *whose*—admits the article, and may be separated from the noun on which it depends.

2. **Dont** (like **en, 90**) is really adverbial (Lat. *de—unde*), but has no adverbial uses; and includes also all the senses of **de.**

141. The inflected compound **lequel, laquelle,** etc., will be used instead of **qui, que:**

a. Whenever it is necessary by inflection to avoid ambiguity—hence, generally, when the relative refers to the more remote of two nouns; as, **le père de la jeune fille lequel était ici,** *the young girl's father who was here* (while **qui** would refer to **fille**).

b. With a preposition, when referring to *things;* as, **la table sur laquelle j'ai trouvé le livre,** *on which,* etc. (See **139.**)

142. The inflected **duquel, de laquelle,** etc., will be used, instead of **dont:**

a. To avoid ambiguity as above (**141,** *a*).

b. When the relative depends on the object of a preposition; as, **la femme à la lettre de laquelle vous avez répondu,** (*to*) *whose letter you have answered* (see 110),

143. The disjunctive **quoi,** *what,* is used as relative only with prepositions, and without definite antecedent; as, **voilà de quoi il parle toujours—à quoi il pense toujours,** *that is what he is always talking of—always thinking of,* etc.

144. The substantive (or compound) relative *what* = *that which,* with a verb, is **ce qui, ce que, ce dont,** according to the grammatical relation; as, **je sais ce qui vous effraie—ce que vous désirez—ce dont vous parlez,** *I know what frightens you—what you desire—what you are talking of* (**118**); **je suis étonné de ce que vous dites,** *I am astonished at what you say.*

NOTE.—1. A noun or adjective limiting **ce que** is preceded by **de**; as, **ce que j'ai d'amis—de beau,** *what friends—whatever beautiful—I have.* And in this case the def. art. is omitted, even in the superlative; as, **ce que j'ai de plus beau—de mieux,** *most beautiful—best.*

2. **Que,** in the combination **ce que,** may also stand as nominative (predicate) with **être** and some idiomatic verbs; as,

vous voyez ce que nous sommes—ce que nous deviendrons—ce qu'il faut, etc., *you see what we are—what we shall become—what is necessary*, etc. (**130**, *b*).

145. **Qui** is often used substantively in the indefinite sense of **celui qui**, *he who*, or *whoever*; as, **qui est content est heureux—je donnerai le prix à qui l'aura mérité**, *to him who* (*whoever*) *shall deserve it.*

146. The adverb **où**, *where*, is also construed as a relative pronoun, in the *local* relations *at, to, in, which*; as, **la maison où je demeure—où je vais**, *the house in which I live—to which I am going.* Also with the prepositions **de, par (132)**; as, **la maison d'où je viens—par où je passai**, *from which I come—by which I passed.*

NOTE.—1. The relative pronoun must never be omitted in French; as, *the book I bought—the book I spoke of*, **le livre que j'achetai, dont je parlai**, etc. For the place of the preposition see **132**, note.

2. Observe the rule for the agreement of the past participle (**88**), even when the pronoun object itself does not indicate gender or number; as, **les maisons que j'ai vendues**; but, **dont j'ai parlé**, because **dont** is not direct object.

147. The subject noun will often follow the verb in a relative clause; **as, avez-vous entendu ce que vous a dit votre père?** *what your father said to you;* **les conseils que m'a donnés mon père**, *the counsels* (*which*) *my father gave me.*

NOTE.—In such case—especially if the subject is complex—the passive may often be best used in translation; as, *the counsels* (*which were*) *given me by my father, who*, etc.

REMARK.—In general, the relative requires, more strictly than in English, to be preceded immediately by the antecedent.

EXERCISE XVI, a.

1. Voici le jeune homme qui apporta la lettre à laquelle j'ai répondu ce matin. 2. Cette lettre était du père de la jeune fille dont je vous ai parlé. 3. La chambre dans laquelle (où) je travaille est trop froide. 4. Ce qui m'étonne, c'est la lettre que j'ai reçue de votre père. 5. Que pensez-vous de ce qu'il y (*in it*) dit? 6. L'homme dont vous avez vu (*seen*) les enfants à l'école est médecin—c'est un médecin français. 7. L'homme des enfants duquel nous parlions hier est mort. 8. La table sur laquelle j'ai laissé mes livres est derrière la porte. 9. Avez-vous vu les beaux livres que m'a donnés l'ami dont je vous ai parlé? 10. L'ami des mains duquel j'ai reçu tous ces bienfaits est parti. 11. Voilà à quoi il pense—de quoi il parle toujours. 12. Dites-moi ce qui vous effraie—ce que vous désirez—ce dont vous parliez. 13. Qui est content de ce qu'il a, n'est pas pauvre. 14. Ce que nous a dit notre père nous apprend ce que nous sommes—ce que nous serions sans lui. 15. Voilà la maison de laquelle (d'où) les voleurs sont sortis. 16. Ces livres me furent donnés par la fille du soldat,* de laquelle nous parlions: c'est son père à qui j'avais écrit (*written*).

B. REFLEXIVE VERB—COMPOUND TENSES.

148. Reflexive verbs form their compound tenses with the auxiliary **être**; as, **je me suis levé**, *I have risen.*

The past participle, however, follows the same rule

* Note the English: *the daughter of the soldier*, or *the soldier's daughter*, according to the reference following.

as in active verbs (88). The pronoun object always precedes. Hence:

a. If the reflexive object is *direct*, the past participle agrees with it.

b. If the reflexive object is *indirect*, the past participle is not inflected.

NOTE.—Thus, in compound tenses, the direct and the indirect reflexive may show a difference of form in the past participle. The following is direct—the more usual form:

149. REFLEXIVE CONJUGATION—COMPOUND TENSES.

COMP. INFIN.

s'être* levé, *or* levée; levés, *or* levées, *to have risen*

COMP. PRES. PART.

s'étant levé, *or* levée; levés, *or* levées, *having risen*

COMP. PRESENT.

je me suis levé (levée), *I have r.*	**nous nous sommes levés (levées)**
tu t'es levé (levée), etc.	**vous vous êtes "† "**
il (elle) s'est levé (levée), etc.	**ils (elles) se sont " "**

COMP. IMPERFECT.

je m'étais levé (levée), *I had r.*	**nous nous étions levés (levées)**
tu t'étais levé (levée), etc.	**vous vous étiez " "**
etc.	etc.

COMP. PRETERIT.

je me fus levé (levée), *I had r.*	**nous nous fûmes levé (levée)**
etc.	etc.

COMP. FUTURE.

je me serai levé (levée), *I shall have risen* etc.	**nous nous serons levés (levées)** etc.

COMP. CONDITIONAL.

je me serais levé (levée)	**nous nous serions levés (levées)**
etc.	etc.

* See foot-note, 135. † See 31, note 4.

Similarly in the interrogative and negative forms, following the usual rules, as:

INTERROGATIVE.

COMP. PRESENT.

me suis-je levé, *or* levée, *have I risen?* (*or*,
est-ce que je me suis levé, *or* levée, etc.)
t'es-tu " "
s'est-il, *or* s'est-elle " "
nous sommes-nous levés, *or* levées
vous êtes-vous " "
se sont-ils, *or* se sont-elles, levés, *or* levées? etc.

COMP. IMPERFECT.

m'étais-je levé, *or* levée, *had I risen?* etc.

COMP. PRETERIT.

me fus-je levé, *or* levée, etc.
etc. etc.

NEGATIVE.

COMP. PRESENT.

je ne me suis pas levé, *or* levée, *I have not risen*
tu ne t'es pas " " etc.
il (elle) ne s'est pas " "
nous ne nous sommes pas levés, *or* levées
vous ne vous êtes pas " "
ils (elles) ne se sont pas " "

INTERR.-NEGATIVE.

COMP. PRESENT.

ne me suis-je pas levé, *or* levée, *have I not risen?*
ne t'es-tu pas " " etc.
ne s'est-il (elle) pas " "
ne nous sommes-nous pas levés, *or* levées
ne vous êtes-vous pas " "
ne se sont-ils (elles) pas " "
etc. etc.

NOTE.—1. Distinction must be carefully made between *direct* and *indirect* reflexives, as determining the form of the past participle. If, however, the indirect reflexive have also a direct object preceding, the p. part. will agree with it as usual. Thus: **elle s'est acheté une robe.** But: **la robe qu'elle s'est achetée** (agreeing with **que**).

2. According to **97**, a direct reflexive will require a second object (except **en** or **y**) to be construed with a preposition; as, **je me présente à vous**; **elle s'est présentée à moi.** But: **je m'en réjouis**, *I rejoice at it*; **il s'y fie**, *he relies on it* (from **se réjouir de**, **se fier à**, **95**, note 3).

REMARK.—It is to be observed that **être** here = *have*. Also, that the reflexive verb corresponds, in its *use* of the auxiliary (**être**), with the *passive*; in the *form* of the past part., with the *active* (**avoir**). Thus the reflexive partakes of both active and passive—the subject being at once *actor* and *object*.

Note also relation of tense forms, reflexive and passive. Thus: **je me suis lavé**, *I have washed myself* (perfect action); **je suis lavé**, *I am washed* (present state).

EXERCISE XVI, b.

1. Pourquoi vous êtes-vous levé si tard? nous nous sommes déjà promenés une heure. 2. Le bruit se répand que l'armée ennemie s'est rendue; vous y fiez-vous? 3. Les enfants s'étaient tous couchés lorsque nous sommes partis. 4. Ces deux garçons se sont (*have been*, etc.) battus; ils s'étaient battus longtemps lorsque le maître arriva. 5. Je me serais battu avec lui, s'il s'était moqué de moi. 6. Elle s'est blessée dangereusement; elle s'est cassé deux doigts de la main droite. 7. Pourquoi ne vous êtes-vous pas lavé les mains? 8. Vous vous trompez; je me les suis lavées. 9. Les plumes qu'elle s'est achetées ne me plaisent (*please*) pas; je m'en suis acheté d'autres. 10. Vous étiez-vous douté de cela? je ne m'en serais pas douté. 11. Vous êtes-vous attendu à cette nouvelle? je ne m'y suis pas attendu. 12. Que de

choses se sont passées depuis que nous nous sommes vus (*seen*).

11. Malheureuse Aventure.

En descendant[1] du chariot qui l'avait amenée, Prascovie était tombée dans la boue, et ses habits en[2] étaient couverts[3]. La malheureuse[4] fut rejetée de toutes les maisons où elle se présenta. Une méchante femme, à la porte de laquelle elle s'était assise[5], la força par des menaces de s'éloigner. La jeune fille, voyant[6] une église devant elle, s'y[7] achemina tristement: du moins[8], se disait-elle[9], on ne m'en[2] chassera pas. La porte s'en[10] trouva fermée. Des garçons, qui s'étaient attroupés autour d'[11]elle lorsque la femme la maltraitait, continuèrent à l'insulter. Elle demeura près de[12] deux heures dans cette situation pénible.

[1] Pres. part., *in alighting*. [2] See **91**. [3] Irreg. p. part. **couvrir**, *to cover*. [4] See **66**. [5] P. part. fem. reflex. **s'asseoir**, *to seat one's self, to sit*. [6] Pres. part. **voir**, *to see*. [7] **y (93)**, *to it, thither*. [8] Superl. adv. phrase, *at least*. [9] Impf. irreg. **dire**, *to say;* indirect reflex., *to herself*. [10] See **110**. [11] Comp. prep., *around*. [12] Phrase, *near, about*.

CONVERSATION.

Quels sont les verbes réfléchis? Ceux dont l'action est réfléchie sur le sujet.—Le sujet fait-il ou reçoit-il l'action? Il fait et à la fois reçoit l'action;—il est en même temps acteur et objet.—Puis les verbes réfléchis sont à la fois actifs et passifs, n'est-ce pas? Oui, ou plutôt ils sont partie l'un et partie l'autre.—Quel est l'auxiliaire des verbes réfléchis? C'est *être*, comme des verbes passifs.—Mais dans quel sens? Dans le sens de *have*, comme dans les verbes actifs.—Et le participe passé, comment s'accorde-t-il? Comme dans les verbes actifs, avec le complément (objet) direct, lorsque celui-ci précède.—Mais si le pronom complément est indirect? Alors le participe passé ne s'accorde point.—Quel est le sens *réciproque* des verbes réfléchis? Le sens réciproque exprime l'action mutuelle de deux sujets, l'un sur l'autre.

CHAPTER XVII.

A. THE INDEFINITES.

The term "indefinites" includes a number of words of quite various meaning. Only those will be given here which present some peculiarity of form or use.

150. The indefinites are in part *adjective*, in part *pronoun*, and in part *common* (adjective or pronoun). The following may be grouped as corresponding forms:

Adjective.	*Pronoun.*
chaque, *each*	**chacun**, *each one* (only sing.)
quelque / *pl.* **quelques** } *some, a few*	**quelqu'un**, *f.* **quelqu'une**, *some one; pl.* **quelques-uns**, **quelques-unes**, *some, some few*
	quelque chose, *something*
quelconque / *pl.* **quelconques** } *whichever* (follows noun)	**quiconque**, *whoever* (only sing.)
autre, *other* (also pron.)	**autrui**, *others* (only with prep.)
aucun, *f.* **-e**, *any*, / **nul**, *f.* **-le**, *no* } with **ne**, *no* (also pron., *no one, none*)	**personne** / **rien** } with **ne** { *nobody* / *nothing*
pas un, **-e**, with **ne**, *not a;* also pron., *not one*	
plusieurs, *several*	**on**, *one, we, they, etc.*

NOTE.—The numeral **un**, *one*, gives the indef. adj. (or article) *an*, *a*; and is also used as indef. pron.—then often written **l'un**; as, **l'un des plus grands hommes**, *one of the greatest men.*

151. The following additional points must be noted:

a. Of the forms with **ne**, **aucun** is properly *any;* **personne** (*person*), *anybody;* **rien** (Lat. *rem*), *anything.* But

by habitual use with **ne** before the verb, they have acquired a negative sense (except in questions), even when they stand alone. As, **avez-vous vu personne?** *have you seen anybody?* **je n'ai vu personne,** *I have seen nobody;* **rien n'est perdu,** *nothing is lost;* **qui voyez-vous?** *whom do you see?* **personne,** *nobody;* **que voyez-vous? rien.**

NOTE.—1. **Rien** will precede a dependent infinitive, or a past part. in compound tenses; as, **je ne veux rien dire,** *I wish to say nothing;* **je n'ai rien dit,** etc.

2. **Sans,** *without,* which implies a negative, may be used with such words; as, **sans aucune peine,** *without any trouble;* **sans rien dire,** *without saying anything,* etc.

b. **Personne, rien,** also **quelqu'un, quelque chose,** take **de** before an adjective (see **en, 92**); as, **je n'ai rien de bon,** *I have nothing good;* **je n'ai vu personne de si sot,** *I have seen nobody so foolish;* **quelques-uns de bons,** *some good ones;* **quelque chose de plus beau,** *something more beautiful,* etc.

NOTE.—**Chose,** *thing,* and **personne,** *person,* are feminine as nouns, but masculine (neuter?) as indefinites.

152. L'autre, les autres, *the other, (the) others,* form the following phrases with **l'un (l'une), les uns, (les unes),** *the one, some:*

a. When not connected by a conjunction, they express the reciprocal sense *each other, one another;* as, **ils parlent mal l'un de l'autre,** *they speak ill of each other.* Or with reflexive (**136,** *d*): **elles s'aiment l'une l'autre,** *they love each other* (or **les unes les autres,** if the subjects are both plural).

b. Connected by a conjunction: **l'un et l'autre,** *both;* **l'un ou l'autre,** *either;* **ni l'un ni l'autre** (with **ne**), *neither;* as, **je parle de l'un et de l'autre,** *I speak of both;* **je ne parle ni de l'un ni de l'autre,** *I speak of neither;* **l'un ou l'autre répondra,** *either (one or the other) will answer.*

NOTE.—*Other,* meaning *additional, more,* is expressed by the adverb **encore,** *again;* as, **encore une tasse de thé,** *another cup of tea,* etc. **Une autre tasse** means *a different cup.* **Autres** is used idiomatically, for emphasis, with **nous, vous;** thus: **nous autres,** *we;* **vous autres,** *you;* **nous autres filles,** *we girls.*

153. The pronoun **on** is the indefinite personal subject, translated by various English forms; as, *one, they, we, you, people,* etc.; also frequently by the passive. It is always singular, always subject, and must be repeated with every verb; as, **on dit,** *they say, it is said;* **on doit aimer ses amis,** *one (we) should love one's (our) friends;* **on parlait et on riait,** etc.

NOTE.—1. **L'on** is sometimes used for euphony at the beginning of a sentence, or after **et, que, si,** or a vowel generally; but not before an immediately following l; as, **l'on croit,** *it is believed;* but, **on le croit** (not **l'on le croit**), etc.

2. A predicate adjective (or participle) may, however, agree with the personal sense of **on**; as, **quand on est mariée,** *when one (a woman) is married.*

3. **On** is also often used, familiarly, in lieu of a personal pronoun subject, *I, you,* etc.

154. Tout, toute, *pl.* **tous, toutes,** singular without article, *every;* with article, *all, the whole;* plural, always with article; as, **toute ville,** *every city;* **toute la ville,** *the whole city;* **tous les hommes,** *all (the) men;* **tous les jours,** *every day.* As pronoun, **tout,** *all, everything;* **tous,** *all, everybody;* **tous (les) deux,** *both.* A demonstrative is added before a relative: *all (that) I have,* **tout ce que j'ai**; *all who,* **tous ceux qui,** etc. Our *of* is not expressed; as, *I see all of them,* **je les vois tous,** etc.—the sense not being partitive.

NOTE.—**Tout** stands like **rien** (151, note); as, **je veux tout dire**; **j'ai tout dit,** etc.

155. Tel, telle, adjective, *such;* **un tel, une telle,** *such a;* as, **une telle personne,** *such a person;* **de telles personnes,** *such persons.* As indefinite pronoun, **tel,** *many a one;* **un tel,** *such and such a one;* as, **tel rit qui pleurera,** *many a one laughs who will weep;* **un tel me dit,** *such a one told me;* **madame une telle,** *Mrs. So-and-so,* etc.

NOTE.—*Such* (*a*) before an adjective is expressed by **si**, *so:* as, *such a fine day*, **un si beau jour**; or plural, **de si beaux jours.**

REMARK.—The compound indefinites, formed with **que**: **qui que**, *whoever;* **quel que** (*adj.*), *whatever;* **quoi que**, *whatever;* **quelque . . . que** (*adj.*), *whatever*, or (*adv.*) *however*, occur only with the subjunctive (**216**).

EXERCISE XVII.

1. Chacun a ses plaisirs et ses peines. 2. Telle est l'histoire de chaque jour. 3. Quelqu'un m'a prêté un peu d'argent—quelques francs seulement. 4. Quelques-unes de ces pommes ne sont pas mûres. 5. Qui avez-vous vu? Personne du tout; personne n'a été ici. 6. Je n'ai rencontré personne; je n'ai rien entendu. 7. Avez-vous entendu quelque chose de nouveau? 8. Rien; s'il (*there*) est quelque chose de nouveau, je n'en ai rien entendu. 9. Plusieurs jeunes filles étaient au théâtre; les unes chantaient, les autres dansaient. 10. Ces deux sœurs ressemblent fort l'une à l'autre. 11. Je les ai vues l'une et l'autre (toutes deux) ce matin. 12. J'attends l'une ou l'autre d'elles chez moi ce matin. 13. Ne désire point les biens d'autrui (des autres). 14. A Paris on voit souvent l'avis: ici on parle anglais. 15. Tout ce que l'on dit n'est pas toujours vrai. 16. On est souvent trop content de soi. 17. Quand on est mariée, on n'est plus libre. 18. Tel sème qui ne récolte pas. 19. Que dit-on de cela? 20. Personne n'en parle; on a tout oublié. 21. Pas un de ces écoliers n'a fini son thème; aucun d'eux ne gagnera le prix. 22. Je cherche quelque chose d'amusant; donnez-moi des livres quelconques. 23. Le malade se lève à tout moment, sans aucune précaution. 24. Enfin nous avons fini encore un thème.

B. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

155. The impersonal verb form occurs only in the 3d person singular, with the subject **il**, *it* (*there*).

a. Some verbs are always impersonal; as, **il pleut**, *it rains;* **il tonne**, *it thunders*, etc.

b. Other verbs may be used impersonally; as, **il arrive**, *it happens;* **il semble**, *it seems*, etc.

c. The impersonal idiom is more common in French than in English.

156. The impersonal form (**il** = *there*) is used even before a plural predicate; as, **il est des hommes**, *there are some men;* **il est arrivé de grands malheurs**, *there have happened some great misfortunes.* And **il** is usually retained in a question, even after **que** as subject; as, **qu'arriva-t-il?** *what happened?*

157. Impersonal verbs take as auxiliary **avoir** or **être**, according to their meaning (but mostly **avoir**). In either case the past participle remains *unchanged.*

158. Some of the more important impersonals are:

a. With **être**: **il est**, etc., *there is*, *there are*, etc. (as **156**); and so on, in all tenses of **être**.

b. More frequently with **avoir**, the phrase **y avoir**:

Present.	**il y a**, *there is, there are* (= *it there has*, etc.)
Imperf.	**il y avait**, *there was, there were*
Perfect.	**il y a eu**, *there has*, or *have been*
Interrog.	**y a-t-il**; **y avait-il**, etc.
Negat.	**il n'y a pas**; **n'y a-t-il pas**, etc.

As, il y avait un homme; il y avait des hommes, *there were men*, the noun in French being the *object* of the verb.

NOTE.—1. **Il y a** expresses, idiomatically, extent of distance or of time past (*ago*); as, **combien y a-t-il à cette ville?** *how far is it to that city?* **il y a trois milles**, *it is three miles* (*off*); **je l'ai vu il y a trois mois**, *I saw him three months ago.*

2. If the time is *continuous*, the accompanying verb will be *present*, or *imperfect;* as, **combien de temps y a-t-il que vous êtes ici?** *how long have you been here?* **il y avait trois mois que j'étais ici**, *I had been here* (*for*) *three months.*

c. With the irregular verb **faire**, *to make*, the phrase **il fait**, *it is* (lit. *it makes*), speaking of *the weather;* as, **il fait froid**, or **chaud**, *it is hot*, or *cold;* **il fait beau temps —mauvais temps—de la pluie**, *it is good weather—bad weather—raining*, etc.; and so through all tenses (**245**).

NOTE.—This idiom must not be confounded with **avoir**, of *personal* subjects; as, **j'ai froid**, *I am cold* (**86**); nor with the simple **être**, of *things;* as, **l'eau est froide**, etc.

d. With the irregular verb **falloir**, *to be necessary*, the phrase **il faut**, *it is necessary, there is needed*, etc., usually rendered in English by a personal form; as, **que vous faut-il**, *what do you need?* **il me faut de l'argent**, *I need some money* (**vous**, **me** being indirect object).

e. Especially before an infinitive, **il faut**, etc., is rendered by *must, have to*, etc.; as, **il me faut écrire**, *I must write;* **il lui faut écrire**, *he must write*, etc. (**262**).

12. L'Attaque de la Bastille.

L'attaque de la Bastille ne fut nullement[1] raisonnable. Ce[2] fut un acte de foi. La veille il y avait encore des doutes, et il n'y en[3] avait pas le matin. Que se passa-t-il dans cette courte nuit? On sait[4] ce qui se fit[5] au Palais Royal; mais ce qui se passa au foyer du peuple, c'est là[6] ce qu'il faudrait[7] savoir. Le matin même du grand jour le peuple n'avait pas d'armes encore. La poudre qu'il[8] avait prise[9] la veille avait été distribuée pendant la nuit. Il ne manquait que[10] les fusils. Point[11] de fusils!—il fallait aller les prendre[12]. Cela était très hasardeux, mais il n'y avait pas de temps à perdre. Il n'était pas neuf heures[13], et déjà trente mille hommes étaient en marche.

[1] Adv. *not at all.* [2] See **122**. [3] Refers to **doutes**, **91**. [4] Pres. irreg. **savoir**, *to know.* [5] Pret. irreg. **faire**, *to do.* See **136**, *c.* [6] See **118**, *b.* [7] Cond. irreg. **falloir**, *it should be necessary* = *what should be known.* [8] *They* = **le peuple**. [9] P. part. fem. irreg. **prendre**, *to take.* [10] **ne—que**, *not but* = *only.* [11] Neg. adv. *not any, no.* [12] Infin. idiom, *go and take.* [13] *O'clock.*

CHAPTER XVIII.

A. NUMERALS.

As the numerals in French present some peculiarities in form and in use, they have been reserved till now for comprehensive treatment.

CARDINAL NUMERALS.

159. The following table will suffice to indicate all possible forms:

un, une,	1.	**vingt,**	20.
deux,	2.	**vingt et un,** / **vingt-un,**	21.
trois,	3.		
quatre,	4.	**vingt-deux,**	22.
cinq,	5.	**vingt-trois,**	23.
six,	6.	**vingt-quatre,**	24.
sept,	7.	**vingt-cinq,**	25.
huit,	8.	**vingt-six,**	26.
neuf,	9.	**vingt-sept,**	27.
dix,	10.	**vingt-huit,**	28.
onze,	11.	**vingt-neuf,**	29.
douze,	12.	**trente,**	30.
treize,	13.	**trente et un,** / **trente-un,**	31.
quatorze,	14.		
quinze,	15.	**trente-deux,** etc.	32.
seize,	16.	**quarante,**	40.
dix-sept,	17.	**cinquante,**	50.
dix-huit,	18.	**soixante,**	60.
dix-neuf,	19.	**soixante-dix,**	70.

soixante-onze,	71.	quatre-vingt-treize, etc.,	93.
soixante-douze,	72.	cent,	100.
soixante-treize,	73.	cent et un,	101.
soixante-quatorze,	74.	cent un,	
soixante-quinze,	75.	cent deux,	102.
soixante-seize,	76.	cent trente-cinq,	135.
soixante-dix-sept,	77.	deux cents,	200.
soixante-dix-huit,	78.	trois cents,	300.
soixante-dix-neuf,	79.	cinq cent cinquante,	550.
quatre-vingts,	80.	mille,	1,000.
quatre-vingt-un,	81.	deux mille,	2,000.
quatre-vingt-deux, etc.,	82.	six mille cent vingt-cinq,	6,125.
quatre-vingt-dix,	90.	un million (de),	1,000,000.
quatre-vingt-onze,	91.	deux millions (de),	2,000,000.
quatre-vingt-douze,	92.	un million cent,	1,000,100.

160. The following notes are important:

NOTE.—1. **Cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix** sound the final consonant, except when standing as adjectives before a consonant; as, **cinq livres, six bons livres.** But in **le cinq mai**, *the fifth* (*of*) *May*, etc. (elliptical), the consonant is sounded.

2. **t** is silent in **vingt**, but sounded in compounds, **vingt-un, vingt-deux**, etc.

3. In **huit**, **h** is aspirate: **le huit**; but **x** = **s** in **dix-huit, dix-neuf** (15, *p*). No elision or linking occurs in **onze**; as, **le onze.** (This note applies also to the ordinals, 161.)

4. **Un, une** (pronounced with more stress than the indefin. art.) alone show gender; **vingt, cent** (not **mille**) take plural **s**; but not before a further number.

5. **Cent, mille** are used without article (= *a hundred*, etc.). In dates, **mil** is used for **mille.** **Million** is a noun (with **de**).
The noun **mille** = *mile*: **un mille, deux milles**, etc.

6. In compound numbers, **et** is used (optionally) only before **un.** Elsewhere *units* are added to *tens* with hyphen only.

7. The count from 60 to 80 (= *four twenties*), and from 80 to 100, is by *scores* instead of *tens* (in place of the older forms, *septante, octante, nonante*).

ORDINAL NUMERALS.

161. The ordinal numerals (except as in English *first, second*) are formed by adding **-ième** to the car-

dinal—in compounds, to the last number only—dropping final **-e**, or **-s** (plur.). **Cinq** inserts **u**, and **neuf** changes **f** to **v**. The following table will illustrate:

premier, -ère,	1st.	vingt-deuxième,	22d.
second, -e,	2d.	trentième,	30th.
deuxième,	"	quarantième,	40th.
troisième,	3d.	soixante-dixième,	70th.
quatrième,	4th.	soixante-onzième,	71st.
cinquième,	5th.	soixante-douzième,	72d.
sixième,	6th.	quatre-vingtième,	80th.
septième,	7th.	quatre-vingt-unième,	81st.
huitième,	8th.	quatre-vingt-deuxième,	82d.
neuvième,	9th.	quatre-vingt-dixième,	90th.
dixième,	10th.	quatre-vingt-onzième,	91st.
onzième,	11th.	centième,	100th.
douzième,	12th.	cent unième,	101st.
treizième,	13th.	cent deuxième	102d.
quatorzième,	14th.	cent vingtième,	120th.
quinzième,	15th.	deux centième,	200th.
seizième,	16th.	six cent soixantième,	660th.
dix-septième	17th.	millième,	1,000th.
dix-huitième,	18th.	deux millième,	2,000th.
dix-neuvième,	19th.	deux mille centième,	2,100th.
vingtième,	20th.	millionième,	1,000,000th.
vingt-unième,	21st.	deux millionième,	2,000,000th.

NOTE.—1. The ordinals are regular adjectives. Only **premier, second** (pron. *segond*) show gender (48).

2. **Deuxième** is usual for **second**, when there are more than two; and is always used in compounds (as also **unième** for **premier**).

3. The ordinals are thus abbreviated: 1er (**premier**), 1re (**première**), 2me (**deuxième**), 3me (**troisième**), etc.

REMARK.—It is not necessary that any table of numerals should be formally committed to memory; but the forms should be practised in oral exercises until they become familiar, and figures can be read into French words at sight.

OTHER NUMERAL FORMS.

162. Under the numerals may also be included:

a. The fractionals. As such the ordinal forms are used, above *fourth;* as, **un cinquième**, *a fifth* (part); **deux cinquièmes**, *two fifths*, etc.

A fourth is **un quart**; *a third*, **un tiers**; so, **deux tiers, trois quarts**, etc.

Half is **demi**, compound before the noun, inflected after it; as, **une demi-heure**, *a half-hour;* **une heure et demie**, *an hour and a half.* The noun *the half* is **la moitié**.

b. Repetition or *multiplication* is expressed by **fois**, *time*, with the cardinal; as, **une fois**, *once;* **deux fois**, *twice*, etc. As, **je l'ai dit trois fois**, *I have said it three times;* **deux fois six**, *twice six.*

c. Collectives are the nouns **dixaine, douzaine, vingtaine, centaine**; as, **deux douzaines d'œufs**, *two dozen eggs.* They often express an *approximate* sense: **une vingtaine d'années**, *about twenty years;* **des centaines**, *some hundreds* (more or less).

d. Numeral adverbs are regularly formed from the ordinals; as, **premièrement**, *firstly;* **deuxièmement**, *secondly*, etc.

EXERCISE XVIII.

1. Nous avons quelques centaines de soldats; comment se défendront-ils contre une armée de cinq mille hommes? 2. Nous avons quatre-vingts vaisseaux de guerre; nous en aurons bientôt quatre-vingt-dix ou cent. 3. Trois fois trente-trois font (*make*) quatre-vingt-dix-neuf. 4. C'est la dixième fois que je vous répète la même règle dans une demi-heure. 5. Ils m'ont promené d'une rue à l'autre pendant deux heures et demie. 6. Un mille d'Allemagne est égal à trois milles de France ou d'Angleterre. 7. La semaine a 7 jours, le mois a 30 ou 31 ou 28 jours, et l'an a 365 ou 366 jours. 8. Douze fois 11 font 132. 9. Cent moins deux sont quatre-vingt-dix-huit.

10. Vous trouverez ces mots au commencement du 10^{me} chapitre du 3^{me} tome, page 347. 11. Le mètre est la dix millionième partie du quart du méridien. 12. Prêtez-moi deux cents francs, ou cent quatre-vingts du moins; je vous les rendrai dans quinze jours. 13. Parlons premièrement de nos affaires, deuxièmement de celles d'autrui. 14. La France a quarante millions d'habitants; la Russie en a quatre-vingt millions. 15. *Read in French words:* 5, 15, 21, 76, 87, 98, 152, 267, 399, 1002, 5024, 6358, 7890. 16. And the following: 10,345, 22,872, 146,292; 5^{me}, 10^{me}, 22^{me}, 256^{me}; $\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{6}$, $1\frac{1}{2}$, $1\frac{3}{4}$; *and like examples.*

B. USE OF THE PASSIVE.

163. For the formation of the passive, see **104.** The use of the passive is much less extended in French than in English, its place being often supplied by other forms—especially by the reflexive idiom **(136)** and by **on** with the active verb **(153).** Moreover:

a. The progressive passive forms do not exist in French, but the reflexive, or **on**, must be used instead. As, *the house is building*, **on bâtit la maison**; *the report is being spread*, **le bruit se répand**, etc.

b. The passive can never be used in French unless the verb in the active *takes a direct object;* as, *I have been told*, **on m'a dit**; *the laws are obeyed*, **on obéit aux lois**; *he was commanded by the king*, **le roi lui a commandé**, etc.—retaining the active form with the *indirect* object.

NOTE.—This rule is important, because many verbs seemingly transitive in English are intransitive in French; also because in English even an indirect object often becomes subject of the passive form; as, *I am paid a salary*, etc. (See **88**, note 2.)

164. *By*, with the agent of a passive verb, is **par**, in a *physical* or *literal* sense; usually **de** in a *moral* or *metaphorical* sense; as, **la maison fut vendue par le marchand**; but, **il est bien aimé de ses amis; il fut attaqué par un chien**; but, **d'une fièvre**, *by* (or *with*) *a fever*, etc.

13. La Tour des Revenants.

La partie méridionale de la cité d'Aoste n'est pas fort habitée. On[1] y voit des prairies terminées par des remparts antiques, que les Romains élevèrent pour lui servir d'enceinte[2]. Auprès de la porte de la ville on voit les ruines d'un ancien château, dans lequel, si l'on en[3] croit la tradition populaire, un comte, poussé par les fureurs de la jalousie, laissa mourir de faim, dans le quinzième siècle, une princesse, son épouse. Cette anecdote, dont on pourrait[4] contester l'authenticité, rend ces ruines intéressantes[5] pour les personnes qui la croient vraie. Plus loin, à quelques centaines de pas, est une ancienne tour carrée. On l'appelle *la Tour de la Frayeur* parce que le peuple l'a crue[6] longtemps habitée par des revenants. Les vieilles femmes, comme on m'a dit, ont souvent vu en[7] sortir, pendant les nuits sombres, une grande femme blanche, tenant[8] une lampe à la main.

[1] *Translate* **on**, *etc., by passive throughout this piece.* [2] Idiom, *to serve as.* [3] Refers to **château**—*about it.* [4] Cond. irreg. **pouvoir**, *to be able: whose authenticity might be contested.* [5] See **170**. [6] P. part. fem. **croire**, *to believe.* [7] Refers to **tour (91)**.

Henceforth—or even earlier—supplementary reading should be added. See p. 193, *etc.*

CHAPTER XIX.

A. NUMERAL IDIOMS.

CARDINAL FOR ORDINAL.

165. In some cases the cardinal numeral is used, when not in English:

a. In the titles of sovereigns, except the *first*, and optionally the *second;* as, **Louis premièr** (I), **Louis second**, or **deux** (II), **Louis trois, quatorze** (III, XIV).

NOTE.—Special titles are **Charles Quint** (Charles V, emperor) and **Sixte Quint** (Pope Sixtus V).

b. In the days of the month, except the *first;* as **le premier mai, le onze mai**—*of* being omitted (**160**, note).

NOTE.—When the cardinal is used in an ordinal sense, **vingt, cent** do not take plural **-s**; as, **page cent quatre-vingt**, *page* 180; **en** (l'an) **mil sept cent**, *in the year* 1700.

EXPRESSIONS OF TIME, DATES, AGE, ETC.

166. The following idiomatic forms may be noted:

a. The days of the month and of the week stand without preposition; as, **il mourut le dix mai**, *he died* (*on*) *the tenth* (*of*) *May;* **il partit lundi**, *he started* (*on*) *Monday*. **Le lundi** means *Mondays*, or *every Monday*.

b. Note the phrases: **huit jours**, *a week;* **quinze jours**, *a fortnight;* **d'aujourd'hui en huit**, or **en quinze**, *to-day week*, or *fortnight;* **tous les jours**, *every day;* **tous les deux—trois—jours**, *every two—three days* (*or every other day, every third day*, etc.); **une fois—deux fois—par jour, par semaine**, etc., *once—twice, a day, a week*, etc.

NOTE.—But for units other than of time, the definite article is used, without preposition; as, *six francs a pound*, **six francs la livre**, etc. (**29**, *e*).

c. The *hour of the day* is expressed by giving the number of the hours; as, **une heure**, *one o'clock*; **deux heures**, *two o'clock*, etc. Note the following idioms:

Quelle heure est-il? *what time is it?*
Il est deux heures et demie, *it is half past two*
" **deux heures et (un) quart**, *it is a quarter past two*
" **deux heures moins (un) quart**, *it is a quarter before two*
" **deux heures (et) vingt (minutes)**, 20 *minutes past two*
A midi, *at* 12 (*noon*); **à minuit**, *at* 12 (*midnight*), etc., etc.

d. Numerals expressing *age* or *dimension* are preceded by **de** (except after **avoir**); as, **une fille âgée de dix ans**, *a girl ten years old*; **cette table est longue de trois pieds** (or **est de trois pieds de longueur**), *three feet long* (*in length*). But after **avoir**, without preposition: **elle a dix ans** (**86**, note); **la table a trois pieds de haut** (or **de hauteur**), *is three feet high* (*in height*).

167. A numeral is limited by **de** before an adjective—with **en** (**92**) if the noun is omitted; **as, il y eut deux hommes de tués; il y en eut dix de blessés,** *there were two men killed; there were ten wounded.* The phrase *there are three of us* is: **nous sommes trois.**

168. *Than* before a numeral, comparing *number* only, is **de**; as, **plus de dix jours,** *more than ten days*; **plus d'un fils,** *more than one son.* But **plus qu'un fils,** *more than a son*; **un vice coûte plus que deux enfants,** *one vice costs more than two children* (*would cost*).

169. The names of the months and days may be here added. They are written without capitals:

janvier,	*January*	**juillet,**	*July*
février,	*February*	**août,**	*August*
mars,	*March*	**septembre,**	*September*
avril,	*April*	**octobre,**	*October*
mai,	*May*	**novembre,**	*November*
juin,	*June*	**décembre,**	*December*

	dimanche,	*Sunday*	
lundi,	*Monday*	**jeudi,**	*Thursday*
mardi,	*Tuesday*	**vendredi,**	*Friday*
mercredi,	*Wednesday*	**samedi,**	*Saturday*

NOTE.—The final consonants in **mars, avril** are sounded; and **a** is silent in **août.**

EXERCISE XIX.

1. Votre lettre du vingt-sept janvier a été reçue le premier ou le deux février. 2. Louis XVI, Louis XVIII et Charles X étaient frères. 3. Le pape Sixte Quint était contemporain de Philippe deux, fils de l'empereur Charles Quint. 4. Napoléon premier mourut (*died*) le 5 mai, en mil huit cent vingt-un (1821) âgé de plus de 52 ans. 5. Quel âge avez-vous? Moi, je n'ai pas encore vingt ans. 6. Quelle heure est-il? Il est huit heures, ou plutôt huit heures moins dix. 7. Nous dînons ordinairement à trois heures et demie; le dimanche nous dînons à une heure. 8. Cette colonne semble être haute de deux cent cinquante pieds (avoir 250 pieds de hauteur). 9. Le lac de Génève a plus de neuf cents pieds de profondeur (est profond de plus de 900 pieds). 10. J'habite une chambre de vingt pieds de longueur sur (*by*) seize pieds de largeur. 11. Datez votre lettre: New York, jeudi, le trois novembre, dix-huit cent quatre-vingt-douze (le 3 nov. 1892). 12. Boston, le premier mai, mil huit cent quatre-vingt (1er mai, 1880). 13. La "Revue des Deux Mondes" parait (*appears*) tous les quinze jours—deux fois par mois. 14. Dans la dernière bataille il y eut huit cents hommes de tués, et plus de deux mille de blessés. 15. Ce drap se vend (*passive*) cinq francs l'aune. 16. Il a mangé plus de deux livres de jambon; il mange ordinairement plus que deux hommes quelconques.

B. THE PARTICIPLES.

For the position of participles when used as adjectives, see **59**, *b*; for their inflection, **68**.

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

170. The present participle is inflected only when used as an adjective; as, **une femme charmante**; **d'une voix tremblante**, *with a trembling voice*, etc. But: **elle entra, charmant tous les spectateurs**, *charming all the spectators*.

NOTE.—As already seen, the pres. part. is not used in compound tenses; as, *I am reading, I was speaking*, etc.

171. The present participle preceded by the preposition **en**, *in* (often called the *gerund*) is used to express *simultaneous action*—also *manner, means*, etc. —English *while, in, on, by*, etc.; as, **elle pleura en me parlant—en me voyant**, *she wept while* (*in*) *speaking to me—on seeing me, as she saw me*, etc.; **on apprend en lisant**, *one learns by reading*. Often **en** remains untranslated; as, **elle dit en pleurant**, *she said weeping*.

En must be repeated before each participle.

NOTE.—This construction regularly refers to the *subject*; as, **je le rencontrai en allant à l'église**, *I met him while* (*I was*) *going to church*; **je rencontrai un homme allant**—or **qui allait—à l'église**, *I met a man going*—i.e., *as he was going*, etc.

REMARK.—It must be remembered that the English form in *-ing* is not only present participle, but often a verbal noun (or form of the infinitive). These forms must be carefully distinguished. Also, in general, the present participle is not so largely used in French as in English.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

172. The past participle is regularly inflected when used as an adjective; as, **une bourse perdue**, *a lost purse*, etc.

NOTE.—A few past participles are used, undeclined, as prepositions, or idiomatically; as, **excepté mes filles**, *except*, etc.; **ci-inclus vous trouverez la lettre**, *enclosed you will find the letter;* **vu que**, *seeing that*, etc.

THE PAST PART. IN COMPOUND TENSES.

173. The chief use of the past participle is in forming the compound parts of verbs. The rules for agreement have been given. These may now be conveniently summed up:

AUXIL.	VERB.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	
I. **avoir**,	transitive:	agrees with dir. obj. preced.	(88)
"	intrans.:	does not change.	(89)
II. **être**,	"	agrees with subject.	(105)
"	passive:	" " "	(104)
"	reflexive:	" " dir. obj. preced.	(148)
III. **avoir** or **être**,	impers.:	does not change.	(157)

The following special cases will now be added:

174. The agreement (in I) is only with the preceding *direct object of the verb.* Hence:

a. If the object belongs to a following infinitive,* the participle does not agree. As:

la maison que j'ai fait bâtir, *the house that I have had built,*

la chanson que j'ai entendu chanter, *the song I have heard sung* (where **que** is object of the combined verbs). But:

la dame que j'ai entendue chanter, *the lady whom I have heard sing*, etc. (where **que** is object of the first verb only).

b. Hence, also, if the infinitive is understood (in certain verb phrases), the part. does not agree; as:

j'ai écrit toutes les lettres que j'ai pu—que j'ai dû (écrire); *I have written all the letters that I could—that I had to (write)*, etc.

c. If the object is adverbial—of *extent*, etc.—the part. does not agree; as:

les heures qu'il a dormi, *the hours that he has slept*
les milles qu'il a marché, *the miles that he has walked*, etc.

* Or, more accurately, to the two verbs jointly, the infinitive being the direct object. (See **190**.)

NOTE.—Remember that **en, y, dont** are always indirect objects—hence cause no inflection of past part. See also **149**, note 1.

14. Le Lépreux.

Il y a[1] environ quinze ans que cette tour fut réparée, pour y loger un lépreux, en[2] lui procurant tous les agréments dont sa triste situation était susceptible. C'est là qu'il vivait longtemps, livré à lui-même, ne voyant personne, excepté le prêtre, et l'homme qui deux fois par semaine lui apportait ses provisions. En l'année 1797 un militaire, se trouvant[3] à la cité d'Aoste, passa par hasard auprès du jardin du lépreux, et il eut la curiosité d'y entrer. Il y trouva un homme vêtu[4] simplement, appuyé contre un arbre et plongé dans une profonde méditation. Au bruit que fit l'officier[5] en entrant, le solitaire[6] s'écria d'une voix triste, en faisant[7] un signe de la main: Qui est-là? n'avancez pas; vous êtes auprès d'un malheureux[6] attaqué de la lèpre.

[1] See **158**, note. [2] *while*, **171**. [3] Reflex. idiom, *happening to be*. [4] P. part. irreg. **vêtir**, *to clothe*. [5] See **147**. [6] See **66**. [7] Irreg. **faire**, *to make*.

CONVERSATION.

—Ayez la bonté, monsieur, de me dire l'heure qu'il est. Ma montre s'est arrêtée.—Avec plaisir, monsieur. Il est neuf heures et quart, ou peut-être neuf heures vingt. Je crois que ma montre retarde un peu.—A quelle heure part-on d'ici pour New York? Le train express part trois fois par jour, à huit heures du matin, à midi et à six heures et demie du soir.—Qui règne maintenant en Allemagne? C'est l'empereur Guillaume II.—Est-il fils de Guillaume Ier? Non; c'est son petit-fils.—Combien de guerres ont eu lieu entre l'Angleterre et les États-Unis? Deux.—Quelle était la première? C'était la guerre de la Révolution.—Quand commença-t-elle? Elle commença en 1775 et finit en 1782.—Quand les colonies ont-elles déclaré leur indépendance? C'était le 4 juillet, 1776.

CHAPTER XX.

A. ADVERBS.

175. The classes of adverbs, *time, place,* etc., and of adverb phrases, are the same as in English. Many adverbs are primary; as, **très,** *very;* **souvent,** *often,* etc. Derivative adverbs are usually formed from adjectives, as follows:

a. Adverbs are derived from adjectives by adding **-ment** to the masculine, if the adjective ends in a vowel; to the feminine, if it ends in a consonant; as, **joli, joliment; heureux, heureusement; léger, légèrement,** etc.

NOTE.—The adjectives **beau (bel), nouveau (nouvel), fou (fol), mou (mol),** form **bellement, nouvellement, follement, mollement,** corresponding to the feminine forms (**54**).

b. A few adverbs change **e** to **é** before **-ment**; as, **communément, profondément,** etc. Such cases must be learned by experience.

c. Adjectives in **-ant, -ent,** form adverbs in **-amment, -emment**; as, **constant, constamment; évident, évidemment** (**17,** note).

NOTE.—But with exceptions, as **lentement, présentement.**

In general, adverb forms are to be found in the dictionary.

176. The adjective form is sometimes used unchanged as adverb; as, **vite,** *quickly;* **haut,** *aloud;* **bas,** *low;* and in such expressions as **sentir bon,** *to smell sweet;* **coûter cher,** *to cost dear;* **être bien,** *to be well,* etc.; as, **la rose sent bon,** *the rose smells sweet.*

177. The adverb **tout**, *wholly, very,* before a feminine adjective beginning with a consonant, adds **e**— before a plural, **es**; as, **elle est toute triste ; toutes tristes qu'elles sont**; but: **elle est tout étonnée; elles sont tout *h*eureuses,** etc.

NOTE.—These are the adjective endings, added, by false analogy, to preserve the sound of *t*.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

178. Adverbs are compared by **plus**, *more,* **moins**, *less,* for the comparative; **le plus, le moins,** for the superlative, the article remaining *always unchanged;* as:

facilement, *easily;* **plus facilement**, **le plus facilement**
souvent, *often ;* **moins souvent**, **le moins souvent**, etc.

179. The following are irregular (see **63**):

bien, *well*	**mieux**, *better*	**le mieux**, (*the*) *best*
mal, *ill*	**pis**, *worse*	**le pis**, (*the*) *worst*
peu, *little*	**moins**, *less*	**le moins**, (*the*) *least*

NOTE.—The adverb *more,* at the end of a sentence, is often **davantage** ; *more,* meaning *addition,* is **encore** before a numeral; as, **encore un**, *one more ;* **encore deux fois**, *twice more,* etc. Note also the phrases: **tant mieux**, *so much the better;* **tant pis**, *so much the worse.*

180. The correlatives of comparison, *the more, the less,* are expressed simply by **plus, moins**; as, **plus on aime quelqu'un, moins on doit le flatter**, *the more we love any one, the less we should flatter him.*

a. If an adjective or adverb is included, it will stand after the verb ; as, **plus on est bon, plus on est aimé**, *the better one is, the more one is loved ;* **plus vous lisez lentement, plus vous lisez bien**, *the slower you read, the better you read.*

b. The same position is used with **tant**, *so*, and with **comme** or **que**, *how*, in exclamations; as, **tant nous marchions rapidement**, *so rapidly did we march;* **comme il écrit lentement**, *how slowly he writes;* **qu'elle est belle**, *how beautiful she is!*

PLACE OF THE ADVERB.

181. The adverb may not, as in English, stand between the subject and the verb. It must either follow both, or, more emphatically, it will precede both; as, *I often see him*, **je le vois souvent**, or, **souvent je le vois.**

a. In compound tenses, most of the common adverbs will stand between the auxiliary and participle; as, **je l'ai toujours aimé**, *I have always loved him.* But not **ici**, **là**, **hier**, **aujourd'hui**, **demain**, **tôt**, **tard**; nor, usually, complex adverbial phrases.

b. After interrogative adverbs, the noun will follow the verb; or if it precede, the pronoun will be repeated after the verb (as 75); as, **comment se porte votre père?** or, **comment votre père se porte-t-il?**

c. After the adverbs,

à peine, *hardly*	**encore**, *still*
aussi, *accordingly, so*	**en vain**, *in vain*
au moins, **du moins**, *at least*	**peut-être**, *perhaps*

standing emphatically at the head of a clause, the *interrogative position* of the subject noun or pronoun is usually employed; as, **à peine fut-il sorti**—**à peine mon père fut-il sorti**, etc.; **peut-être nos amis reviendront-ils demain**, *perhaps our friends will return to-morrow*, etc.

d. Similarly, in parenthetical phrases following words quoted entire or in part, the subject noun or pronoun follows the verb; as, **qui est là? dit la fille. Entrez, répliqua-t-il, nous attendons**—*replied he*, or *he replied.*

For the construction of adverbs of quantity (with **de**) see **41**, *b*; for **voici**, **voilà**, see **81**, *a*; for **en** and **y** as adverbs, **95**, note 1.

EXERCISE XX, a.

1. La tortue, qui marche lentement, arrive souvent plus vite que le lièvre. 2. Le pauvre homme était profondément affligé de cette nouvelle. 3. Tôt ou tard une bonne action trouve sa récompense. 4. Vous avez assez joué; travaillez maintenant. 5. Mon père se porte un peu mieux, mais ma sœur va (*goes*) de mal en (*to*) pis. 6. Bien faire et peu dire est une fort bonne devise. 7. Je ne me fie pas entièrement à lui, tant il parle et agit imprudemment. 8. Elle était toute surprise—tout étonnée—de vous rencontrer si subitement (à l'improviste). 9. Comme ces fleurs sont belles; comme elles sentent bon! 10. Elle est toute bonne et tout aimable; mais qu'elle est malheureuse! 11. Cet homme est tout à fait ennuyeux; plus on lui donne, plus il demande. 12. Ne parlez pas si haut; on vous entend assez bien sans cela. 13. Plus on travaille volontiers, plus on travaille facilement. 14. Au printemps les oiseaux chantent le plus joyeusement. 15. Peut-être avons-nous eu tort de parler si franchement. 16. A peine eut-il fini que tout le peuple acclama—tant il avait parlé eloquemment.

B. NEGATIVES.

182. The usual mode of forming the negative with verbs was given **77**. For some other negative forms see **151**; for the partitive with negative adverbs, **41**, *b*.

NOTE.—1. But if the negative—**pas** or **point**—limit the verb only, not the noun, the article will be used; as, **ne versa-t-il pas des larmes?** *did he not shed tears?* **il ne versa pas de larmes,** *he shed no tears.*

2. **Point** is stronger than **pas**, with sometimes sense of *not at all:* **je ne chante point,** *I do not sing at all (ever);* **je ne chante pas,** *I am not singing.*

Other negative forms, which exclude **pas** or **point**, are:

a. **ne . . . jamais**, or without verb, **jamais**, *never*. As, **avez-vous jamais vu cet homme? je ne l'ai jamais vu**; or simply, **jamais**, *never*. Or, in emphatic position, **jamais je ne l'ai vu**, *never have I seen him.*

b. **ne . . . plus**, or without verb, **plus**, *no more, no longer;* as, **je ne lirai plus**, *I shall read no longer (no more)*; **plus de paroles**, *no more words.*

NOTE.—**Pas plus** expresses comparison; as, **je ne lirai pas plus que cette page**, *I shall not read more than this page.*

REMARK.—In all these cases, the negative sense has been acquired by use (as **151**) with **ne**. **Pas** is properly *step;* **point**, *point;* **jamais**, *ever;* **plus**, *more.*

c. **ne . . . que**, *not . . . but, only*, limits the verb always with reference to some predicate adjunct; as, **cela ne coûte que six francs**, *costs only*, etc.; **il n'est que trop juste**, *only too just;* **je ne parle que de lui**, *I speak only of him*, —**que** standing always before the term specified; that is, just where *only* would stand in English.

NOTE.—1. If the limitation applies to the verb alone, or to the subject, *only* is **seulement**; as, **entrez seulement**, *only come in;* **seulement les bons sont heureux**, *only the good*, etc. Or, **que** may be used, predicatively; as, **il ne fit qu'entrer**, *he only entered (did not but)*; **ce ne sont que les bons qui sont heureux**, *it is only the good who*, etc.

2. The rule **41**, *b* does not apply to **que**; as, **il n'a que des amis**, *he has only friends.*

d. **Ni**, *nor;* **ni . . . ni**, *neither . . . nor*, also require **ne** before the verb, and before each of two or more verbs; as, **je n'ai vu ni lui ni elle**, *I have seen neither him nor her;* **je ne l'aime ni ne le crains**, *I neither love nor fear him.* (For the verb, and the article, with **ni . . . ni**, see **195**, note.)

e. Other phrases are **ne . . guère** (or **guère que**), *little, hardly;* **ne . . . nullement**, *not at all;* **ne . . . mot**, *not a word;* **ne . . . goutte**, *not a drop;* and other indefinite forms; as, **je n'ai vu homme quelconque**, *I have seen no man whatever;* **je n'ai d'autre ami que toi**, *I have no other friend than you.*

NOTE.—Different *completing* negatives may concur, giving however only *one* negative in English; as, **je n'ai jamais rien**

dit, *I have never said anything*, etc. But two *complete* negatives logically exclude each other; as, **on ne peut pas ne pas croire cela**, *one cannot not*, i.e., *one must, believe that.*

183. The disjunctive negative, *no*, or *not*, without a verb, is **non, non pas**, sometimes only **pas** (or **point**). As, **voulez-vous venir**, *will you come?* **Non**; **non pas**; **je crois que non**, *I think (that) not*; **pas moi**, *not I*; **pas du tout**, *not at all*, etc.

NOTE.—**Non plus** is emphatic *not—either, nor either*; as, **je ne le ferai pas non plus**, *I shall not do it either*; **ni moi non plus** *nor I either*, etc.

NE ALONE WITH THE VERB.

184. In some idioms **ne** stands before the verb without other completing negative; as:

a. In some elliptical phrases; as, **n'importe**, *no matter*; **à Dieu ne plaise**, *God forbid*, etc.

b. Often with the verbs **cesser**, *to cease*; **oser**, *to dare*; **pouvoir**, *to be able*; **savoir**, *to know (how)*, especially before an infinitive; as, **elle ne cessa de pleurer**, *she did not cease to weep*; **je n'ose lui dire**, *I dare not tell him*; **je ne sais que faire**, *I don't know what to do.*

c. After **qui**, or **que** (*why?*), in *rhetorical* questions; as, **qui ne croirait cela?** *who would not believe that?* **Que ne lui parlez-vous?** *why don't you speak to him?*

d. Frequently after **si**, *if*, meaning *unless*; as, **si je ne me trompe**, *unless I am mistaken.*

e. With *compound* tenses of verbs, after **il y a** or **depuis . . . que**, expressing *continuous* time; as, **il y a deux mois que je ne l'ai vu**, or, **depuis que je ne l'ai vu**, *I have not seen him for two months*, or, *it is two months since I have seen him.* (See **158**, note.)

f. Also in some subjunctive clauses, which will be explained hereafter (**221**).

NE NOT TRANSLATED.

185. In other idioms **ne** will stand alone with the verb, where no negative is indicated in the English idiom; such as:

a. With **il y a** or **depuis . . . que** above (*e*), if translated *since.*

b. In the second clause of a comparative sentence, or after **autre—que, autrement—que**, provided the first clause is *affirmative;* as, **il est plus grand qu'il n'était,** *he is taller than he was;* **il parle autrement qu'il ne pense,** *he speaks otherwise than he thinks.* But, **il n'est pas plus grand qu'il était—il ne parle pas autrement qu'il agit**—where the first clause is *negative.*

c. Also in some subjunctive clauses, to be explained hereafter (**222**).

NOTE.—On the other hand, our *not* is sometimes expressed without a negative in French ; as, **prenez garde de casser les verres,** *take care not to break the glasses;* **je me garderai de le faire,** *I shall take care not to do it (guard myself from doing it).*

Remember that, in all cases, idiomatic forms must be used in translation.

EXERCISE XX, b.

1. Avez-vous jamais rien entendu de plus beau? Jamais. 2. Vous n'aimez pas cet homme; il ne vous aime pas non plus. 3. Jamais on n'aimera un envieux ni un menteur. 4. Il n'avait que des flatteurs et point d'amis. 5. Je n'y consentirai jamais; il ne me trompera plus. 6. Je n'ai écrit (*written*) qu'à lui, et je ne lui ai écrit que deux fois. 7. Je n'ose dire où j'ai été ni ce que j'ai vu. 8. Je ne l'écouterai plus; il ne cesse de me quereller. 9. Celui-là est plus riche qu'on ne pense. 10. Il souffre beaucoup, mais il n'est pas plus malade qu'il était hier. 11. Rien ne peut empêcher le ravage du temple, si je n'ai cet enfant pour otage. 12. Que ne lui demandez-vous conseil? qui ne s'empresserait de le consulter? 13. Il ne paiera pas plus que vous ; je ne puis (*can*) l'en blâmer. 14. Elle avait un je ne sais quoi de charmant dans les yeux. 15. Prenez (*take*) garde de trop frotter les meubles, de peur de les user. 16. Il y a plus de deux

mois qu'il n'a étudié une seule leçon; il joue seulement (ne fait que jouer) toute la journée.

15. Une Conversation.

Le Lépreux. Si quelques-unes de ces fleurs vous paraissent[1] belles, vous ne courrez[2] aucun risque en les portant chez vous. Je les ai semées, mais je ne les touche jamais, car alors je n'oserais les offrir.

Le Militaire. Le charmant réduit; et comme il est bien fait[3] pour les méditations d'un solitaire!

Le L. Aussi je l'aime beaucoup; je vois d'ici tout ce qui se passe dans la prairie, et je ne suis vu de personne.

Le M. J'admire combien cette retraite est tranquille. Ce pays est-il le vôtre?

Le L. Je n'habite[4] ici que depuis quinze ans. Mon histoire n'est qu'une longue calamité. Je ne connus[5] jamais mes parents et je n'ai jamais eu d'ami[6]. Mais le détail de la vie d'un solitaire tel que moi ne pourrait[7] être que monotone pour un homme du monde.

Le M. Ah! que vous connaissez[8] peu ce monde, qui ne m'a jamais donné le bonheur! Peut-être y a-t-il plus d'analogie entre nos idées que vous ne pensez.

[1] Pres. irreg. **paraître**, *to appear*. [2] Fut. irreg. **courir**, *to run*. [3] P. p. **faire**. [4] English perfect, *I have lived*, etc. [5] From irreg. **connaître**, *to know*. [6] *Any friend;* see 41, *b*. [7] Cond. irreg. **pouvoir**, *to be able;* here *could*.

CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette histoire? C'est la continuation des deux précédentes, pages 116 et 122.—De quel auteur est-elle? De Xavier de Maistre, né en 1764, mort en 1852.—De quels livres fut-il auteur? De celui-ci, Le Lépreux d'Aoste, et de La Jeune Sibérienne, dont nous avons fait un extrait, p. 104.—Ne connaissez-vous pas d'autres de ses ouvrages? Je les ai peut-être oubliés.—Eh bien; cherchez dans la bibliothèque, et vous les trouverez.

CHAPTER XXI.

A. PREPOSITIONS.

186. Prepositions are *simple*, as **de**, **à**, etc.; or *compound* (phrases ending in a preposition), as **autour de**, *around*, **jusqu'à**, *until*, etc. Special words are sometimes used as prepositions, as **excepté**, *except*, etc. The meanings of prepositions are to be found in the dictionary. In general, their office is the same as in English.

187. The idiomatic uses of prepositions are numerous, and often differ widely in different languages. These, too, must be found in the dictionary, or in more elaborate grammars. Only a few will be indicated here. Others have occurred already:

a. Outside of their ordinary use with nouns or pronouns, a few prepositions are used with the infinitive of verbs (**191**, etc.); **en** is used with the present participle (**171**), and **de** and **à** are used in forming compound nouns (**207**).

NOTE.—For **de**, possessive, see **32**, *b*; in partitive or adjective sense, **39–42**; after **en**, **92**; after indefinites, **151**, *b*, **144**, note; after numerals, **167**; for *than*, **168**; and for the repetition of prepositions, **32**, *b*, note.

b. The indirect object, with or without preposition in English, is expressed always by **à**—or by the case form of the conjunctive pronouns (**71**). Sometimes, with verbs like *take*, *borrow*, *hide*, etc., it has the sense of *from* (the Latin *dative privative*); as, **il lui prend un couteau**, *he takes a knife from him*; **elle cacha les enfants à son mari**, *she hid the children from her husband*, etc.

NOTE.—But with verbs of *motion* **à**, *to*, is always expressed; **as, venez à moi**; **je courus à lui**, etc. (See **72**, *a*.)

c. In many cases, especially with verbs, a preposition is used in the one language when omitted in the other; as, **attendre**, *to wait for*; **écouter**, *to listen to*; **espérer**, *to hope for*, etc., which take a direct object in French. On the other hand, **obéir à**, *to obey*; **ordonner à**, *to order*; **résister à**, *to resist*; **jouir de**, *to enjoy*, etc., which take a direct object in English (**88**, note 2). See also **136**, *e*.

d. In some cases, also, the relations of the two objects with the equivalent verbs will be *reversed* in the two idioms; as, **demander quelque chose à quelqu'un**, *to ask somebody for something*; **reprocher quelque chose à quelqu'un**, *to reproach somebody with something*; **vous lui inspirez un grand espoir**, *you inspire him with a great hope*; **ils me le payeront**, *they shall pay me for it* (= *it to me*).

NOTE.—The relation of the objects in French is usually the same as in Latin. In general, verbs which govern the dative case in Latin take an indirect object in French.

e. **Sans**, when implying a negative, excludes the partitive article (**41**) and is followed by **ni**; as, **il parla sans hésiter ni faire de fautes**, *without hesitating or making any mistakes*. But: **il ne parla jamais sans faire des fautes et dire des sottises**—where the context implies an affirmative.

f. **En** is used, generally, with nouns alone; **dans**, with nouns with article, etc.; **en**, **dans** are used with most names of countries; **à**, with names of towns.

For other special uses of prepositions, see Index.

16. La Mort de Sénèque (*Seneca*).

Sénèque n'échappa pas à la haine de Néron (*Nero*). Ne pouvant cacher ses vices à son ancien précepteur, ce prince ingrat voulait se délivrer d'un censeur odieux. Il (*there*) se présenta une belle occasion. Sénèque étant soupçonné d'avoir part[1] à une conjuration contre Néron, un centurion vint à lui de la part[2] de l'empereur, et lui annonça l'ordre de mourir. Sénèque, sans[3] se troubler, demanda son testament, pour[4] y ajouter quelques legs en faveur de ses amis

présents. Le centurion lui en[4] refusa la permission. Eh bien, dit Sénèque, en se tournant vers ses amis, je vous laisse le seul bien qui me reste—ce qu'on ne pourra[5] vous prendre—l'exemple de ma vie. Il s'ouvrit[6] alors les veines des bras, et après aussi celles des jambes.

"Qui[7] ose m'ôter l'honneur craint[8] de[3] m'ôter la vie!"
"Viens[9], tu fais ton devoir, et le fils dégénère
Qui survit[10] un moment à l'honneur de son père."

[1] *Of taking part in.* [2] Prep. phrase, *from.* [3] Prep. with infin. [4] Refers to whole sentence—here not transl. **95**, Rem. [5] Fut. irreg. **pouvoir.** [6] See **108**, *c.* [7] See **145.** [8] Pres. irreg. **craindre,** *to fear.* [9] Imperat. irreg. **venir,** *to come.* [10] Pres. irreg. comp. **survivre,** *to survive.*

B. THE INFINITIVE.

188. The infinitive in French corresponds, generally, to the several English infin. forms, *love, to love, loving.* As a verbal noun it stands in various relations, with or without preposition, and in simple or compound form.

INFINITIVE WITHOUT PREPOSITION.

189. The infinitive is used without preposition:

a. In the relation of a noun subject; also as predicate after **être** and other intransitives; as, **te quitter, c'est mourir,** *to leave thee is to die* (**123**, *a*); also absolutely, in exclamation or question; as, **quoi, fuir!** *what, flee!* **pourquoi fuir?** *why flee?*

b. As object after certain verbs, such as verbs of *motion;* of *sensation, thinking, wishing;* and the *quasi* auxiliaries (*can, dare, may, must, let, ought*); and some other verbs of frequent use. (See Rem., **191.**)

NOTE.—This infinitive will be variously translated in English; as, **venez me voir,** *come and see me;* **envoyez chercher le**

médecin, *send for (to seek) the physician;* **je crois avoir raison**, *I think I am right;* **je l'entends chanter**, *I hear her singing;* **j'ai entendu dire**, *I have heard say*, or *said*, etc.

190. After certain verbs, as *see, hear, cause (have), let*, the following idiomatic forms occur:

a. The infinitive, if *without subject*, often corresponds to the English passive (participle) idiom. As, **je le vis tuer**, *I saw him killed;* **je fais bâtir une maison**, *I have a house built (= make . . . build a house)*; **cette chanson—je l'ai entendu chanter**, *I have heard it sung*, etc.

NOTE.—In such cases the infinitive is the true object of the leading verb, and the noun or pronoun is object of the *two verbs* jointly. Hence the verbs stand (as above) directly together, and the joint object, if a noun, follows both; if a pronoun, precedes both—and without agreement of past participle in compound tenses (**174**).

b. The subject of the infinitive, if expressed, is construed as an object, which will be *indirect*, if a second (direct) object occurs; otherwise, *direct* (and, if preceding, with agreement of past participle). As, **avez-vous entendu chanter cette dame? Je l'ai entendue chanter**, *I have heard her sing* (**174**). But, **je lui ai entendu chanter cette chanson**; **la chanson que je lui ai entendu chanter**, *which I have heard her sing* (here without agreement of past part., as above). **Je l'ai ouï dire à mon père**, *I have heard my father say so.*

NOTE.—Sometimes this idiom corresponds to our passive with *by;* as, **Joad le fait attendre aux Juifs**, *Joad causes him to be awaited by the Jews (= makes the Jews await him).*

INFINITIVE WITH PREPOSITION.

191. The infinitive is used with the prepositions **de**, or **à** (usually = *to*):

a. Depending on nouns or adjectives; as:

le désir de vivre, *the desire to live (= of)*
content de mourir, *content to die*
une maison à vendre, *a house to sell*
prêt à mourir, *ready to die*

b. Depending on verbs ; as :

il cessa de parler, *he ceased to speak*
j'ai à vous parler—il apprend à lire, *he learns to read*, etc.

c. The infinitive as logical subject (after **être**) takes **de** ; but where *objective*, or passive in sense, it takes **à** :

c'est un honneur de mourir ainsi, *it is an honor to die thus*
il est facile d'apprendre cette leçon, *it is easy to learn this lesson*

But : **cette leçon est à apprendre**, *is to be learned*, etc.
cette leçon est facile à apprendre, *easy to learn* (*be learned*)

NOTE.—1. Sometimes in this use the infin. with **de** is preceded by **que** ; as, **c'est un honneur que de mourir ainsi**, *to die thus*. (See **196**, *c.*)

2. This (expletive) **que** must not be confounded with **que de** in the second term of a comparison ; as, **j'aime mieux mourir que de fuir**, *I prefer to die rather than to flee.*

d. Elliptically, sometimes with **de** ; as, **de répéter**, *to repeat ;* more often with **à** ; as, **à le voir, on le croirait fou**, *to see him, one would think him mad.*

REMARK.—For the use of **de** or **à** with infin., especially after verbs, no sufficient rule can be given, though in many cases the sense will decide. Lists of verbs taking an infinitive without preposition, or with **de** or **à**, are found in an Appendix (p. 237), and the use should always be indicated in the dictionaries. The verbs without prep. before the infin. are among the most common, but the majority of verbs require **de** or **à**. Some verbs are used with or without prep., and some take **de** or **à**, in different senses. Such distinctions are also properly found in the dictionaries.

192. The infinitive is used with **pour**, *for*, in sense of *purpose*, (*in order*) *to;* as, **on lit pour apprendre**, *one reads to learn.* Also:

a. Less frequently, in sense of *for*, *in consequence of ;* as, **il fut puni pour avoir part au crime**, *for taking part in the crime.*

b. Also after **assez**, *enough ;* **trop**, *too* (*much*) ; as, **il a assez pour vivre**, *enough to live* (*on*); **trop jeune pour mourir**, *too young to die*, etc.

193. The infin. is used in sense of English *-ing:*

a. With **sans**, *without;* as, **sans répondre**, *without replying.*

b. With **par**, *by*, after **commençer**, **finir**; as, **il finit par dire**, *he finished by saying*, etc.

NOTE.—Elsewhere this *by* is usually expressed by **en** with pres. part. (171).

c. With **après**, only in compound tense; as, **après avoir parlé**; but otherwise **après de**; as, **après de parler**, *after speaking.*

d. With some compound prepositions (phrases) ending in **de**; as, **afin de**, **avant de**, **loin de**, etc.

REMARK.—After some verbs of *feeling*, *thinking*, etc., instead of the infinitive, **que** with a finite verb clause is often used, and *must* be used, if the subject is changed. As, **je crois avoir raison**, or, **je crois que j'ai raison**, *I think that I am right;* but only, **je crois que vous avez raison** (similarly with subjunctive clauses hereafter). In other cases either form may be used; as, **je vous ordonne de venir**, or, **j'ordonne que vous veniez** (subj.), *I order you to come.* (See Rem., 215, 218.)

For the negative with infinitive, see **77.**

EXERCISE XXI.

1. Risquer tout sur un hasard n'est pas être sage. 2. Savoir lire et écrire est absolument nécessaire, pour ne pas être ignorant. 3. Adieu, charmant pays de France; te quitter, c'est mourir. 4. Envoyez chercher votre sœur; nous allons (*are going to*) faire des visites. 5. Le désir de vivre n'est pas la même chose que la peur de mourir. 6. Elle croit avoir raison (qu'elle a raison); il serait difficile de la persuader du contraire. 7. Il faut (*one must*) toujours aider un plus faible que soi. 8. C'est une belle mort que de mourir pour la patrie. 9. L'avocat laissa perdre la

cause de cet homme. 10. Elle aime mieux s'amuser que de travailler. 11. La belle maison que j'ai fait bâtir l'année passée, est maintenant à vendre. 12. Cette lettre, je l'ai vu écrire par lui-même. 13. Les dames que j'ai vues passer par la rue, sont entrées chez elles. 14. Ces hommes firent croire au roi qu'ils avaient entendu tenir ce discours au prince même. 15. Il jura qu'il allait la faire obéir, ou qu'il la ferait (*faire*) vendre comme une esclave. 16. Quoi! mourir sans me venger! sans faire périr mes ennemis! 17. Après avoir parlé une heure sans rien dire, il finit par se taire. 18. Je connais cette chanson ; je l'ai souvent entendu chanter. 19. Je vous écris afin d' (pour) avoir des nouvelles de votre frère. 20. Il passe tout son temps à jouer et à s'amuser, sans s'occuper du moindre travail. 21. A entendre parler cet homme, on le croirait un grand honneur que de le connaître. 22. J'ai souvent entendu parler de cette affaire. 23. Il est mieux de réfléchir avant de parler que de se repentir après de parler (après avoir parlé) imprudemment. 24. A vrai dire, ces leçons sont assez faciles à apprendre ; mais malheureusement il est tout aussi facile de les oublier.

CONVERSATION.

Qui était Sénèque? C'était un philosophe romain, tuteur de l'empereur Néron.—A quelle école de la philosophie ancienne appartenait-il? A l'école stoïque.—A-t-il laissé de ses ouvrages jusqu'à notre temps? Oui, il en reste plusieurs.—Quel grand auteur français l'a imité? C'est Corneille, qui a fondé deux de ses tragédies, *Medée* et *Cinna*, sur des ouvrages de Sénèque.—Laquelle est la meilleure? C'est *Cinna*. Napoléon a beaucoup admiré Corneille.—Que disait-il de lui? Il disait: Si Corneille avait vécu de mon temps, je l'aurais fait prince.

CHAPTER XXII.

A. CONJUNCTIONS.

194. Conjunctions are *simple;* as, **et**, *and*, **mais**, *but;* or *compound* (phrases ending in **que**), as, **pendant que**, *while;* or, in one word, **lorsque**, *when*, etc. They are also classed as *coördinating* or *subordinating*, as in English.

Only a few special forms need be given here.

195. The correlative (double) conjunctions are:

et . . . **et**, *both* . . . *and*
ou . . . **ou**, *either* . . . *or*
soit . . . **soit**, *whether* . . . *or* (lit., *be it*)
ni . . . **ni**, *neither* . . . *nor* (**182**, *d*)

NOTE.—1. Two subjects with **ni** . . . **ni** take a plural verb if *both* are excluded; as, **ni le roi ni la reine ne seront ici**; but, **ni lui ni elle ne gagnera le prix**, *neither he nor she will win the prize.*

2. Also with **ni** . . . **ni** the article, or partitive, is often omitted; as, **il n'a ni argent ni amis**, *neither money nor friends.*

195, *b.* The conditional **si** is sometimes omitted, and the verb inverted, as in English; as, **était-il ici**, *were he here* (for **s'il était ici**).

196. Que—used also as pronoun and as adverb—has a variety of uses as a conjunction:

a. In relations of time, *when*, *since*, *until*, instead of the more specific conjunctions, after definite expressions of

time; as, **une nuit que je ne dormais pas**, *one night when* (**lorsque**) *I did not sleep;* **il y a deux ans que je ne l'ai vu**, *it is two years since* (**depuis que**) *I saw him* (**184**, *e*).

b. **Que** is used in place of the repetition of other dependent conjunctions, **si**, **comme**, **quand**, **lorsque**, and other compounds of **que**; as, **comme il est malade et qu'il souffre beaucoup**, *since he is sick and* (*since he*) *suffers much;* **quand il viendra et que je le verrai**, *when he shall come, and* (*when*) *I shall see him*, etc.

c. **Que** (expletive) is used to connect emphatically a logical subject after **être**; as, **c'est une belle fille que Marie** (elliptical for *that M. is*); so especially with an infinitive (**191**, note).

d. In the sense of *that*, connecting clauses, **que** must never be omitted; as, *I think* (*that*) *you are right*, **je crois que vous avez raison.**

For uses of **que** with subjunctive, see Ch. XXIII, B.

NOTE.—The conjunctive phrases are usually formed by adding **que** to adverbs or prepositions; as, **bien que**, *although;* **pour que**, *in order that*, etc. Most of the compound prepositions have corresponding conjunctive forms ending in **que**; as, **afin de**, *in order to;* **afin que**, *in order that;* **avant que**, etc., etc.

EXERCISE XXII.

1. Soit par bonté, soit par faiblesse, il accorde tout à ses enfants. 2. Ou lui ou sa sœur arrivera demain. 3. On n'est jamais si heureux ni si malheureux qu'on s'imagine. 4. Ni l'orange ni le citron ne mûrissent dans nos climats. 5. On est blâmable quand on a des talents et qu'on refuse d'en faire usage. 6. Puisque la vie est courte et que nos jours sont comptés, épargnons le temps. 7. Un jour qu'il se promenait dans le jardin, il entendit quelqu'un qui l'appelait. 8. Quelle belle ville que Paris! 9. Je vous montrerai la lettre dès que je l'aurai reçue et que ma sœur l'aura lue. 10. Le vainqueur n'épargna ni femmes ni enfants, ni ne montra la moindre pitié (**182**, *d*).

11. Fût-il[1] la valeur même et le dieu des combats,
Il verra[2] ce que c'est que de n'obéir pas.
12. Et tout l'or de David, . . .
Et tout ce que des mains[3] de cette reine avare
Vous avez pu[4] sauver et de riche[5] et de rare,
Donnez-le.

[1] Past subj. **être**, *were he.* [2] Fut. **voir**, *to see.* [3] Dep. on **sauver.** [4] P. part. **pouvoir**, *to be able.* [5] Dep. on **tout ce** = *everything* (*of*), etc. Such inversions are common in poetry.

B. INDICATIVE TENSES.

The tenses of the indicative agree mainly, in literal and in figurative uses, with the like tenses in English. Hence only idiomatic differences need here be noted.

SIMPLE TENSES.

197. The *present* is used to express an action or state continuing in the present (English *perfect*)—often with **depuis**, *since*, or, **il y a (158).** As, **je suis ici depuis trois mois**, or, **il y a trois mois que je suis ici**, *I have been here three months;* **il y travaille (depuis) longtemps**, *he has been long working at it.*

NOTE.—As usually in English, and always in French, a present or future condition with **si**, *if*, takes the present: **s'il vient**, *if he comes*, or *shall come.* (See **199**, note.)

198. The general distinction between the *imperfect* and the *preterit* was given, **43.** It may now be added:

a. In expressing an *unreal* or *doubtful* condition of present time, the imperfect must be used; as, **si je t'aimais**, *if I loved you* (*as I do not*); **si je t'aimai**, *if I loved you* (*as I did*); **si vous me trompiez**, *if you should deceive me*

(doubtful). But, **si vous fûtes vaillant, je le suis maintenant**, *if you were brave* (fact), *I am so now.*

b. The imperfect is used of time continuous in the past, as **197** (English pluperfect): **j'y étais depuis trois mois**, *I had been there three months* (**158**, note 2).

For the occasional use of the imperfect for the conditional, see **204**.

199. The future is used, more strictly than in English, in dependent clauses when the sense is future; as, *I shall see him when he comes*,—**lorsqu'il viendra** (= *when he shall come*).

NOTE.—Except after **si**, *if* (**197**, note). With the future **si** = *whether*; as, **je ne sais s'il viendra ou non**, *I don't know whether he will come or not.*

200. The conditional does not usually state a condition, but stands in the main clause, limited by a condition *unreal* or *doubtful* (**198**). As:

a. **S'il était ici, je lui dirais**, *if he were here* (*as he is not*) *I should tell him*; **si vous me disiez cela, je ne vous croirais pas**, *if you should tell me that* (doubtful), *I should* (*would*) *not believe you.*

b. Often the condition is only implied; as, **je ne croirais pas cela**, *I would not believe that* (under any circumstances); or indicated by a phrase; as, **autrement**, *otherwise*; **sans**, etc. As, **sans lui je serais mort**, *but for him I should be dead*, etc. So, frequently, in question or exclamation; as, **je croirais un menteur**, *should I believe a liar!*

NOTE.—Yet with **quand**, **quand même**, *though*, *even though*, the conditional is used to express, emphatically, a *condition* or *concession*; as, **quand (même) vous auriez raison**, *even though you were* (*should be*) *right*, etc.

REMARK.—In considering the conditional the student must guard against the ambiguous uses of *should*, *would*—often not conditional—in English.

COMPOUND TENSES.

These agree in the main with their corresponding simple tenses, as above described, or with the like forms in English. The following special uses may be noted:

201. The *compound present* (perfect) is used habitually, as not in English:

a. To express indefinite past actions—hence called in French the *past indefinite;* as, **Dieu a créé le monde,** *God created the world;* **Rome a vaincu la Grèce,** *Rome conquered Greece.*

b. To express recent actions, within a time already completed; as, **je l'ai vu hier—il y a un an,** *I saw him yesterday—a year ago.*

c. Especially in conversation, and in 1st or 2d persons; or, generally, in statements of personal interest to the speaker or hearer.

NOTE.—Thus this tense is far more widely used than in English, while the preterit is strictly the *definite past* (85, note).

202. In the compound tenses the imperfect is used rather than the preterit; the preterit only—yet not always—of an action definitely completed before another past action; as, **lorsqu'il fut parti, on ferma la porte,** *when (as soon as) he had gone, the door was shut.*

203. The *compound future* often expresses *probability* or *conjecture;* as, **il aura écrit,** *he has probably written;* **il sera parti,** *he may have gone.* See also **199.**

204. In lieu of the compound conditional the simple imperfect is sometimes used, emphatically, as though the assumed result were a *fact;* as, **sans lui j'étais perdu,** *but for him I should have been (had been) lost;* **je descendais au tombeau, tout couvert de honte,** *I had descended to the tomb all covered with shame (if I had not,* etc.).

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

205. The imperative calls for no special remark, except:

a. The 1st plural is often used in singular sense; as, **soyons ferme,** *let me be firm.*

b. Some imperative forms are often used as interjections; as, **allons,** *come!* **va,** *nay!* etc.

NOTE.—The 3d persons, sometimes attributed to the imperative, **qu'il donne, qu'ils donnent,** *let him* (*them*) *give,* etc., are really subjunctive.

17. Le Songe d'Athalie.

Je jouissais[1] en paix du fruit de ma sagesse;
Mais un trouble importun vient depuis quelques jours
De mes prospérités interrompre le cours[2].
Je l'évite partout, partout il me poursuit[3].
C'était pendant l'horreur d'une profonde nuit:
Ma mère Jézabel devant moi s'est montrée,
Comme au jour de sa mort pompeusement parée.
Son ombre vers mon lit a paru[4] se baisser,
Et moi, je lui tendais les mains pour l'embrasser;
Mais je n'ai plus[5] trouvé qu'[6]un horrible mélange
D'os et de chair meurtris[6], et, trainés dans la fange,
Des lambeaux pleins de sang et des membres affreux
Que des chiens dévorants se disputaient[7] entre eux[8].

[1] **Jouir de,** *to enjoy.* [2] Note inverted order in poetry. [3] Irreg. **poursuivre,** *to pursue.* [4] Irreg. **paraître,** *to appear.* [5] Both limit **ne**: *no longer* (*anything*) *but.* [6] See **65,** *a.* [7] Indirect reflex., **136,** *d.* [8] Emphatic repetition.

CONVERSATION.

Qui était Athalie? Athalie était reine d'Israël, fille d'Achab et de Jézabel.—Où trouve-t-on son histoire? Dans le Vieux Testament, 2me Livre des Rois, chapitre XI, et 2me Livre des Chroniques, chapitres XXII, XXIII.—Qui est l'auteur de la tragédie d'Athalie? C'est Jean Racine, né en 1639, mort en 1699.—Quel est le caractère de cette tragédie? C'est une des plus belles du théâtre français.

CHAPTER XXIII.

A. COMPOUND NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES—SPECIAL FORMS.

206. Compounds without hyphen are treated as one word and form the plural regularly; as, **garderobe-s,** *wardrobe(s)*; **grand'mère-s,*** *grandmother(s)*; **vraisemblable-s,** *probable,* etc.

NOTE.—Yet with exceptions; as, **monsieur, madame, mademoiselle, gentilhomme;** *pl.* **messieurs,** etc., **gentilshommes** (*pr.* gentishommes), etc.

In compounds proper, with hyphen, the plural depends on the nature and relation of the component parts. The sense determines the form. Thus:

COMPOUND NOUNS.

a. If the compound consists of a noun with an adjective or a qualifying noun, both members change in plural; as:

beau-frère, *brother-in-law;*	*pl.* **beaux-frères** (adj. and noun)
petit-maître, *coxcomb;*	" **petits-maîtres** " " "
chou-fleur, *cauliflower;*	" **choux-fleurs** (two nouns)
oiseau-mouche, *humming-bird;*	" **oiseaux-mouches** " "

b. The principal noun alone changes; as:

avant-coureur, *forerunner;*	*pl.* **avant-coureurs**
arc-en-ciel, *rainbow;*	" **arcs-en-ciel**
chef-d'œuvre, *masterpiece;*	" **chefs-d'œuvre**
serpent-à-sonnettes, *rattlesnake;*	" **serpents-à-sonnettes**

* In the earlier language, **grand** (Lat. *grandis*) had the same form in masc. and fem. Hence the old **grand mère,** also **mère grand** (without **e**). When, later, the **e** was added in fem., the apostrophe was written, as if an elision had occurred. So **grand'route, grand'peur,** etc.

NOTE.—In some cases the governing preposition is understood; as:

hôtel-Dieu (**hôtel-de-Dieu**), *hospital;*	*pl.* **hôtels-Dieu**
timbre-poste (i.e., **pour la poste**), *postage stamp;*	" **timbres-poste**
etc.	etc.

c. Neither member changes; as:

après-midi, *afternoon;*	*pl.* **après-midi**
casse-tête, *tomahawk;*	" **casse-tête**
gagne-petit, *knife-grinder;*	" **gagne-petit**
passe-partout, *pass-key;*	" **passe-partout**, etc.

in which the principal member is not a noun.

NOTE.—For the plural of proper names and of foreign nouns, see **34.**

207. The prepositions **de** and **à** form many noun-phrases, which, though not written as compounds, are of the same character, and are often translated by compounds in English; as:

jour de fête, *holiday;*	*pl.* **jours de fête**
mal de tête, *headache;*	" **maux de tête**
ver à soie, *silkworm;*	" **vers à soie**
salle à manger, *dining-room;*	" **salles à manger**

The meaning of such phrases will be various. Usually **de** expresses the *material*, or *kind*, or *contents*; **à** the *object*, or *characteristic quality*.

NOTE.—In some idiomatic phrases, **à** takes the article; as, **café au lait**, *coffee with milk;* **marché aux chevaux**, *horse-market*, etc.

COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

208. Compound adjectives usually inflect the last component; as, **des enfants nouveau-nés**, *new-born children;* **des peuples demi-sauvages**, *half-savage peoples*, etc. But adjectives expressing compound *colors* remain unchanged; as, **des yeux jaune-pâle**,

eyes (*of a*) *pale yellow;* **des cheveux brun-clair,** *hair* (*of a*) *light brown.*

NOTE.—Expressions like **nu-pieds, nu-tête,** *barefooted, bare-headed,* etc., are not properly adjectives, and undergo no change. But **pieds nus, tête nue,** etc. Compare **demi** (162).

SPECIAL FORMS IN PLURAL.

209. Some nouns present special peculiarities in plural:

a. Special meanings, different from the singular; as:

ciseau, *chisel;*	*pl.* **ciseaux,** *scissors*
fer, *iron;*	" **fers,** *chains*
gage, *pledge;*	" **gages,** *wages*
grâce, *grace;*	" **grâces,** *thanks*
lunette, *telescope;*	" **lunettes,** *spectacles*
etc.	etc.

b. Different plural forms, with different meanings; as:

aïeul, *pl.* **aïeux,** *ancestors;*	**aïeuls,** *grandfathers*
ciel, " **cieux,** *heavens;*	**ciels,** *skies, climates, canopies*
œil, " **yeux,** *eyes;*	**œils de bœuf,** *bull's eyes* (*windows*)
etc.	etc.

Such peculiarities are properly to be found in the dictionaries.

EXERCISE XXIII, a.

1. Les choux-fleurs et les choux-raves sont de la même famille. 2. Ces deux hommes sont beaux-frères; ils sont tous deux des petits-maîtres. 3. Les moulins à vent sont rares aux États-Unis, non pas les moulins à eau et les moulins à vapeur. 4. Les arcs-en-ciel sont formés par la réflexion des rayons solaires dans les gouttes de pluie. 5. Les Raphaëls et les Titiens (**34**) sont les chefs-d'œuvre de la peinture. 6. Les hôtels-Dieu de Paris sont les plus grands et les plus beaux de l'Europe. 7. Je suis occupé toutes

les après-midi. 8. La lunette fut inventée dans les Pays-Bas; les lunettes étaient connues des Chinois il y a plusieurs siècles. 9. Mes deux aïeuls (grands-pères) vivent encore ; mes grand'mères sont mortes toutes les deux. 10. Les ciels de ces tableaux sont trop bleus. 11. Les timbres-poste étaient employés en Angleterre vers la fin du dix-huitième siècle. 12. Ce fut une jeune fille, court-vêtue, nu-pieds, aux cheveux châtain-brun. 13. Des sauvages, armés de grands casse-tête, furent pris (*prendre*), et jetés dans les fers. 14. Dans ces opéras il y a plusieurs beaux solos. 15. On chantait des Te-Deum après les victoires. 16. Ne faites (*faire*) pas trop usage des post-scriptum.

B. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

REMARK.—The subjunctive has been reserved till now, that it might be treated in connection with the conjunctions and the negatives. *Let the subjunctive forms be now fully reviewed* (**85, 102, 111**).

NOTE.—Observe that in Conj. I the pres. subj. is in part identical with the pres. indic., and also with pres. subj. forms in III ; also that the pres. and the past subj. in II are in part identical : so that the forms of the subj. are not always distinct. Note also the accent (^) as sign of subj. past 3d singular (by contraction from Latin forms).

210. The French subjunctive has no equivalent form in English. Besides our (rare) subjunctive, it is translated by English indicative, imperative, infinitive; or by auxiliary forms, *can, may, shall, will,* etc. This adds to its difficulty for the English student.

211. The subjunctive, as the name implies, is used mainly in dependent (subjoined) clauses, and in relation to a leading or principal statement (verb). Sub-

junctive clauses are regularly introduced by **que** or one of its compounds, or by a relative.

212. The tense of the subjunctive depends, generally, on the tense of the leading verb. In general, present or future tenses require the present subjunctive; past tenses or the conditional, the past subjunctive (simple or compound, as the case may be). But:

NOTE.—1. Remember that the compound present is sometimes a *present perfect*, sometimes a *past indefinite* (like the Latin *perfect*). In the former case it counts as a present tense; in the latter, as a past. (See **201.**)

2. The general rule is also subject to exceptions, determined by the relation of time or of thought in the two verbs. As, *I do not think* (present) *you were right* (past); *I do not think he would have said that* (pluperfect), etc. The actual relations in thought must always be considered.

213. The subjunctive is, in general, the mood of *contingent, ideal* (*unreal*), *indefinite* statement—in contrast with the *positive, actual* (*real*), *definite* statement of the indicative. Yet its idiomatic use in French is much wider than such definition would seem to imply in English.

NOTE.—It is difficult to give any strictly logical analysis of the French subjunctive. The different uses shade into each other, and would admit of various classification. A knowledge of the Latin subjunctive will be helpful, though the French here shows many differences—especially in the loss of the subj. in *indirect* speech, and its more restricted use in *conditions*; with more extended use, however, in some other directions.

I. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONTINGENCY.

214. In subordinate clauses—usually when a new *subject* is introduced—the subjunctive is used to im-

ply *contingency*, or *uncertain fulfilment*, depending on a principal sentence expressing:

a. Wish, desire, request, command, etc.—sometimes called the *optative* subjunctive. As:

je veux—désire—qu'il réponde, *I wish—desire—him to answer*
je priai—j'ordonnai—qu'il répondît, *I wished—desired—him to answer*
je préfère que vous partiez demain, *I prefer that you (should) start to-morrow*

NOTE.—The opposite cases, *prohibition*, etc.—and all cases involving special use of the *negative with subjunctive*—are deferred to next chapter.

b. Permission, concession, supposition. As:

permettez—souffrez—que je vous réponde, *permit me to answer you*
supposez—accordez—que cela soit vrai, *suppose—grant—that that is true*

NOTE.—1. In some of these cases (*a*, *b*) the leading verb is only implied—then sometimes called *imperative*. As:

qu'il finisse sa leçon, *let him finish his lesson*
que Dieu te bénisse, (*may*) *God bless thee*
qu'il soit brave guerrier, *grant that he is* (*let him be*) *a brave warrior*

2. And in certain phrases **que** is also omitted. As:

plaise à Dieu, *please God*
plût à Dieu, *would* (*to*) *God*
vienne qui voudra, *come who will*

In all these cases the subjunctive clause is only apparently independent, but really *elliptical*.

3. For special use of the subjunctives **sache**, **vive**, see the irregular verbs **savoir**, **vivre** (264).

c. Purpose, in clauses introduced:

1. By a conjunction; as, **pour que**, **afin que**, *in order that*. As:

je vous écris, pour que vous soyez instruit, *I write you, that you may be informed*
je lui donnai le livre, afin qu'il pût le consulter, *in order that he might consult it*

2. By a relative pronoun—often thus implying *character, kind.* As:

je cherche un ami qui me rende ce service, *to render—who shall render,* etc.
il chercha un livre qui l'amusât, *to amuse—which should amuse,* etc.

d. Expectation, or *unrealized result:*

j'attends qu'il vienne, *I expect him to come*
ils l'attrapèrent avant qu'il pût s'échapper, *they caught him before he could escape*
il mourut sans que je l'eusse vu, *without my having seen him*

NOTE.—But the verb **espérer,** *to hope,* unless negative or interrogative (217), is followed by the indicative; as, **j'espère qu'il arrivera,** *that he will arrive.* (Likewise, also, when the negative-interrogative form implies an affirmative.)

II. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF EMOTION.

215. Nearly allied to the foregoing is the subjunctive dependent on verbs or phrases expressing various subjective states of mind or feeling; as, *surprise, joy, sorrow, anger,* etc.

je regrette—je suis bien aise—que vous soyez venu, *I regret—am very glad—that,* etc.
il s'étonna—se plaignit—que vous fussiez venu, *he was astonished—complained—that,* etc.

NOTE.—The cases of *fear* and *doubt,* requiring special uses of the negative, are deferred to next chapter.

REMARK.—It will be noticed that many of the cases above (214, 215) are, or may be, rendered in English by the infinitive. Also in French, in such cases, the infinitive may be used; and, usually, *must* be used if the subjects of the leading and dependent verbs are the same. As:

je veux répondre—je désire de répondre, *I wish—desire—to answer*
j'écris pour apprendre, *I write in order to learn,* etc.
j'espère arriver demain, *I hope to arrive to-morrow*
il tomba avant de—sans—gagner la porte, *before—without—reaching the door*
je regrette—je me réjouis—d'entendre, *I regret—rejoice—to hear,* etc.

Also, often optionally, with changed subject; as:

je vous prie—ordonne—permets—de répondre, *you to answer*, or: **je prie**, etc.—**que vous répondiez**
le roi proposa aux alliés de marcher, *proposed to the allies to march*, or: **qu'ils marchassent**, etc.—usually with preference for the infinitive.

In such cases English will also usually admit the alternative forms, though generally preferring the infinitive. (See **193**, Rem.)

III. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDEFINITE LIMITATION.

216. The subjunctive is used in clauses giving an *indefinite limitation* of a general or sweeping term or statement—sometimes called the subjunctive of *mental reserve;* as in the following cases:

a. Limiting an *indefinite* term or phrase; as:

qui que vous soyez, *whoever you are*
quoi que vous demandiez, *whatever you (may) ask*
quelles que soient ses promesses, *whatever may be (are) his promises*
quelque vaillant qu'il fût, *however valiant he was*

b. Limiting a *superlative*, *exclusive*, or *restrictive* term or phrase. As:

c'est le plus bel homme que j'aie jamais vu, *that I have ever seen*
c'est le seul tableau que j'aie, *the only picture (that) I have*
il y a peu d'hommes qui puissent dire, *few men who can say*, etc.

c. Limiting a *negative*, *interrogative*, or *conditional* expression. As:

il n'est personne qui croie cela, *there is no one who believes that*
y a-t-il un homme qui croie cela? *is there a man who believes that?*
s'il est quelqu'un qui croie cela, *if there is anyone who believes that*

217. Closely allied is the use of the subjunctive with verbs of *saying, thinking*, etc., when *negative, interrogative*, or *conditional*, though the same verbs

when affirmative (or negative-interrogative, implying affirmative) require the indicative. As:

je ne crois pas—croyez-vous—qu'il ait raison ? *that he is right?*
si je croyais qu'il eût raison, *if I thought that he was right*
espérez-vous—je n'espère pas—qu'il vienne, *that he will come* (**214,** *d,* note). Or, elliptically:
non (ce n'est pas) que je ne croie pas, *not that I do not,* etc.

NOTE.—For verbs of *denial* or *hindrance,* requiring a negative, see next chapter.

218. Of the like *indefinite* conception is the subjunctive in clauses forming the logical subject of an *impersonal* verb or phrase, when an actual fact or positive opinion is not indicated. As:

il est temps que vous sortiez, *it is time that you go out*
il est juste qu'un meurtrier périsse, *that a murderer (should) perish*
il semble—il est possible—qu'il y ait des gens, *that there are people,* etc.
il faut que vous disiez tout (or **il vous faut tout dire**), *you must tell all,* etc.

But only:

il faut qu'un roi obéisse aux lois (with noun subject. See **262,** *b*).

REMARK.—1. Yet in these cases also (**216–8**), when a definite idea or person is implied, or a fact distinctly indicated, the indicative will be used. As:

c'est le plus jeune écolier qui a gagné le prix,* *who has gained the prize*
il ne croit pas que l'âme est immortel, *that the soul is immortal*
il ne savait pas que son père était mort, *that his father was dead*

Or in the same sentence, with changed sense; as:

il dit à sa femme qu'il était obligé de partir; qu'elle fît venir ses amies, *that he was—that she should,* etc.

And especially with impersonal verbs, implying *fact* or *opinion.* As:

il paraît—il me semble—que vous avez tort, *that you are wrong*
il est certain—probable—qu'il arrivera demain, etc.

---

* This describes the *person.* **Qui ait gagné,** etc., would limit the superlative: *that has* (*ever*), etc. In this case, in English, *that* (without comma) is preferred to *who* or *which.*

2. Note also, with unchanged subject, alternative infinitive forms. As:

croyez-vous—je ne crois pas—avoir raison? *do you think you are right?*
il est temps de sortir, *it is time to go out*
il semble être certain qu'il y a de tels hommes, *it seems to be certain*, etc.

In these cases the alternative forms are freely used, with frequent preference for the infinitive, especially in simple style.

EXERCISE XXIII, b.

1. Je désire que vous acceptiez son offre. 2. Le général ordonna que l'armée marchât à six heures du matin. 3. Que la foudre m'écrase, si je mens[1]. 4. Venez, que je vous dise[2] (*let me*) la vérité. 5. Plût[3] à Dieu que cet homme ne fût jamais venu ici. 6. Parlez-lui pour qu'il vienne[4] de bonne heure (*early*). 7. Je cherche quelqu'un qui me rende ce petit service. 8. Ne lisez[5] que des livres qui vous soient utiles. 9. Attendez que (jusqu'à ce que) j'aie fini mon thème. 10. Votre mère s'afflige que vous lui écriviez[6] si rarement. 11. Il se plaignit[7] que vous l'eussiez trompé; je regrette qu'il le croie. 12. Quelle que soit votre confiance en lui, il vous trompera. 13. Quoi qu'il ait fait[8], il faut[9] que nous lui pardonnions (il nous faut lui pardonner). 14. Néron était le premier empereur qui ait persecuté les chrétiens. 15. C'est la seule lettre que je lui aie jamais écrite[6]. 16. Il est (*there are*) peu d'hommes qui aient mieux mérité la couronne du martyre. 17. Il n'est rien qui rafraîchisse le cœur comme une bonne action. 18. Est-il vrai que vos lettres ne soient pas arrivées? 19. Je ne dis pas que vous ayez tort, mais je ne crois pas non plus que vous ayez raison. 20. Il faut que vous appreniez[10] à obéir si vous voulez

qu'on vous obéisse. 21. Il fallait que ce malheur arrivât; à présent il semble que ce soit sans remède. 22. Il partit sans que je lui eusse parlé (*without my having, etc.*). 23. Travaillez bien dans la jeunesse afin que (pour que) vous soyez libre dans la vieillesse (*or* afin de [pour] être, etc.). 24. Elle dit à l'ambassadeur qu'elle ne voulait point se marier, et qu'il songeât à son retour.

Note following irregular verbs (see List, **265**):

[1] **mentir**, *to lie.* [2] **dire**, *to tell.* [3] **plaire**, *to please.* [4] **venir**, *to come.* [5] **lire**, *to read.* [6] **écrire**, *to write.* [7] **se plaindre**, *to complain.* [8] **faire**, *to do.* [9] **falloir**, impers., *to be necessary.* [10] **apprendre**, *to learn.*

CONVERSATION.

Comptez-vous aller au concert qui doit avoir lieu mardi prochain? Je me propose d'y aller.—Vous êtes-vous procuré vos billets? J'en ai pris six, mais j'en ai encore besoin d'un pour une de mes amies.—Bien; j'en ai un de reste, qui est à votre disposition. Je vous remercie bien; je le prendrai, avec votre permission.—Voici le programme; on nous promet d'excellente musique.—A quelle heure commence le concert? A huit heures précises.—Y aura-t-il beaucoup de monde? Sans doute; il faut aller de bonne heure, si vous voulez être bien placés.—Qui doit tenir le premier rôle? C'est Madame D., la grande cantatrice italienne.—Et quels autres artistes doivent composer ce concert? Premièrement, Monsieur D., le roi de tous les accompagnateurs de notre temps.—J'ai entendu dire que c'est un talent du premier ordre. Assurément; j'ai assisté hier à un de ses concerts.—A-t-il joué seul? Non, non; Mlle. B. et Mlle. P. ont ouvert le concert par un duo de piano et de harpe qui était charmant.—Que dit-on de Mlle. B.? C'est un talent féminin comme on en voit peu.—Elle chante bien aussi; n'est-ce pas? Oui, elle chante comme elle touche du piano; et elle touche du piano comme elle chante; c'est tout dire.—Nous avons eu beaucoup de concerts cet hiver. Ah! oui; je suis tout rebattu de musique.

From "L'Écho de Paris."

CHAPTER XXIV.

A. GENDER OF NOUNS.

219. Rules for the gender of nouns have been intentionally omitted. They require so much detail of statement, and are liable to so many exceptions, as to be practically useless for the beginner. The gender is always indicated in the dictionaries, and is most conveniently expressed and remembered by associating the article with the noun (**31**, note). Only the following general notes will now be given:

a. Feminine are, generally: the names of *females;* the names of most *fruits* and *flowers;* the names of most *countries;* most *abstract nouns;* as, **la beauté**, *beauty;* **la foi**, *faith*, etc.; and (though with many exceptions) most nouns ending in **-e**, **-té**, **-ion**, or **-eur**. Other nouns *generally* masculine (with many exceptions).

NOTE.—Where the Latin gender is known, it is the safest guide. The gender will usually be the same in French, masculine answering to both masculine and neuter in Latin. The chief exceptions are some abstracts in **-eur**, *fem.*, from **-or**, *masc.*, in Latin; as, **la couleur**, from Lat. *color*, etc.; and some feminines from Latin neuter plural in **-a**; as, **une arme** (arma). **une enseigne** (insignia), etc.

b. Some nouns may be of either gender in the same form (*common gender*); as, **un pupille, une pupille**; **un enfant, une enfant**, etc.

c. Others have masculine and feminine forms according to the rules for the feminine of adjectives (Ch. VIII); as, **un époux, une épouse**; **un baron, une baronne**; **un jumeau, une jumelle**; **un danseur, une danseuse**, etc.

d. Others have special feminine forms; as, **un acteur, une actrice**; **un comte, une comtesse**; **un vengeur, une**

vengeresse; **un empereur, une impératrice**; **un chanteur, une cantatrice**; **un loup, une louve**, etc. These are, properly, separate words, not grammatical feminines. As such, both forms are usually given in the dictionaries.

e. Some nouns are of different signification in the two genders; as:

un mousse, *a sailor-boy*	**la mousse**, *moss*
un page, *a page* (*servant*)	**une page**, *a page* (*of a book*)
le vase, *the vase* (*vessel*)	**la vase**, *mud*
le voile, *the veil*	**la voile**, *the sail*
etc.	etc.

Other nouns have different genders in different idiomatic uses—such are **aigle, amour, gens, hymne, orgue**, etc. For such details reference is made to the dictionaries, or to the larger grammars.

f. Compound nouns will be masculine, unless the *principal* component is feminine; as, **un chou-fleur, un oiseau-mouche, un portefeuille**, the principal elements being **chou, oiseau, porte** (as *verb*); but, **la chauve-souris, la fête-Dieu**, etc. But there are exceptions; as, **une après-midi**, etc.

B. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—(*Continued.*)

IV. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONDITIONS.

220. In conditional clauses proper (**si**, *if*), the indicative is usual (**195**, *b*). The subjunctive is used only:

a. When **que** replaces **si** (**196**, *b*); as, **si vous avez besoin d'argent, et que vous m'en demandiez**, *and* (*if*) *you ask me for some.*

b. With emphasis, the past subjunctive for the imperfect indicative—simple or compound (**198**, *a*); as, **s'il eût été ici**; or with inversion, omitting **si** (**195**, *b*): **fût-il—eût-il été—ici**, *were he—had he been—here.*

NOTE.—Here occur such forms as **eussé-je**, *had I;* **dussé-je**, *should I*, etc. (See **74**, note.)

c. Also with emphasis, in the *principal clause*, for the compound conditional; as, **qui l'eût cru**, *who would have believed it;* **il ne l'eût jamais fait, si je l'eusse pu faire**, *he would never have done it, if I could have done it* (**200**).

NOTE.—This (for the conditional) is the only case in which the subjunctive is used in a (truly) principal clause.

Some special uses of the negative **ne** with the subjunctive have been reserved for comprehensive statement.

V. THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH **NE** (*not*), WITHOUT **PAS** (184).

221. Ne, *not*, without **pas**, is used with the subjunctive:

a. Limiting a term or statement which expresses or implies a *negative* or *exclusive* idea (**216**, *b*, *c*). As:

il n'y a personne qui ne croie cela, *there is nobody who does not believe that*
y a-t-il quelqu'un qui ne croie cela? *is there any one*, etc.
il est peu d'hommes qui ne soient flatteurs, *few men who are not flatterers*
je ne fais jamais cela que je ne le regrette, *I never do that, that I do not regret it*

b. In clauses expressing a *negative purpose;* as, **prenez garde que vous n'arriviez trop tard**, *take care that you do not arrive too late.*

VI. THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH **NE** (IDIOMATIC) NOT TRANSLATED (185).

222. In some cases **ne** is used with the subjunctive, when no negative appears in English:

a. Verbs of *doubt* or of *denial*, if negative or simply interrogative in form, require **ne** with the subjunctive; as:

je ne doute pas—doutez-vous—qu'il ne vienne, *that he will come*
je ne nie pas—niez-vous—que cela ne soit vrai, *that that is true*

NOTE.—Yet when affirmative, or negative-interrogative implying affirmative, such verbs are followed by the subjunctive without **ne** (as **215**, **217**). As:

je doute—ne doutez-vous pas } **que cela soit vrai**, *that that is true*
je nie—ne niez-vous pas }

b. On the other hand, verbs of *fearing* or of *hindrance*, if affirmative, or negative-interrogative implying affirmative, take **ne** with the subjunctive. As:

je crains—ne craignez-vous pas—qu'il ne vienne, *that he will come*
j'empêcherai—n'empêcherez-vous pas—qu'il ne vienne, *him from coming.*

NOTE.—But if the verb of *fear* or *hindrance* is negative, or simply interrogative, **ne** is omitted; as:

je ne crains pas—craignez vous—qu'il vienne, *that he will come*
je n'empêcherai pas qu'il vienne, *I will not prevent him from coming*

These forms correspond to { *I fear——let him not come.* / *I do not fear——let him come.* }

c. Certain conjunctions also, implying *doubt* or *fear*, are followed by **ne** (not translated) with the subjunctive. As:

à moins qu'il ne vienne, *unless he comes*
de crainte qu'il ne vienne, *for fear that he will come*
je ne sortirai pas qu'il ne vienne, *I shall not go unless* (or *until*) *he comes*, etc.

But in all these cases, if the subjunctive verb itself is negative, **ne . . . pas** will be used. As:

je nie—je ne nie pas—qu'il ne soit pas venu, *that he has not come*
je crains—je ne crains pas—qu'il ne vienne pas, *that he will not come*
à moins qu'il ne vienne pas, *unless he does not come*, etc.

VII. CONJUNCTIONS REQUIRING SUBJUNCTIVE.

223. As has been seen, the use of the subjunctive depends on the idea of *contingency*, etc., in the verb

itself. But as this is often indicated by the conjunction, some conjunctions are said to *require* (or *govern*) the subjunctive. Such are:

avant que, *before*
bien que, **quoique**, *although*
afin que, **pour que**, *in order that*
à moins que . . . (ne), (or simply) **que . . . (ne)**, *unless*
jusqu'à ce que, *until*
loin que, *far from*
de peur que (ne), *for fear that*
pourvu que, *provided that*
sans que, *without, unless*
soit que . . . (ou), (or simply) **que . . . (ou)**, *whether . . . or*

And others of like signification; as:

avant qu'il vienne, *before he comes*
jusqu'à ce qu'il vienne, *until he comes*
soit qu'il vienne, *whether he comes*
pourvu qu'il vienne, *provided (that) he comes*
j'écris pour que vous appreniez, *in order that you may learn*, etc.

REMARK.—Observe that the foregoing analysis of the subjunctive includes really only four heads, with varieties under each:

I. The Subjunctive of *Contingency*
II. The Subjunctive of *Emotion*
III. The Subjunctive of *Indefinite Limitation*
IV. The Subjunctive in *Conditions*

} the Sections V, VI, VII falling really, in principle, under one or another of these.

It may be useful for the beginner to note also the kinds of clauses—*Noun*, *Adjective*, *Adverbial*, *Elliptical*, *Principal*—in which the subjunctive is found.

EXERCISE XXIV.

1. Si mon fils m'obéit et qu'il réponde promptement à ma lettre, nous aurons bientôt de ses nouvelles (*news of him*). 2. S'il venait à moi, et qu'il me demandât de l'argent, je ne pourrais' le lui refuser. 3. Le prince eût été très content de sa condition, s'il

eût pu[1] sauver cette jeune fille. 4. Sans les mauvais conseils de ceux qui l'entouraient, ce jeune prince eût été un fort bon roi. 5. Il est peu d'écrivains pour qui on n'ait eu à rougir. 6. Il n'y avait aucun de ses sujets qui n'eût hasardé sa vie pour un tel souverain. 7. Je ne le voyais[2] jamais qu'il ne courût[3] à moi en battant les mains. 8. Ayez soin qu'on ne vous trahisse, si vous parlez trop franchement. 9. Je ne nie pas qu'il ne soit votre ami, mais je doute que son conseil soit bon. 10. Je crains[4] qu'on ne vous voie[2] ici; je tremble qu'il ne vous arrive quelque malheur. 11. Ne craignez[4]-vous pas que le maître ne parte avant que vous arriviez? 12. Je ne crains pas qu'il soit déjà parti, mais je doute qu'il nous attende. 13. La pluie empêcha qu'on n'allât se promener. 14. Vous ne sortirez pas que vous n'ayez fini votre leçon. 15. Elle ne voulait point accepter un époux qu'il ne lui apportât sa bague perdue. 16. Qu'il vienne ou non, cela ne changera rien, pourvu que vous arriviez à temps (*in time*). 17. Loin que le roi lui fît[5] des reproches, il le loua devant tout le monde (le roi, loin de lui faire, etc.). 18. Quoiqu'il ait tort, et qu'il soit sorti sans que le maître le lui permît[6], il ne faut pas que nous l'en[7] punissions (il ne nous faut pas l'en punir).

[1] **pouvoir**, *to be able.* [2] **voir**, *to see.* [3] **courir**, *to run.* [4] **craindre**, *to fear.* [5] **faire**, *to make.* [6] **permettre**, *to permit.* [7] *for it.*

REMARK.—It is not easy to give in a brief selection any extensive view of the use of the subjunctive. The student should give careful attention to examples as they occur in reading. The following quotations will illustrate some of the common uses:

18. Le Subjonctif.

1. Quoi qu'on fasse[1] d'illustre et de considérable,
   Jamais à son sujet un roi n'est redevable.
2. Tout l'État périra s'il faut que je périsse.
3. Souffrez que la raison remette[2] vos esprits.
4. Qu"il soit brave guerrier, qu'il soit grand capitaine,
   Je saurai[4] bien rabattre une humeur si hautaine.
5. Il satisfera[5], sire; et vienne qui voudra[6],
   Attendant qu"il l'ait su[4], voici qui répondra.
6. Quelque juste pourtant que puisse[8] être sa peine,
   Je ne puis[8] sans regret perdre un tel capitaine.
7. Ce n'est pas qu'en effet, contre mon père et toi,
   Ma flamme assez longtemps n'ait combattu pour toi.
8. Mon âme aurait trouvé dans le bien de te voir
   L'unique allègement qu'elle eût pu[8] recevoir,
   Et contre ma douleur j'aurais senti des charmes,
   Quand une main si chère eût essuyé mes larmes.
9. Chimène, qui l'eût dit
   Que notre heur[9] fût si proche et sitôt se perdît?
10. Quoique[10] pour ce vainqueur mon amour s'intéresse,
    Quoiqu'un peuple l'adore, et qu'un roi le caresse,
    Qu'il soit environné des plus vaillants guerriers,
    J'irai[11] sous mes cyprès accabler ses lauriers.
11. Quand il sera vainqueur, crois-tu que je me rende?
12. Que peut[8]-on m'ordonner que mon bras n'accomplisse?
    —*From "Le Cid."*
13. Avant qu'on l'environne, avant qu'on nous l'arrache,
    Une seconde fois souffrez[12] que je le cache.

14. Qu'aucun, soit prêtre, soit lévite,
Ne sorte[13] avant le temps, et ne se précipite.
15. Et s'il faut aujourd'hui que notre roi périsse,
Allons[14], qu'un même[15] sort avec lui nous unisse.
16. Plût[16] à ce Dieu puissant
Qu'Athalie oubliât un enfant innocent.

—*From "Athalie."*

[1] **faire**, *to do.* [2] **remettre**, *to restore.* [3] Here = **quoique**, *although.* [4] **savoir**, *to know (how).* [5] **satisfaire**, *to give satisfaction.* [6] **vouloir**, *come who will.* [7] Comp. conj. *until.* [8] **pouvoir**, *can, may.* [9] Poetic for **bonheur.** [10] Dist. from **quoi que**, *whatever.* [11] **aller**, *to go.* [12] **souffrir**, *to suffer.* In this sentence the subj. forms are identical with the indicative. [13] **sortir**, *to go out.* [14] See **205**, note *b.* [15] *one (and the) same.* [16] **plaire**, *to please;* see **187**, *c.*

☞ In the following chapters on Irregular Verbs, no special reading exercises are added, but further supplementary reading is added later. The irregular verbs, however, receive special attention in the review exercises (English-French).

Further exercises in conversation, similar to those suggested above, may be readily made by the teacher, either in connection with the topic of study or on more general subjects. The pupil should no longer need the help of the book in such exercises.

CHAPTER XXV.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

REMARK.—The irregular verbs, which constitute the chief difficulty of French accidence, have been reserved for comprehensive treatment together. They will be here arranged under the familiar rule of the infinitive ending—with only such further grouping or explanation as may aid the memory. An Alphabetical List is added for reference (264).

NOTE.—The number of irregular verbs may be reduced by increasing the number of the so-called regular conjugations, but without advantage to the learner. Some grammars count four—others five or more—regular conjugations. (See Ch. XXX.)

INTRODUCTORY.

Let the regular conjugations (111) *be now carefully reviewed—also the rules for the formation of the tenses* (114).

224. Irregular verbs are all verbs which depart from the regular conjugations (111).

The irregularities consist sometimes in the employment of different roots—or stems—in the formation of the parts; sometimes in the inflection—or declension—of the parts themselves; or in both of these. Sometimes the irregularities are fully indicated in the *principal parts*—the others following them as usual; sometimes the derived parts also show special irregularity.

NOTE.—The irregularities are due sometimes to origin from irregular Latin forms; sometimes also to special conditions; as contraction, the tonic accent, or other phonetic changes. Such causes are sometimes indicated; but how far such explanation may be profitable, each teacher must judge for his own pupils.

225. The only parts which ever exhibit irregularity in *inflection*, or declension within themselves, are the *present indicative* (and *imperative*) and the *present subjunctive*. All other tenses are regularly inflected.

226. In these the first and second persons plural follow regularly the form of the present participle (**114**). But:

a. The present indicative singular sometimes shows a contracted or modified stem. (See **234**, *b.*)

b. Sometimes also the 3d plural will show a modified stem—unlike that of the present participle. (See **235**, *a.*)

c. In this latter case the singular and third plural of the present subjunctive will have the stem of the irregular 3d plural present, while the 1st and 2d plural will still follow the present participle.

227. Hence the following practical rules:

a. The inflection of the present indicative, when irregular, must be learned. This includes, with rare exceptions, the imperative.

b. If the 3d plural present is irregular—that is, of different stem from 1st and 2d persons—the inflection of the present subjunctive should also be learned. Otherwise its inflection will be regular.

228. The future (hence also the conditional) sometimes show irregular departure from the infinitive (**114**). In only rare cases the imperative differs from the present, and the imperfect from the stem of the pres. part.

Such differences will always be noted. When not

given, these tenses are formed regularly from their principal parts.

229. Compound verbs, unless the contrary is specially stated, are conjugated like their primitives.

REMARK.—1. In the following scheme the *principal parts* are given, and only such other tenses as depart from the regular rules of formation from these (**114**). *All parts not given are regularly so formed.* This plan is followed not only to avoid useless repetition, but in order that the student may early be trained to form the missing parts for himself. *Parts which are irregular, with reference to the infinitive or otherwise, are indicated by the type.*

2. The irregular verbs include (as in every language) some of the most common and idiomatic verbs. Such idiomatic uses will sometimes be briefly noticed, under the respective verbs.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF CONJUGATION I.

230. Aller, *to go* (auxil. **être**), presents three different stems, and is specially irregular in the present (and imperative), the future (and conditional), and the present subjunctive—not following the rule, **226,** *c.* Thus:

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Present*	*Preterit*
aller	allant	allé	**vais**	allai
Fut.	*Pr. Subj.*		**vas**	
irai	**aille -es -e**		**va**	*Imperative*
	allions -iez		allons -ez	**va** (**vas-y,** 94)
	aillent		**vont**	allons -ez

So the reflexive **s'en aller,** *to go away;* **je m'en vais,** etc.; *imperative,* **va-t-en, allez-vous-en,** etc.

NOTE.—**Aller** is one of the most irregular verbs. With **vont** compare **ont, sont, font** (*faire*).

IDIOMS.—**Aller** has important idiomatic uses:

a. The present and imperfect form, with an infinitive, an *immediate future;* as, **je vais chanter**, *I am going to sing;* **il allait partir**, *he was about to start*, etc.

b. A following infinitive is often connected by ***and;*** as, **allez le voir**, *go and see him.*

c. The imperative is often used as interjection,—**va**, *go, nay;* **allons**, *come, well!* etc.

231. Envoyer, *to send*, is irregular only in the future (and conditional). Thus:

Fut. **enverrai**, etc.

The Present envoi -e -es -e, envoyons, envoyez, envoient, and Pres. Subj. envoi -e -es -e, envoyions, envoyiez, envoient

are strictly regular **(125)**.

So the compound **renvoyer**, *to send back.*

REMARK.—As in this case, it might suffice generally, for advanced students, to give only the irregular parts; but experience shows that a uniform synopsis assists the memory. Either method, however, of learning the verbs may be used, with the forms as herein given.

For further convenience of reference, or of study if preferred, a Table, showing only the irregular parts, is added in an Appendix, p. 233.

CHAPTER XXVI.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF CONJUGATION II.

232. The irregular verbs of Conj. II may be divided into two classes, forming three groups:

I. Those which show in part endings of Conj. I.
II. Those which show in part endings of Conj. III.
  A. With stem unchanged—or in part *shortened* only.
  B. With change of the radical (stem) vowel.

In all these groups the syllable **iss** (**fin-iss-ant**, etc.) is omitted in the pres. part. and its derived forms.

CONJ. II, CLASS I.

233. The following verbs show the endings of Conj. I in the *present participle*, the *present indicative*, and their derived forms.

a. The compounds **assaillir**, *to assail;* **tressaillir**, *to tremble;* thus:

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Present.*	*Preterit.*
assaillir	assaillant	assailli	assaille etc.	assaillis

b. The verbs **cueillir**, *to gather*, **saillir**, *to put out*, follow Conj. I in the future also; thus:

cueillir	cueillant	cueilli	cueille	cueillis
cueillerai				

Similarly the compounds **accueillir**, **recueillir**.

NOTE.—**Saillir**, *to gush, to leap*, is regular, like **finir**.

c. The verbs

ouvrir, *to open*	**offrir**, *to offer*
couvrir, *to cover*	**souffrir**, *to suffer*

have in past part. the special form **-ert** (as, **ouvrir** = Lat. *aperire*, *apertum*):

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
ouvrir	ouvrant	ouvert	ouvre	ouvris

Similarly the compounds **découvrir**, **rouvrir**, etc.

REMARK.—Hereafter, except for special reasons, compounds will not be mentioned; and, as the parts will always be given in the same order, their titles will not usually be repeated. Also, let it be understood that when any part is mentioned, its *derived parts* are also included.

CONJ. II, CLASS II (A).

234. The following verbs show in part the endings of Conj. III, and sometimes shortening of the stem before consonant endings:

a. **Fuir**, *to flee*, is irregular (as *if* = **fuire**) only in the present participle, etc. Thus:

fuir	fuyant	fui	fuis	fuis

NOTE.—In the forms derived from pres. part. **y** becomes **i** before **e** (**231**). Hence:

Pres. Indic. Pl. fuyons, fuyez, fuient.

Pres. Subj. fuie -es -e, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient.

REMARK.—Verbs in **-ir** should properly represent Latin verbs in **-ire**; as below, **dormire**, etc. But with exceptions, as **fuir** (*fugere*); **cueillir** (*colligere*); **offrir** (*offer(e)re*), and other examples hereafter.

b. The following follow Conj. III in pres. part. and pres. indic., and drop the final consonant of the stem before the consonant endings **-s**, **-s**, **-t**, in pres. indic., etc.

dormir, *to sleep*	**sentir**, *to feel*
mentir, *to lie*	**servir**, *to serve*
partir, *to depart*	**sortir**, *to go out*

se repentir, *to repent*

Thus:

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Present.*	*Pret.*
dormir	dormant	dormi	dors	dormis
			-s -t	
			dorm -ons -ez -ent	

Similarly:

partir, partant, parti, pars, partis—par -s -s -t —tons, etc.
servir, servant, servi, sers, servis—ser -s -s -t —vons, etc.

NOTE.—But the compounds, **répartir**, *to distribute*; **ressortir**, *to resort*; **assortir**, *to assort*; **asservir**, *to subject*, are regular.

c. **Bouillir**, *to boil*, also follows Conj. III in pres. part. and pres. indic., and drops **ill** before -s -s -t; thus:

bouillir	bouillant	bouilli	bous	bouillis
			-s -t	
			bouillons -ez -ent	

d. **Faillir**, *to fail*, pres. part. **faillant**, is defective in other irregular parts. (See **falloir**.)

IDIOM.—**Il faillit être tué**, *he just missed being killed*, etc. (See **falloir, 262.**)

e. **Vêtir**, *to clothe*, besides in pres. part. and pres. indic., follows Conj. III also in past part.—without change of stem (Lat. *vestire*). Thus:

vêtir	vêtant	vêtu	vêts	vêtis
			-s —(37)	
			-ons -ez -ent	

f. **Courir**, *to run*, follows Conj. III in *all* its parts (as if = **courre**) except the infinitive, and has -**us** in preterit. Thus:

courir	courant	couru	cours	courus
courrai			-s -t	-us -ut
			-ons, etc.	-ûmes, etc.

NOTE.—**Courir** is really a verb of 3d conjugation (Lat. *currere*, old Fr. *courre*) with irregular infin. See **fuir (234,** Rem.).

In some of the foregoing verbs, and hereafter, it might be useful to require the student to write out the omitted parts—at least until the rules of formation become familiar.

CONJ. II, CLASS II (B).

235. The following verbs, besides endings of Conj. III, modify (strengthen) the root-vowel, whenever it receives the vocal stress (**5**):

mourir, *to die*	**tenir**, *to hold*
acquérir, *to acquire*	**venir**, *to come*

a. **Mourir**, *to die*, changes radical **ou** to **eu** when stressed, and (like **courir**) follows Conj. III, except in irregular preterit (**-us**) and past part. (Lat. *mort-uus*). Thus:

Infin.	*Pres. Part*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
mourir	mourant	mort	meurs	mourus
mourrai	meure -es -e		-s -t	(See courir)
	mourions -iez		mourons -ez	
	meurent		meurent	

IDIOM.—**Mourir** has **être** as auxiliary. With reference to the *recent past*, the compound present is usual, as, **mon ami F. est mort hier**, *died yesterday*, etc.; but in historical statements, the preterit; as, **Napoléon mourut en 1821**.

b. **Acquérir**, *to acquire*, changes radical **e** to **ie** when stressed; otherwise follows Conj. III, except in irregular preterit and past part. (Lat. *acquisivi*, *acquisitum*, from *acquirere*). Thus:

acquérir	acquérant	acquis	acquiers	acquis
acquerrai	acquière -es -e		-s -t	
	acquérions -iez		acquérons -ez	
	acquièrent		acquièrent	

Similarly **conquérir**, etc., comp. of **quérir** (defective).

NOTE.—For the variation **é**, **e**, **è**, see **8**, Remarks.

c. **Tenir**, *to hold*, **venir**, *to come*, besides endings of Conj. III, change radical **e** to **ie** not only when stressed, but also (with inserted **d**) in future, etc. The preterit is specially irregular—with only consonant endings. Thus:

tenir	tenant	tenu	tiens	tins
tiendrai	tienne -es -e		-s -t	-s -t
	tenions -iez		tenons -ez	tînmes -tes
	tiennent		tiennent	tinrent

NOTE.—For doubling of **n** before **e**, see **8**, Rem. 1; and for **d** in future, **247**, Rem. 1. (Lat. *tenere*, *venire*.)

IDIOMS.—**Tenir** and **venir** have many idiomatic uses; as:

1. **Tenir de**, *to belong to, partake of — :*
   Cela tient du prodige, *that is something wonderful.*
2. **Tenir à**, *to depend upon :*
   Cela tient à vous, *that depends on you.*
3. IMPERATIVE. **Tiens !** *hold ! stop ! see here !* etc.

Venir, with infinitive:

1. Without preposition, **venez me voir**, *come and* (or *to*) *see me.*
2. With **de**, *to come from, to have just :* **je viens de dîner**, *I have just dined* (so, only in present and imperfect).
3. With **à**, *to happen :* **s'il venait à mourir**, *if he should happen to die.*
4. With **pour**, *in order to :* **je viens pour dire**, etc.

d. **Gésir**, *to lie* (*dead*), changes radical **e** to **i**. It is used only thus:

Infinitive.	*Pres. Part.*	*Pres.*
gésir	**gisant**	**gît, gisons, gisez, gisent**

As, **ci-gît**, *here lies ;* **ci-gisent**, *here lie*—in epitaphs.

SPECIAL FORMS IN CONJ. II.

236. The following are special irregular forms:

a. **Haïr**, *to hate*, contracts to **ai** in singular of present (and imperative): **hais, hais, hait**; but **haïssons**, etc.

b. **Fleurir**, *to bloom*, has **florissant, florissais**, etc., in sense of *to flourish* (as if from **florir**).

c. **Issir**, *to issue*, has only the past part. **issu.**

d. **Ouïr**, *to hear* (Lat. *audire*), has now only past part. **ouï**, pret. **ouïs**. The older imperat. **oyez**, *hear !* is our *O yes !* in proclamations.

REMARK.—All the irregular verbs of Conj. II are marked by the absence of the syllable **-iss-** in the present participle and its derived tenses. This syllable is derived from the Latin *-esc-*, in *inchoative* or *inceptive verbs*, as *floreo, florescere*, etc. It is therefore not an original or radical element in the verbs of this conjugation; but as the verbs with **-iss-** are the more numerous, they are counted in French as the regular form.

CHAPTER XXVII.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF CONJUGATION III.

237. The third conjugation includes the largest number of irregular verbs, with the greatest variety of irregularities, such as: different modifications of the stem; different forms in past part. and preterit; and other variations.

REMARK.—1. As this conjugation represents mainly the Latin Conj. III—the *Consonant Conjugation* (without connecting vowel)—there is more frequent occasion for euphonic modification, contraction, etc., in the stem—especially before consonant endings; as in the infin., the pres. sing., etc. (See **224**, note.)

2. Hence in the infin., etc., before consonant endings, the final consonant of the true stem is often lost or disguised; but it appears in the pres. part., etc., and before other vowel endings.

3. It thus appears that the stem of the pres. part., etc., is often more nearly regular (and nearer to the Latin original) than that of the infin. Yet it is customary to regard the infin. as the *starting point* of the verb; so that all forms departing from it are called irregular.

238. The irregular verbs of Conj. III may be divided into:

Verbs in which the infin. **-re** is preceded by:

I. A. A vowel; B. A diphthong,

II. A consonant.

In most cases, contraction of the stem has occurred in the infinitive, etc. (Rem. 1); and sometimes the effect of *stress* is seen in the stem vowel (5).

239. The majority of verbs in group I (A, B) have **s** in the pres. part; two, **écrire, boire,** have **v**; a few have no change: **rire, conclure, traire, croire.** The past part. is: **-u** (then pret. **-us**); or **-i,** or **-t,** or **-s** (pret. **-is** or **-isis**).

I. A. THE INFIN. -RE PRECEDED BY A VOWEL: -IRE, -ORE, -URE.

240. Of the verbs in **-ire**:

confire	**dire**	**écrire**
suffire	**lire**	**frire**
circoncire	**rire**	

the following have **s** in pres. part., etc.:

NOTE.—**Confire,** *to preserve* (*pickle*), **suffire,** *to suffice,* **circoncire,** *to circumcise,* differ only in past participle, as follows:

a. **Confire** has past part. in **-t** (Lat. *confectum*); thus:

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
confire	confisant	confit	confis -s -t -sons, etc.	confis (243, Rem.)

b. **Suffire** has past part. **suffi.**

c. **Circoncire** has past part. **circoncis** (Lat. *circumcisum*).

d. **Dire,** *to say, tell,* has past part. **-t** (Lat. *dictum*), and is specially irregular in 2d plur. present. Thus:

dire	disant	dit	dis -s -t disons, dites, disent	dis (243, Rem.)

NOTE.—The present (and imperative) **dites** differs from the preterit **dîtes** only in accent. Compare **êtes, faites (faire).**

IDIOMS.—**Dire** occurs in many idiomatic phrases; as, **c'est à dire**, *that is to say*; **pour ainsi dire**, *so to speak*, etc. Often the imperfect occurs where the preterit would be expected—to avoid ambiguity with the present.

e. Most compounds of **dire** depart from the rule (**229**):

1. Only **redire**, *to say again*, follows exactly **dire**.

2. Other compounds (except **maudire**), as **contredire**, **prédire**, etc., have the usual ending in 2d plural present; as, **contredisez**, **prédisez**, etc.

3. **Maudire**, *to curse* (Lat. *maledicere*) has **ss** in pres. part., etc.; as, **maudissant**, **maudissons**, **maudisse**, etc.

f. **Lire**, *to read*, has past part. **-u**, pret. **-us**. Thus:

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
lire	**lisant**	**lu**	**lis**	**lus**
			-s -t	
			-sons, etc.	

So **élire**, *to elect* (Lat. *legere*, *eligere*), etc.

241. The following do not have **s** in pres. part., etc.:

a. **Rire**, *to laugh*, keeps its stem **-i** unchanged. Thus:

rire	**riant**	**ri**	**ris**	**ris**
	Subj. pl.		**-s -t**	(**243**, Rem.)
	riions, etc.		**-ons**, etc.	

IDIOMS.—**Rire de**, *to laugh at*; **rire à**, *to smile on*.

b. **Écrire**, *to write*, has **v** before all vowel endings; past part. **-t** (Lat. *scriptum*).

écrire	**écrivant**	**écrit**	**écris**	**écrivis**
			-s -t	
			-vons -vez -vent	

Similarly compounds in **-crire**, **-scrire** (Lat. *scribere*); as, **décrire**, **inscrire**, etc. The stem is properly **écriv-**, **v** being dropped before consonants (**237**, Rem. 2).

c. **Frire**, *to fry*, has only past part **frit**, pres. sing. **fris -s -t**, and fut. (and cond.) **frirai -s**. Elsewhere defective.

VERBS IN -ORE : CLORE, AND COMPOUNDS.

242. **Clore**, *to close*, has past part. **clos** (Lat. *clausum*), and 3d sing. pres. **il clôt**. Used only like **frire**. Thus:

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
clore	——	clos	clos	——
			clos	
			clôt	

The comp. **éclore**, *to open*, has pres. part. **éclosant**, and circumflex also in fut. and cond.: **éclôrai -s**. Otherwise like **clore**.

VERBS IN -URE : CONCLURE, EXCLURE, ETC.

243. Verbs in **-ure**, **conclure**, *to conclude*, etc., keep the stem **-u** unchanged. Thus:

conclure	concluant	conclu	conclus	conclus
				-s -t (see **courus**, 234)
				-ons, etc.

a. **Inclure**, *to include*, has past part. **inclus** (Lat. *inclusum*) in adjective sense; as, **la lettre ci-incluse**—unde clined, when preceding the noun (172, note).

NOTE.—With **conclure** (Lat. *concludere*) compare **rire** (*ridere*).

REMARK.—Observe that in marking the irregular parts, the regular **rompre** is taken as the model. Thus the stem **conclu** would give, if like **rompre**, p. part. **conclu -u**, pret. **conclu -is**, while the present **conclu -s** is regular (like **romps**), etc. So with other verbs preceding and hereafter.

Omitted parts should be required, until their formation becomes familiar.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF CONJ. III—(*Continued.*)

I. B. VERBS IN -RE PRECEDED BY A DIPHTHONG (-UIRE, -AIRE, -OIRE).

244. Verbs in **-uire** (except the defective **bruire**), viz.:

conduire, etc.	**luire**
construire, etc.	**nuire**
cuire	

all have **s** in pres. part., etc. The past part. is **-t**, or **-i**; preterit **-isis.**

a. **Conduire**, *to conduct;* **construire**, *to construct;* **cuire**, *to cook*, have past part. **-t** (Lat. *conductum*, *constructum*, *coctum*). Thus:

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
conduire	conduisant	conduit	conduis -s -t -sons, etc.	conduisis

Similarly, **déduire**, **produire**, and other compounds (Lat. *ducere*); **détruire**, **instruire**, etc. (Lat. *-struere*); **recuire** (Lat. *coquere*), etc.

b. **Luire**, *to shine*, **nuire**, *to hurt*, have past part. **-i.** Thus (Lat. *nocere*):

nuire	nuisant	nui	nuis -s -t -sons, etc.	nuisis

NOTE.—**Luire** (Lat. *lucere*) is not used in the preterit.

c. **Bruire**, *to roar*, has only **bruyant, il bruit**—elsewhere defective.

REMARK.—It may be usefully noted that the past part. ending **-t** corresponds usually to *strong* (consonant) forms in Latin, as **dit** (*dictum*), **cuit** (*coctum*), etc.; those in **-s** to *s* in Latin, as **clos** (*clausum*), etc.; while the *weak* (vowel) forms in Latin give vowel forms in French; as, **nui** (*nocitum*), **tu** (*tacitum*), etc. Exceptions occur; as, **lu, ri, conclu** (where analogy would give **-t, -s**), etc.; but these, if noted, will be more easily remembered by contrast. See examples hereafter.

245. Verbs in **-aire** (except **traire, braire**), viz.:

plaire . . **faire**
taire

have all **s** in pres. part., etc., with past part. **-u** (pret. **-us**), or **-t** (pret. **-is**).

a. **Plaire**, *to please*, (**se**) **taire**, *to hush*, have **-u** (Lat. *placitum, tacitum*) **-us**:

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
taire	taisant	tu	tais	tus
			-s -t	
			-sons, etc.	

NOTE.—**Plaire** has **il plaît**, with circumflex. Idiomatic forms are: **s'il vous plaît**, *if you please;* **plaise à Dieu, plût** (**-il**) **à Dieu** (**214**).

b. **Faire**, *to do, make*, has p. part. **-t** (Lat. *factum*), pret. **-is**, and special irregularities. Thus:

faire	faisant	fait	fais	fis
ferai	fasse -es -e		-s -t	
	fassions -iez -ent		faisons, faites, font	

NOTE.—**Faire** is specially irregular:

1. In 2d and 3d plur. pres. Compare **êtes, dites**; **ont, sont, vont.**

2. In shortened stem of future. Elsewhere also, when not stressed, **ai** sounds as **e** (as if **fesant, fesons**, etc.).

3. In the (shortened) stem of the pres. subjunctive (**8**, Rem. 6).

IDIOMS.—**Faire** is used in many idiomatic senses. Before an infinitive, without preposition, it has the sense of *to cause to do, to have done;* or gives transitive sense to intransitive verb; as,

faire relier un livre, *to have a book bound*; **faire voir**, *to make see, to show*; **faire bouillir**, *to boil* (transitive), etc. For position and form of objects, see **190**.

c. **Traire**, *to milk* (Lat. *trahere, tractum*), has past part. **-t**; no preterit; otherwise regular. Thus:

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
traire	trayant	trait	trais	——
	traie -es -e		-s -t	
	trayions -iez		trayons -ez	
	traient		traient	

d. **Braire**, *to bray*, has only the forms:

Present. **il brait, ils braient**
Fut. & Cond. **il braira, ils brairont, il brairait**

246. Verbs in **-oire** have past part. **-u**, pret. **-us.**

a. **Croire**, *to believe*, is irregular only in past part. and preterit; thus:

croire	croyant	cru	crois	crus
	croie -es -e		-s -t	
	croyions -iez		croyons -ez	
	croient		croient	

NOTE.—Compare the verb **croître (248)**.

b. **Boire**, *to drink*, changes the stem in pres. part., etc., to **buv-** (**237**, Rem. 2), which becomes **boiv-** when stressed (**5**). Thus:

boire	**buvant**	**bu**	**bois**	**bus**
	boive -es -e		**-s -t**	
	buvions -iez		**buvons -ez**	
	boivent		**boivent**	

NOTE.—The stem is properly **buv** (when stressed **boiv**) with **v** dropped before consonant endings (see **écrire**), and before **u** (LAT. *bibere*).

CHAPTER XXIX.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF CONJ. III—(*Continued.*)

II. VERBS IN -RE PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

247. The most of these contract or otherwise modify the stem before consonant endings, and show a different stem before vowel endings (see **237**, Remarks). Past part. in **-u** gives usually pret. **-us**; other endings give pret. **-is**.

The following changes may be noted, chiefly in the stem of the infinitive:

REMARK.—1. Before **r**, the insertion of **t** after a radical (original) **s**; and of **d**, after **l**, **n** (sometimes **s**); as, **paître** (old **paistre**), Latin *pas(ce)re;* **moudre**, Lat. *mol(e)re;* **plaindre**, Lat. *plan(ge)re;* **coudre**, Lat. *cons(ue)re.* See also **tiendrai** (**235**, *c*).

2. Before a consonant **l** becomes **u**, forming then, with preceding vowel, **au**, **eu**, **ou**; as, **moudre** (above), etc. (See also **28**, **33**, *c*, **54**, etc.)

248. Verbs in **-aître**, **-oître**, viz.:

connaître	**croître**
paraître	**naître**
paître	etc.

all have **ss** in pres. part., etc., and drop **t**, except before **r** (Rem. 1); and all except **naître** have past part. **u**; pret. **-us**. For the circumflex **i** (before **t**) see **2**, note. Thus:

a. **Connaître**, *to know* (Lat. *cognoscere*):

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
connaître	connaissant	connu	connais	connus
			connais	
			connaît	
			connaissons, etc.	

Similarly, **paraître**, *to appear* (Lat. *parescere*); **paître**, *to feed* (Lat. *pascere*); but **paître** lacks past part. and pret. (from similarity with **pouvoir, 262,** *d*).

Earlier forms were **connoître, paroître** (hence our *reconnoitre*, etc.).

b. **Croître**, *to grow* (Lat. *crescere*), has also (besides before **t**) the circumflex accent in all forms which would otherwise be the same as in **croire**, *to believe* (**246**). Thus:

croître	croissant	crû	crois	crûs
			crois	crûs
			croît	crût, etc.
			croissons, etc.	

NOTE.—But compounds often omit circumflex in past part. and pret.; as, **accru, accrus**, etc.

c. **Naître**, *to be born*, has past. part. **né** (Lat. *natum*), like Conj. I, and an irregular preterit, **naquis**. Thus:

naître	naissant	né	nais	naquis
			nais	
			naît	
			naissons, etc.	

IDIOM.—**Naître** has auxil. **être**. In speaking of living persons, the compound present is used; of the dead, the preterit; as, **la reine d'Angleterre est née en 1819; Thiers naquit en 1797.**

249. Verbs in **-aindre, -eindre, -oindre**, such as:

craindre, *to fear* **feindre**, *to feign* **joindre**, *to join*
plaindre, *to pity* **peindre**, *to paint* **oindre**, *to anoint*

etc., have **gn** (liquid, **21**) before all vowel endings, and drop **d** except before **r** (**247**, Rem. 1). Past part. **-t**, pret. **-is**. Thus:

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
craindre	craignant	craint	crains -s -t craignons, etc.	craignis

So: feindre, feignant, feint, feins, feignis, etc.
joindre, joignant, joint, joins, joignis, etc.

NOTE.—These verbs represent mostly Latin stems in **-ng**; as, **feindre**, from *fingere*; **joindre**, from *jungere* (whence *fictum*, *junctum*, etc.). The stem in French before vowels, is **-gn** (liquid); before consonants **-n**, with **d** inserted before **r** (**247**, Rem. 1).

250. Verbs in **-oudre** (**247**, Rem. 1, 2):

coudre **résoudre**
moudre **absoudre**

modify the stem diversely before vowels (**237**, Rem. 2). All have past part. **-u**, and (except **coudre**) pret. **-us**.

a. **Coudre**, *to sew* (Lat. *consuere*), has **s** before vowel endings; pret. **-is**. Thus:

coudre	cousant	cousu	couds couds coud (37) cousons, etc.	cousis

b. **Moudre**, *to grind* (Lat. *molere*), has **l** before vowel endings; pret. **-us**. Thus:

moudre	moulant	moulu	mouds mouds moud (37) moulons, etc.	moulus

c. **Résoudre**, *to resolve* (Lat. *resolvere*), has **lv** in pres. part., etc., but drops **v** elsewhere before **u**; also drops **d**, except before **r** (**247**, Rem. 1). Thus:

résoudre	résolvant	résolu	résous -s -t résolvons, etc.	résolus

NOTE.—The past part. is also **résous**, meaning *dissolved*.

d. **Absoudre**, *to absolve*, **dissoudre**, *to dissolve*, are like **résoudre**, except past part.:

absous, *f.* **absoute**
dissous, *f.* **dissoute**

REMARK.—Observe that in this group **coudre**, **moudre** retain **d** throughout, except before vowels. Thus the pres. sing. shows the infin. stem (like **vendre**).

251. Verbs in **-vre**: **suivre**
vivre

drop **v** before **-s -s -t** in pres. sing., etc.

a. **Suivre**, *to follow*, has, besides, only irregular past part. **-i**. Thus:

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
suivre	suivant	suivi	suis	suivis
			-s -t	
			suivons, etc.	

NOTE.—**Je suis**, *I follow*, is identical with **je suis**, *I am*.

b. **Vivre**, *to live*, has also irregular past part. and preterit. Thus (Lat. *vivere*):

vivre	vivant	vécu	vis	vécus
			-s -t	
			vivons, etc.	

NOTE.—The present sing. of **vivre**, *I live*, etc., is identical with preterit sing. of **voir**, *I see*, etc. (**260**).

IDIOMS.—**Vive le roi**, *long live the king*, etc. **Qui vive?** *who goes there?* is elliptical for *who (do you wish) shall live?*

252. Prendre, *to take*, drops **d** before vowels, and doubles **n** before **e** (**8**, Rem.). Past part. and pret. **-is** (Lat. *pre[he]nsum*). Thus:

prendre	prenant	pris	prends	pris
	prenne **-es -e**		prends	
	prenions **-iez**		prend (**37**)	
	prennent		prenons **-ez**	
			prennent	

NOTE.—Here **d** in the infin. is original (Lat. *pre[he]ndere*), and so is also retained in the present sing. (like **vendre**).
This verb has many compounds

253. Mettre, *to put*, has past part. and pret. **-is** (Lat. *missum*)—otherwise regular. (For the pres. sing. see **37**.) Thus:

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
mettre	mettant	**mis**	mets	**mis**
			mets	
			met	
			mettons, etc.	

NOTE.—**Mettre** has many compounds.

REMARK.—For past parts. **pris**, **mis**, compare **acquis**, **circoncis**, **clos**—all from Latin forms with **s**.

254. Vaincre, *to conquer*, only changes **c** to **qu** before vowels, except **u**; otherwise regular; as:

vaincre	vainquant	vaincu	vaincs	vainquis
vaincrai	vainque, etc.		vaincs	
			vainc (37)	
			vainquons (15, *j*), etc.	

CHAPTER XXX.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -OIR.

REMARK.—Verbs in **-oir** are, in many French grammars, counted as a distinct conjugation, forming the Third Conjugation of regular verbs. Those, however, which follow a common form are very few, and most of the others are very irregular. It is therefore more convenient to treat them all as irregular, as is now usually done in the best grammars.

255. Verbs in **-oir** present numerous irregularities in both formation and inflection, including also some special forms. The endings are in general those of Conj. III, though with exceptions; and the stem is usually shortened, or modified, before consonant endings of pres. sing. All except **voir, seoir** have past part. **-u**, pret. **-us**. Note also:

REMARK.—1. After **au, eu**, sometimes **x** takes the place of **s**, final; as, **aux, feux**, etc. See **28, 33**, *b*, etc.

2. Sometimes **v** becomes **u** before **r**, and is lost (contracted) before **u**; as, **aurai** (**avoir**); **bu, bus** (**boire, 246**, *b*). See also **247**, Rem. 2.

3. As the ending of the infin. **-oir** is a vowel ending, its stem is usually the same as in pres. part. (**237**, Rem. 2). Forms derived from this stem, with endings of Conj. III, are not marked as irregular.

256. Verbs in **-evoir** (stem **-ev**)

recevoir
concevoir, etc.
devoir

change **ev** to **oiv** whenever stressed, dropping **v** before consonant endings in pres. sing., with contraction before **u**. Thus:

a. **Recevoir**, *to receive*, takes cedilla (**ç**) before **o**, **u**. Thus:

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
recevoir	recevant	reçu	reçois	reçus
Fut.	*Pres. Subj.*		-s -t	
recevrai	reçoive -es -e			
	recevions -iez		recevons -ez	
	reçoivent		reçoivent	

b. **Devoir**, *to owe*, has the same endings; but in past part. (masc. sing. only) **dû**, in distinction from **du**, *of the*. Thus:

devoir	devant	dû	dois	dus
		f. due	(like reçois)	

IDIOMS.—**Devoir** (Lat. *debere*) is much used before infinitive in idioms corresponding to English *ought, must, shall, should, have to, am to*, etc. For the idiomatic **dussé-je**, *should I*, see **220**, *b*, note. For auxiliary idioms, see Appendix II.

REMARK.—These verbs, **devoir**, with **recevoir**, **concevoir** and other derivatives of Lat. *capere*, constitute the entire regular Third Conjugation referred to above.

257. Mouvoir, *to move*, changes **ou** to **eu** when stressed, omitting **v** in pres. sing. (See **mourir**, **235**, *a*.) Thus (Lat. *movere*):

mouvoir	mouvant	mu	meus	mus
mouvrai	meuve -es -e		-s -t	
	mouvions -iez		mouvons -ez	
	meuvent		meuvent	

258. Pleuvoir, *to rain*, is used only in 3d sing. impersonal. Thus (Lat. *pluere*):

pleuvoir	pleuvant	plu	il pleut	il plut
il pleuvra	il pleuve			

259. The verb **choir** and its compounds.

a. **Choir**, *to fall*, has only past part. **chu** (Lat. *cadere*).

b. **Déchoir**, *to decay*, has special forms in pres. part. and future :

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past. Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
déchoir	déchoyant *or* **déchéant**	déchu	déchois	déchus
decherrai	dechoie -es -e		-s -t	
	-oyions -iez		dechoyons -ez	
	dechoient		déchoient	

c. **Échoir**, *to fall due*, is in part defective ; otherwise like **déchoir**.

260. The verb **voir** and its compounds (Lat. *videre*).

a. **Voir**, *to see*, has irreg. fut. **verrai**; pret. **-is**. Thus :

voir	voyant	vu	vois	**vis**
	voie -es -e		-s -t	
verrai	voyions -iez		voyons -ez	
	voient		voient	

NOTE.—The use of **i** and **y** as heretofore. With **verrai**, **décherrai** compare **enverrai**, **acquerrai**. The pret. sing. of **voir** has same forms as pres. sing. of **vivre**, *to live* (**251**, *b*).

IDIOMS.—**Voyons**, as interjection, *let's see ;* **vu que**, as conjunction, *seeing that.* For **voici**, **voilà**, see **81**, *a.* **Je le vis percer** describes *an act ;* **je le vis percé**, *a state* or *result.*

b. **Prévoir**, *to foresee*, is like **voir**, except fut. **prévoirai**.

c. **Pourvoir**, *to provide*, has fut, **pourvoirai** ; also pret. **pourvus** ; otherwise like **voir**.

IDIOM.—**Pourvu que**, *provided that* (with subj.).

REMARK.—The compounds of **voir** and of **dire** (**240**) are remarkable by departure from the general rule that compounds are conjugated like their primitives.

261. The verb **seoir**, and its compounds

asseoir
surseoir

have both past. part. and pret. **-is**; otherwise quite irregular.

a. **Seoir**, *to sit*, has only the participles **séant**, **sis** (Lat. *sedere*).

b. **Seoir**, *to fit, suit*, is in part defective, but, so far as used, is like the following:

c. **Asseoir**, *to set* (usually **s'asseoir**, *to sit down*):

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
asseoir	asseyant	assis	assieds	assis
			assieds	
assiérai	asseie -es -e		assied	
	asseyions -iez		asseyons -ez	
	asseient		asseient	

d. **Surseoir**, *to adjourn*, is more nearly regular; thus:

surseoir	sursoyant	sursis	sursois	sursis
surseoirai	sursoie -es -e		-s -t	
	sursoyions -iez		sursoyons -ez	
	sursoient		sursoient	

NOTE.—But there is much instability of form in these verbs. Often **y** is retained before **e**; as, **asseye**, **sursoye**, etc. Also, **asseoir** has sometimes forms with **o**; as, **assois**, **assoirai**, etc.

REMARK.—With the past parts. **sis** (Lat. *sessum*), **assis**, etc., compare **acquis**, **circoncis**, **mis**, **pris**, etc.—in every case from Latin *s*.

CHAPTER XXXI.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -OIR.—(*Continued.*)

Specially irregular and important are the verbs:

valoir **vouloir**
falloir **pouvoir**
savoir

262. The verbs **valoir, vouloir, pouvoir** have **x** instead of **s** (**255**, Rem. 1) in the pres. singular, with change of **l** to **u** (**247**, Rem. 2), and are otherwise specially irregular.

a. **Valoir**, *to be worth*, besides **x** for **s** in present, changes the stem **val** to **vau** before all consonants, and to **vaill** (liquid) in pres. subj.; and inserts **d** in future (**247**, Rem. 1):

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past. Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
valoir	valant	valu	**vaux**	**valus**
vaudrai	vaille -es -e		**vaux**	
	valions -iez		**vaut**	
	vaillent		valons -ez -ent	

IDIOM.—**Valoir mieux**, *to be better* (*worth*) takes the first infin. without prep., the second with **de**; as, **il vaut mieux mourir que de fuir** (see **191**, note 2).

b. **Falloir**, *to be necessary* (impersonal), is exactly like the 3d sing. of **valoir**.

falloir	———	fallu	**il faut**	**il fallut**
il faudra	**il faille**			

IDIOM.—The forms of **falloir, il faut**, etc., are much used in the sense of *must, have to*, etc., followed by an infin., or by **que** and the subjunctive ; as,

il lui faut écrire, *he must write ;* or, **il faut qu'il écrive**
il lui fallait écrire, *he had to write ;* or, **il fallait qu'il écrivît**
il lui faudra écrire, *he will have to write ;* or, **il faudra qu'il écrive**, etc.

With *a noun*, only the subjunctive can be used (see **218**).

Other idioms are : **que vous faut-il ?** *what do you need ?* **il me faut de l'argent**, etc.; **comme il faut**, *as it should be.* The phrase, **peu s'en faut que**, *it lacks little but*, etc., is perhaps connected with **faillir** (**234**, *d*), which is another form of the same verb (Lat. *fallere*).

c. **Vouloir**, *to wish, will*, besides **x** for **s**, changes **ou** to **eu** when stressed in the present, but has **veuill-** in the corresponding forms of the pres. subj., *and also of the imperative ;* inserts also **d** in future (see **valoir**). Thus :

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
vouloir	voulant	voulu	**veux**	**voulus**
			veux	*Imper.*
voudrai	**veuille -es -e**		**veut**	**veuille**
	voulions -iez		**voulons -ez**	**veuillez** (*please*)
	veuillent		**veulent**	

NOTE.—The irregular imperative—here really subjunctive (as a softened form for courtesy)—is used only before infin. in sense of *please.*

IDIOM.—**Vouloir** is much used in forms corresponding to English *will, would* (*volition*), but not as simple future or conditional. Also in many phrases ; as, **que voulez-vous ?** *what do you mean ?* **cela veut dire**, *that means (to say)* ; **Dieu le veuille**, *God grant it* (**214**). It will be followed by infin. or by subj. (as **215**, Rem.) ; as, **que voulez-vous faire ? que voulez-vous que je fasse ?** etc. (See Appendix II.)

d. **Pouvoir**, *to be able, can*, besides **x** for **s** in present, changes **ou** to **eu** when stressed in the present, and has also special forms in 1st sing. present, in the pres. subj., and in the future ; no imperative. Thus :

pouvoir	pouvant	**pu**	**peux (puis)**	**pus**
			peux	
pourrai	**puisse -es -e**		**peut**	
	puissions -iez		pouvons -ez	
	puissent		**peuvent**	

NOTE.—1. In 1st pers. pres., **je peux**, or **je puis**; but only **puis-je ? je ne puis (pas)**; **je ne peux pas.**

2. The present subj. is irregular throughout (as if from **puis**).

IDIOM.—**Pouvoir** is much used in idioms corresponding to English *can*, *could* (*have*), and (in fut. and cond.) *may*, *might*, etc. Care must be taken to distinguish the *defective* forms in English; as, **je ne pouvais aller**, *I could not go* (*was not able*); **je ne pourrais aller**, *I could not go* (*should not be able*, i.e., *if invited*)—as in other auxiliary phrases, where the ambiguity arises really from defect of form in English. For omission of **pas**, see **184**. For auxiliary idioms, see Appendix II.

263. Savoir, *to know*, changes **v** to **u** in future (**255**, Rem. 2), and is specially irregular in pres. part., pres. indic. sing., pres. subj., and imperative. Thus:

Infin.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres.*	*Pret.*
savoir	sachant	su	sais	sus
saurai	sache -es -e		-s -t	
	sachions -iez		savons -ez	
	sachent		savent	
Imperfect	savais	*Imperat.*	sache	sachez

NOTE.—**Savoir** and **avoir** are the only verbs in which the pres. part. presents a different stem from the imperfect and plur. pres. (**ayant**, **avais**, **avons**, etc.). In both, the subj. pres. and the imperative follow the irregular pres. part. (**aie**, **ayons**, etc.) Compare also the futures, **aurai**, **saurai** (Lat. *sapere*).

IDIOM.—In some phrases the subjunctive pres. is used for the indicative; as, **je ne sache**, *I don't know*; **que je sache**, *so far as I know* (as a softened form). The conditional **saurais** with **ne** is used for *cannot*, *could not*; as, **je ne saurais faire cela**, etc. For the negative, see **184**.

264. ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Obvious compounds, which present no peculiarity, are omitted where the primitive occurs, as **accourir (courir)**, **admettre (mettre)**, etc. Others, perhaps less obvious in form or meaning, are given, as **abstenir, atteindre**, etc. The *model verb* is added, with references to the § where this is to be found.

absoudre	250, *d*	**cueillir**	233, *b*
abstenir (tenir)	235, *c*	**cuire (conduire)**	244, *a*
abstraire (traire)	245, *c*		
accroître (croître)	248, *b*	**décevoir (recevoir)**	256, *a*
acquérir	235, *b*	**déchoir**	259, *b*
aller	230	**décrire (écrire)**	241, *b*
apercevoir (recevoir)	256, *a*	**décroître (croître)**	248, *b*
appartenir (tenir)	235, *c*	**dédire**	240, *e*
assaillir	233, *a*	**déduire (conduire)**	244, *a*
asseoir	261, *c*	**détruire (conduire)**	244, *a*
astreindre (feindre)	249	**devoir**	256, *b*
atteindre (feindre)	249	**dire**	240, *d*
avoir	85	**dissoudre (absoudre)**	250, *d*
		distraire (traire)	245, *c*
boire	246, *b*	**dormir**	234, *b*
bouillir	234, *c*		
braire	245, *d*	**échoir**	259, *c*
bruire	244, *c*	**éclore**	242
		écrire	241, *b*
ceindre (feindre)	249	**élire (lire)**	240, *f*
choir	259, *a*	**empreindre (feindre)**	249
circoncire	240, *c*	**enduire (conduire)**	244, *a*
circonscrire (écrire)	241, *b*	**enfreindre (feindre)**	249
clore	242	**enquérir (acquérir)**	235, *b*
concevoir (recevoir)	256, *a*	**envoyer**	231
conclure	243	**épreindre (feindre)**	249
conduire	244, *a*	**éteindre (feindre)**	249
confire	240, *a*	**être**	102
connaître	248, *a*	**étreindre (feindre)**	249
conquérir (acquérir)	235, *b*	**exclure (conclure)**	243
construire (conduire)	244, *a*		
contraindre (craindre)	249		
contredire	240, *e*	**faillir**	234, *d*
coudre	250, *a*	**faire**	245, *b*
courir	234, *f*	**falloir**	262, *b*
couvrir (ouvrir)	233, *c*	**feindre**	249
craindre	249	**fleurir**	236, *b*
croire	246, *a*	**frire**	241, *c*
croître	248, *b*	**fuir**	234, *a*

ceindre (feindre) . . 249
gésir . . . . . 235, *d*

haïr . . . . . 236, *a*

inclure . . . . . 243, *note*
induire (conduire) . . 244, *a*
inscrire (écrire) . . 241, *b*
instruire (conduire) . 244, *a*
interdire . . . . . 240, *e*
introduire (conduire) . 244, *a*
issir . . . . . 236, *c*

joindre 249

lire . . . . . 240, *f*
luire . . . . . 244, *b*

maudire . . . . . 240, *e*
médire . . . . . 240, *e*
mentir (partir) . . . 234, *b*
messeoir (asseoir) . . 261, *c*
mettre 253
moudre . . . . . 250, *b*
mourir . . . . . 235, *a*
mouvoir 257

naître . . . . . 248, *c*
nuire . . . . . 244, *b*

offrir (ouvrir) . . . 233, *c*
oindre (joindre) . . 249
ouïr . . . . . 236, *d*
ouvrir . . . . . 233, *c*

paître (connaître) . . 248, *a*
paraître (connaître) . 248, *a*
partir . . . . . 234, *b*
peindre (feindre) . . 249
percevoir (recevoir) . 256, *a*
plaindre (craindre) . . 249
plaire . . . . . 245, *a*
pleuvoir 258
poindre (joindre) . . 249
pourvoir . . . . . 260, *c*
pouvoir . . . . . 262, *d*
prédire . . . . . 240, *e*
prendre 252
prescrire (écrire) . . 241, *b*
prévoir . . . . . 260, *b*
produire (conduire) . 244, *a*
proscrire (écrire) . . 241, *b*

recevoir . . . . . 256, *a*
reclure (conclure) . . 243
récrire (écrire) . . . 241, *b*
recroître (croître) . . 248, *b*
réduire (conduire) . . 244, *a*
rentraire (traire) . . 245, *c*
repentir (partir) . . 234, *b*
requérir (acquérir) . 235, *b*
résoudre . . . . . 250, *c*
restreindre (feindre) . 249
rire . . . . . 241, *a*
rouvrir (ouvrir) . . 233, *c*

saillir . . . . . 233, *b*
savoir 263
secourir (courir) . . 234, *f*
séduire (conduire) . . 244, *a*
sentir (partir) . . . 234, *b*
seoir . . . . . 261, *a*, *b*
servir . . . . . 234, *b*
sortir (partir) . . . 234, *b*
souffrir (ouvrir) . . 233, *c*
souscrire (écrire) . . 241, *b*
soustraire (traire) . . 245, *c*
suffire . . . . . 240, *b*
suivre . . . . . 251, *a*
surcroître (croître) . 248, *b*
surseoir . . . . . 261, *d*

taire . . . . . 245, *a*
teindre (feindre) . . 249
tenir . . . . . 235, *c*
traduire (conduire) . 244, *a*
traire . . . . . 245, *c*
transcrire (écrire) . . 241, *b*
tressaillir (assaillir) . 233, *a*

vaincre 254
valoir . . . . . 262, *a*
venir (tenir) . . . . 235, *c*
vêtir . . . . . 234, *e*
vivre . . . . . 251, *b*
voir . . . . . 260, *a*
vouloir . . . . . 262, *c*

SUPPLEMENTARY SELECTIONS.

19. Histoire du Chien de Brisquet.

En notre forêt de Lions il y avait un bonhomme, bûcheron de son état[1], qui s'appelait Brisquet, et qui vivait pauvrement du produit de ses fagots, avec sa femme, qui s'appelait Brisquette. Le bon Dieu leur avait donné deux jolis petits enfants, un garçon de neuf ans, qui était brun et qui s'appelait Biscotin, et une blondine de huit ans, qui s'appelait Biscotine. Outre cela ils avaient un chien à[2] poil frisé, noir par tout le corps, si ce n'est[3] au museau, et c'était bien le meilleur chien du pays, pour son attachement à ses maîtres.

On l'appelait la Bichonne, parce que c'était une chienne.

Vous vous souvenez du temps où il vint[4] tant de loups dans la forêt de Lions. C'était dans l'année des grandes neiges, que[5] les pauvres gens eurent si grand'[6]peine à vivre. Ce fut une terrible désolation dans le pays. Brisquet, qui allait toujours à sa besogne et qui ne craignait pas les loups, à cause de sa bonne hache, dit un matin à Brisquette: "Femme, je vous prie de ne laisser courir ni Biscotin ni Biscotine. Il y aurait du danger pour eux. Ils ont assez de quoi[7]

[1] *By trade,* or *occupation.* [2] Here *with.* [3] Phrase, *except.* [4] See **156.** [5] Here = **quand,** *when* (**196,** *a*). [6] See **206.** [7] Idiom: *room enough to.*

marcher entre la butte et l'étang, depuis que j'ai planté des piquets le long de l'étang, pour les préserver d'accident. Je vous prie aussi, Brisquette, de ne pas laisser sortir la Bichonne, qui ne demande qu'à trotter."

Brisquet disait tous les matins la même chose à Brisquette. Un soir il n'arriva pas à l'heure ordinaire. Brisquette venait sur le pas de la porte, rentrait, ressortait, et disait en se croisant les mains: "Mon Dieu! qu'il est attardé[1]!" Et puis elle sortait en criant: "Eh! Brisquet!"

Et la Bichonne lui sautait jusqu'aux épaules[2], comme pour lui dire: N'irai-je pas?

"Paix! lui dit Brisquette.—Écoute, Biscotine, va jusque devers la butte, pour savoir si ton père ne revient pas.—Et toi, Biscotin, suis le chemin au long de l'étang, en prenant bien garde[3] s'il n'y a pas de piquets qui manquent. Et crie fort: Brisquet! Brisquet!"

Les enfants allèrent, allèrent, et quand ils se furent rejoints[4] à l'endroit où le sentier de l'étang vient couper celui de la butte: "Mordienne[5], dit Biscotin, je trouverai notre pauvre père, ou les loups me mangeront."

"Pardienne[5], dit Biscotine, ils me mangeront bien aussi."

Pendant ce temps-là, Brisquet était revenu par un autre chemin, parce qu'il avait une hottée de cotrets à fournir chez Jean Pacquier.

---

[1] See **180**, *b*. [2] See **108**, *c*. [3] Phrase: *taking good care* (171). [4] Reflex. **se rejoindre**; see **136**, *d*. [5] These words, originally oaths, are here only exclamations, like *zounds*, etc., in English.

"As-tu vu nos enfants?" lui demanda Brisquette.

"Nos enfants? dit Brisquet, nos enfants? mon Dieu! sont-ils sortis?"

"Je les ai envoyés à ta rencontre[1] jusqu'à la butte et à l'étang; mais tu es venu par un autre chemin."

Brisquet ne posa pas sa bonne hache. Il se mit à courir du côté de[2] la butte, et la Bichonne était déjà bien loin. Elle était si loin que Brisquet la perdit bientôt de vue. Et il avait beau[3] crier: "Biscotin! Biscotine!" on ne lui répondait pas.

Alors il se mit à pleurer parce qu'il s'imagina que ses enfants étaient perdus.

Après avoir couru longtemps, longtemps, il lui sembla reconnaître la voix de la Bichonne. Il marcha droit dans le fourré, à l'endroit où il l'avait entendue, et il y entra, sa bonne hache levée.

La Bichonne était arrivée là au moment où Biscotin et Biscotine allaient[4] être dévorés par un gros loup. Elle s'était jetée devant en aboyant, pour que[5] ses abois avertissent Brisquet.

Brisquet, d'un coup de sa bonne hache, renversa le loup raide[6] mort; mais il était trop tard pour la Bichonne. Elle ne vivait déjà plus.

Brisquet, Biscotin et Biscotine rejoignirent Brisquette. C'était une grande joie, et cependant tout le monde pleura. Il n'y avait pas un regard qui ne cherchât[7] la Bichonne.

Brisquet enterra la Bichonne au fond de son petit

---

[1] **Phrase**: *to meet you.* [2] Phrase: *in the direction of, towards.*
[3] Idiom: **avoir beau**, *to do in vain—he cried in vain.* [4] See **230.**
[5] See **223.** [6] Or, **roide**, *stiff—stone dead.* [7] See **216**, *c.*

jardin, sous une grosse pierre, sur laquelle le maître d'école écrivit en latin:

"C'est ici[1] qu'est la Bichonne,
Le pauvre chien de Brisquet."

20. La Belle au Bois Dormant.

(*The Sleeping Beauty in the Wood.*)

Il était[2] une fois un roi et une reine qui n'avaient qu'un seul enfant. C'était une petite fille.

On fit un beau baptême; on donna pour marraines à la petite princesse toutes les fées qu'on put trouver dans le pays (il s'en trouva sept), afin que chacune d'elles lui faisant un don, comme c'était la coutume des fées en ce temps-là, la princesse eût[3] par ce moyen toutes les perfections imaginables.

Après les cérémonies du baptême, toute la compagnie revint au palais du roi, où il y avait un grand festin pour les fées. On mit devant chacune d'elles un couvert magnifique, avec un étui d'or massif, où il y avait une cuillère, une fourchette et un couteau de fin or, garnis de diamants et de rubis. Mais, comme chacun prenait sa place à table, on vit entrer une vieille fée qu'on n'avait point priée, parce qu'il y avait plus de[4] cinquante ans qu'elle n'était sortie[5] d'une tour, et qu'[6]on la croyait morte ou enchantée.

Le roi lui fit donner[7] un couvert; mais il n'y eut pas moyen de lui donner un étui d'or massif comme aux autres, parce que l'[8]on n'en[9] avait fait faire que sept pour les sept fées. La vieille crut qu'on la mé-

[1] See **122**, *b*, *here lies*. [2] See **158**, *a*. [3] See **214**, *c*. [4] See **168**. [5] See **184**, *e*. [6] See **196**, *b*. [7] See **190**. [8] See **153**, note. [9] See **167**.

prisait, et grommela quelques menaces entre ses dents.

Une des jeunes fées, qui se trouva auprès d'elle, l'entendit, et, jugeant qu'elle pourrait donner quelque fâcheux don à la petite princesse, alla, dès qu'on fut sorti de table, se cacher[1] derrière la tapisserie, afin de[2] parler la dernière et de pouvoir réparer, autant qu'il serait possible, le mal que la vieille aurait fait.

Cependant les fées commencèrent à faire leur don à la princesse. La plus jeune lui donna pour don qu'elle serait la plus belle personne du monde; celle d'après[3], qu'elle aurait de l'esprit comme un ange; la troisième, qu'elle aurait une grâce admirable à tout ce qu'elle ferait; la quatrième, qu'elle danserait parfaitement bien; la cinquième, qu'elle chanterait comme un rossignol; et la sixième, qu'elle jouerait de toutes sortes d'instruments dans la dernière perfection.

Le rang de la vieille fée étant venu, elle dit en branlant la tête, encore plus de dépit que de vieillesse, que la princesse se percerait[4] la main d'un fuseau, et qu'elle en mourrait. Ce terrible don fit frémir toute la compagnie, et il n'y eut personne qui ne pleurât[5].

Dans ce moment la jeune fée sortit de derrière la tapisserie, et dit tout haut ces paroles:

"Rassurez-vous, roi et reine, votre fille n'en mourra pas; il est vrai que je n'ai pas assez de puissance pour défaire entièrement ce que mon ancienne[6] a fait: la princesse se percera la main d'un fuseau; mais au lieu d'en mourir, elle tombera seulement dans un profond

---

[1] Translate, *and hid.* [2] See **193**, *d*, and note 3, p. 196. [3] Phrase: *the next one.* [4] See **108**, *c.* [5] See note 7, p. 195. [6] As noun, *my elder.*

sommeil qui durera cent ans, au bout desquels le fils d'un roi viendra la réveiller[1]."

Le roi, pour tâcher d'éviter le malheur annoncé par la vieille, fit publier aussitôt un édit par lequel il défendait à[2] toutes personnes de filer au fuseau ni[3] d'avoir des fuseaux chez soi, sous peine de la vie.

Au bout de quinze ou seize ans, le roi et la reine étant allés à une de leurs maisons de plaisance, il arriva que la jeune princesse, courant un jour dans le château et montant de chambre en chambre, alla jusqu'au haut d'un donjon, dans un petit galetas où une bonne vieille était seule à filer[4] sa quenouille. Cette bonne femme n'avait point ouï parler des défenses que le roi avait faites de filer au fuseau.

"Que faites-vous là, ma bonne femme? dit la princesse.

— Je file, ma belle enfant, lui répondit la vieille, qui ne la connaissait pas.

— Ah! que[5] cela est joli! reprit la princesse: comment faites-vous? donnez-moi, que[6] je voie si j'en ferais bien autant."

Elle n'eut pas plus tôt pris le fuseau que[7], comme elle était fort vive, un peu étourdie, et que[7] d'ailleurs l'arrêt des fées l'ordonnait ainsi, elle s'en[8] perça la main et tomba évanouie.

La bonne vieille, bien embarrassée, crie au secours: on vient de tous côtés, on jette de l'eau au visage de la[8] princesse; on la délace, on lui frappe dans les mains, on lui frotte les tempes: mais rien ne la faisait

[1] See **189**, note. [2] See **187**, *c*. [3] Corresponds to implied negative, preceding. See **182**, *d*. [4] Transl. by part. *-ing*. [5] See **180**, *b*. [6] See **205**, note. [7] The first **que** limits the comparative; the second repeats **comme**, **196**, *b*; *than—and as*. [8] See **91**.

revenir. Alors le roi, qui était monté au bruit, se souvint de la prédiction des fées ; et jugeant bien qu'il fallait que cela arrivât[1], puisque les fées l'avaient dit, fit mettre la princesse dans un bel appartement du palais, sur un lit en broderie d'or et d'argent.

On eût dit un ange[2], tant elle était belle ; car son évanouissement n'avait point ôté les couleurs vives de son teint; ses joues étaient incarnates et ses lèvres comme du corail; elle avait seulement les yeux fermés, mais on l'entendait respirer doucement, ce qui[3] faisait voir qu'elle n'était pas morte. Le roi ordonna qu'on la laissât dormir en repos, jusqu'à ce que son heure de se réveiller fût venue.[4]

La bonne fée qui lui avait sauvé la vie en la condamnant à dormir cent ans, était à douze mille lieues de là, lorsque l'accident arriva à la princesse; mais elle en fut avertie en un instant par un petit nain qui avait des bottes de sept lieues (c'étaient[5] des bottes avec lesquelles on faisait sept lieues d'une seule enjambée). La fée partit aussitôt, et on la vit, au bout d'une heure, arriver dans un chariot de feu traîné par des dragons.

Le roi alla lui présenter la main à la descente du chariot. Elle approuva tout ce qu'il avait fait; mais, comme elle était grandement prévoyante, elle pensa que, quand la princesse viendrait[6] à se réveiller, elle serait bien embarrassée toute[7] seule dans ce vieux château: voici ce qu'elle fit.

Elle toucha de sa baguette tout ce qui était dans ce château (hors le roi et la reine), gouvernantes,

---

[1] See **218**. [2] Elliptical (*that she was*). [3] See **144**. [4] See **223**. [5] See **118**, *b* ; the "seven league boots" occur elsewhere in fairy tales. [6] See **235**. [7] See **177**.

filles d'honneur, femmes de chambre, gentilshommes, officiers, cuisiniers, marmitons, gardes, suisses, pages, valets de pied[1]; elle toucha aussi tous les chevaux qui étaient dans les écuries, avec les palefreniers, les gros mâtins de la basse-cour et la petite Pouffe, petite chienne de la princesse, qui était auprès d'elle sur son lit. Dès qu'elle les eut touchés, ils s'endormirent tous pour ne se réveiller qu'en même temps que leur maîtresse, afin d'être toujours prêts à la servir quand elle en aurait besoin. Les broches mêmes qui étaient au feu, toutes pleines de perdrix et de faisans, s'endormirent, et le feu aussi. Tout cela se fit en un moment: les fées n'étaient pas longues à leur besogne.

Alors le roi et la reine, après avoir baisé leur chère enfant sans qu'elle s'éveillât[2], sortirent du château, firent publier des défenses à qui que ce soit[3] d'en approcher[4]. Ces défenses n'étaient pas nécessaires; car il crût dans un quart d'heure tout autour du parc une si grande quantité de grands arbres et de petits, de ronces et d'épines entrelacées les unes dans les autres, que ni bête ni homme n'y aurait pu[5] passer. On ne douta point que la fée n'eût[6] encore fait là un tour de son métier, afin que la princesse, pendant qu'elle dormirait, n'eût rien à craindre des curieux.

Au bout de cent ans, le fils du roi qui régnait alors, et qui était d'une autre famille que la princesse endormie, étant allé à la chasse de ce côté-là[7], demanda ce que c'était que[8] des tours qu'il voyait au-

---

[1] See **207**; *footmen*. [2] See **223**. [3] Indef. phrase. *everybody*. [4] The idiom is **approcher de**; see **95**, note 3. [5] *Could have*, etc.; see **182**, *d*. [6] See **222**. [7] See p. 195, note 2. [8] See **196**, *c*—*what were some towers*.

dessus d'un grand bois fort épais. Chacun lui répondit selon qu'il en avait ouï parler: les uns disaient que c'était un vieux château où il revenait[1] des esprits; les autres, que tous les sorciers de la contrée y faisaient leur sabbat. La plus commune opinion était qu'un ogre y demeurait, et que là il emportait tous les enfants qu'il pouvait attraper, pour pouvoir les manger à son aise.

Le prince ne savait qu'en croire[2], lorsqu'un vieux paysan prit la parole et lui dit:

"Mon prince, il y a plus[3] de cinquante ans que j'ai ouï dire[4] à mon père qu'il y avait dans ce château une princesse, la plus belle du monde; qu'elle y devait dormir cent ans, et qu'elle serait réveillée par le fils d'un roi, à qui elle était réservée."

Le jeune prince, à ce discours, se sentit tout de feu[5]; il crut, sans balancer[6], qu'il mettrait fin à une si belle aventure; et, poussé par l'amour et par la gloire, il résolut de voir sur le champ ce qu'il en était[7]. A peine s'avança-t-il[8] vers le bois, que tous ces grands arbres, ces ronces et ces épines s'écartèrent d'eux-mêmes pour le laisser passer. Il marcha vers le château, qu'il voyait au bout d'une grande avenue, où il entra; et, ce qui le surprit un peu, il vit que personne de ses gens ne l'avait pu suivre, parce que les arbres s'étaient rapprochés dès qu'il avait été passé. Il ne laissa pas de continuer son chemin: un prince jeune et amoureux est toujours vaillant. Il entra dans une grande avant-cour, où tout ce qu'il

---

[1] See **156**. [2] *What to believe about it;* see **130**, 2. [3] See **158**, note. [4] See **190**; the noun clause is direct object. [5] *All on fire.* [6] See **193**. [7] Phrase, *what it was;* **95**, Rem. [8] See **181**, *b*; *hardly . . . when* (*than*).

vit d'abord était capable de le glacer de crainte. C'était un silence affreux; l'image de la mort s'y présentait partout; et ce n'étaient que des corps étendus d'hommes et d'animaux qui paraissaient morts. Il reconnut pourtant bien, au[1] nez bourgeonné et à la face vermeille des suisses, qu'ils n'étaient qu'endormis; et leurs tasses, où ils avaient encore quelques gouttes de vin, montraient assez qu'ils s'étaient endormis en buvant. Il passe une grande cour pavée de marbre; il monte l'escalier; il entre dans la salle des gardes, qui étaient rangés en haie, la[2] carabine sur l'épaule, et ronflant de leur mieux[3]. Il traverse plusieurs chambres pleines de gentilshommes et de dames dormant[4] tous, les uns debout, les autres assis. Il entra dans une chambre toute[5] dorée, et il vit sur un lit, dont les rideaux étaient ouverts de tous côtés, le plus beau spectacle qu'il eût[6] jamais vu, une princesse qui paraissait avoir[7] quinze ou seize ans, et dont l'éclat resplendissant avait quelque chose de[8] lumineux et de divin.

Il s'approcha en tremblant et en admirant, et se mit à genoux auprès d'elle. Alors, comme la fin de l'enchantement était venue, la princesse s'éveilla; et, le regardant avec des yeux plus tendres qu'une première vue ne[9] semblait le[10] permettre:

"Est-ce vous, mon prince? lui dit-elle, vous vous êtes bien fait attendre[11]."

Le prince, charmé de ces paroles, et plus encore de la manière dont elles étaient dites, ne savait comment

[1] *By the.* Note also the sing. nouns, where English uses plural. [2] See **29**, *e.* [3] Adv. phrase: *their best.* [4] See **170.** [5] Why -e? [6] See **216**, *b.* [7] See **166**, *d.* [8] See **151**, *b.* [9] See **185**, *b.* [10] See **83**; omit in translation. [11] See **190**;—reflex; **se faire attendre**, *to cause one's self to be waited for*, i.e., *to delay.*

lui témoigner[1] sa joie et sa reconnaissance; il l'assura qu'il l'aimait plus que lui-même. Ses discours furent mal rangés; ils en plurent davantage[2]: peu d'éloquence, beaucoup d'amour. Il était plus embarrassé qu'elle, et l'on ne doit pas s'en étonner: elle avait eu le temps de songer à ce qu'elle aurait à lui dire; car il y a apparence (l'histoire n'en dit pourtant rien) que la bonne fée, pendant un si long sommeil, lui avait procuré le plaisir des songes agréables. Enfin il y avait quatre heures qu'ils se parlaient[3], et ils ne s'étaient pas encore dit la moitié des choses qu'ils avaient à se dire.

Cependant tout le palais s'était réveillé avec la princesse: chacun songeait à faire sa charge; et, comme ils n'étaient pas tous amoureux, ils mouraient de faim. La dame d'honneur, pressée comme les autres, s'impatienta, et dit tout haut à la princesse que la viande était servie. Le prince aida la princesse à se lever: elle était tout habillée, et fort magnifiquement; mais il se garda bien de lui dire[4] qu'elle était habillée comme ma grand'mère[5], et qu'elle avait un collet monté[6]: elle n'en était pas moins belle[7].

Ils passèrent dans un salon de miroirs et y soupèrent, servis par les officiers de la princesse. Les violons et les hautbois jouèrent de vieilles pièces, mais excellentes, quoiqu'il y eût[8] près de cent ans qu'on ne les jouait plus[9]; et après souper, sans perdre de[10] temps, le grand aumônier les maria dans la chapelle du château.

---

[1] Infin. idiom, *how to testify*, etc. [2] See **179**, note; **en** = *for that*, i.e., *so much the more*. [3] See **158**, note 2,—i.e., *they had been talking to each other for four hours*. [4] See **185**, note. [5] See **206**. [6] *A standing collar*. [7] See note 2. [8] See **223**. [9] See **198**, *b*; *since they had been played*. [10] *Any*—partitive.

REVIEW EXERCISES

FOR TRANSLATION INTO FRENCH.

It is advised (see Preface) that these Exercises be not used until a first partial study of the grammar and reading exercises has been made. They may, however, be used, if so preferred, along with the earliest grammar lessons.

NOTE.—1. For convenience the numbers will be made to correspond to the chapters and exercises referred to.

2. The sign ( ) denotes that something must be supplied, [ ] that something must be omitted, in French. *Italics* call attention to special differences of idiom.

3. See Appendix at the end of these Exercises.

REVIEW V, a.

1. An apple and a pear. 2. The uncle and the aunt. 3. The *king's* brother (say, *of the king*). 4. The queen's book and pen. 5. The large tree in the garden of the king and ( ) queen. 6. The father gives the little book to the queen's friend (*f*).

7. The vices of the king's friends. 8. The friends of ( ) virtue. 9. *Men*, women, and books. 10. The brothers give the apples to the sisters. 11. The sisters give the brothers the pears (say, *the pears to*, etc.). 12. The virtues and ( ) vices of ( ) kings and ( ) queens.

REVIEW V, b.

1. Louis and Mary have the apples and (the) pears. 2. England has a queen ; Italy has a king. 3. The queen of England has a great palace at (*à*) London. 4. You have Eliza's books and pens. 5. We have a large map of France and a small map of Italy. 6. I have a little house in (*à*) Paris, [the] capital of France.

7. I am *a* soldier, *the* son of ( ) General M. 8. We are in a friend's garden. 9. Where is Naples, *a* city of Italy? 10. The queen of England and the king of Italy are at Paris. 11. Louis is large ; you (*tu*) are small (*f.*). 12. London, the capital of England, is a great city.

REVIEW VI.

1. Little Mary's pretty toys are in the house. 2. The neighbor's nephews have two pretty little birds. 3. The queen gives the beautiful jewels to the sons and ( ) daughters of the neighbors. 4. The king gives the horses to the two generals. 5. The great pictures are in the king's palaces. 6. The man has large arms (= the arms large). 7. The little girl has two pretty hats and two large fans. 8. The pictures of the king's ancestors are in the palace. 9. The king and the queen give two great balls in the city. 10. The soldier's little niece has two large and beautiful eyes. 11. The pictures of the birds and ( ) animals in the gardens of Paris are very (*très*) pretty. 12. The sons and ( ) daughters of the neighbors are in (*en*) town.

PARAPHRASE 1.

NOTE.—The Selections will be paraphrased into easy exercises for retranslation, so far as possible, within the limits of the grammatical topics already studied. Additional words or phrases will be added in brief notes, or may be found in the general vocabulary. The teacher may of course progressively vary and extend such paraphrases at will.

1. The river (of the) Nile is a marvellous spectacle.
2. The volume of the waters of the Nile is very great.
3. This river flows without ceasing[1]; it swells its waters in summer[2].
4. Then[3] the springs of the majority of rivers dry-up.
5. The overflows of a river usually spread terror on its banks.
6. The inundations of the Nile are the source of blessings and (of)[4] benedictions.
7. The waters of the Nile, when they overflow, water the animals and plants of Egypt.
8. Then the Nile fills the canals, covers the fields, and spreads ( ) fertility everywhere.

[1] **sans cesse.** [2] **en été.** [3] **alors.** [4] Simply **de**, repeated.

REVIEW VII.

1. The girls have paper and pencils, but they have not any (no) ink. 2. We have two bottles of wine and a little sugar. 3. Here are two pounds of coffee and a dozen (of)

eggs. 4. I have enough friends (friends enough), but too little money. 5. Have you any gold watches or chains? 6. How-many pounds of butter have you? 7. I have no butter, but I have good coffee and excellent tea. 8. We give the soldiers bread, meat, and coffee. 9. We sell hats, fans, pictures, and beautiful toys; but we have no jewels. 10. Many country houses in Spain are very fine. 11. Some corn (*maïs*)-bread and butter, and a little meat and coffee, are in the house. 12. We have need (*besoin*) of eggs and sugar, and of a little more wine.

PARAPHRASE 2.

1. At night ( ) lions descend from the mountains into the plains.
2. I hear some lions, *roaring* in the mountains (*rel. clause*).
3. I load my gun, and give (some) other[1] guns to my two friends.
4. We were [just] arriving at a little stream, when I heard a roaring.
5. The roaring approached, and we waited for[2] a quarter of [an] hour.
6. Suddenly I saw a lion, which was remaining motionless on the opposite bank.
7. As my finger sought the trigger, the lion raised his eyes.
8. His eye was terrible, like a great burning coal, and death[3] seemed inevitable.

[1] **autre**, adj. [2] **pendant**, or omit. [3] **mort**, *f.*

REVIEW VIII.

NOTE.—As the construction of the adjective depends on rules of position not yet given, the student may meantime write the feminine and plurals of the following (a double exercise on adjectives will follow the next chapter):

Agé, agréable, amer, bas, blanc, bleu, certain, doux, faux, flatteur (from flatter, *to flatter*), fou, frais, furieux, haut, italien, long, meilleur (*better*), neuf, nouveau, prêt, serein, superieur, vermeil, vieux, vif—and others, as may be added by the teacher.

PARAPHRASE 3.

One day a countryman gave his seven sons a good lesson: He bound seven sticks together, and presented them[1] to his sons. He said: Break this bundle of sticks, and I will-give you [a] hundred crowns. Each-one tried it[1], and each-one said that (*que*) that was[2] impossible. If you untied[3] the sticks, said the father, you would-break them easily[3]. Reflect, my sons, and these sticks will give you[1] a useful lesson. If you were[2] united one with[4] the other, you would-resist ( ) your enemies. If you lose[5] your[6] time in disputes, they will-destroy you all.

[1] Pron. obj. before verb. [2] Imperfect. [3] **facilement.** [4] **avec.** [5] Present. [6] **votre.**

REVIEW IX, a.

1. ( ) English horses are very fine. 2. We were at a round table, before (*devant*) a closed window. 3. The true history of the ancient heroes is very interesting. 4. Our dear friends, the Berts, were at-our-house[1] yesterday. 5. In the great American forests the trees are very high and beautiful. 6. The physician gave the poor sick [man] some very bitter medicines. 7. A certain man had seven dumb daughters. 8. The merchant sold some very dear silk gloves[2]. 9. A beautiful English girl, with an aged mother and two little brothers, was here (the) last week. 10. This old man was a brave and faithful soldier in the last war. 11. A just heaven will punish that base thought. 12. Mrs. D. was an obedient daughter, a good and faithful wife, a mother very dear to her children.

[1] **chez nous.** [2] See **42.** See the general vocabulary for words not already given.

REVIEW IX, b.

1. The door and the windows are shut. 2. Louise is the prettiest but the least agreeable of the sisters. 3. The paper is bad, the ink is worse; give us some better paper and ( ) ink. 4. Which is the best wine? The red wine is better than the white. 5. Napoleon was the greatest general in ( ) Europe; but he was one of the most cruel men. 6. Italy is a most beautiful country—more beautiful but less rich than France. 7. Henry is as old as Louis,

but he is not so diligent. 8. The good are not always happy;—the richest are often most unhappy. 9. The father and the mother of these children are dead[1]. 10. The history of the most ancient nations is lost. 11. A dead dog or ( ) cat was under the house. 12. The English and French armies were in[2] Spain, in[3] Napoleon's last wars.

[1] **mort**, part. adj. [2] **en**. [3] dans.

PARAPHRASE 4.

When the sun descends, the dew of night begins[1] to fall. The flowers fold their leaves; the hen gathers her chicks under her wing. The birds suspend their warbling, and hide their little heads. The busy[2] bee, shut in her waxen cell, ceases to hum. The peaceful sheep reposes, lying[3] on its soft woollen[4] fleece. The heavens and the earth are in darkness; every[5] work is ended. All ( ) men, all animals, close *their* eyes, and share the repose of nature. But the eye of God is open[6], and his hand defends us[7] always.

[1] **commencer à**. [2] **industrieux**. [3] Use past. part. [4] **la laine**, *wool;* see **42**. [5] **tout** without art. = *every;* with art. = *all*. [6] Part. adj. **ouvert**. [7] **nous**, before verb.

REVIEW X, a.

1. My brother and I have been sick. 2. We speak of him and of you. 3. They alone have always defended the country. 4. He lives in France, I live in England. 5. She is older (*âgé*) than he, but he is much taller than she. 6. Mrs. M. dines to-day with (*chez*) us; we shall dine to-morrow with her. 7. She speaks always of herself and of her [own] affairs. 8. A good action has its reward in itself. 9. He alone built that beautiful house for himself. 10. Who brought the letter? It was he; it was not I. 11. You speak too-much of yourself; let-us-speak of her. 12. Thou, whom (*que*) I have always loved, thou hast spoken against me.

REVIEW X, b.

1. Have you found the pens? Were you not looking-for the pens? 2. Has the servant brought the water? why does he not bring the water? 3. Will not the neighbor's

children play with you? or will you not (*is it that*, etc.) play with them? 4. When (*lorsque*) I am in Europe, do I cease to love America? do I forget my friends? 5. Why has the teacher punished the poor child? 6. Who would not punish a child that (*qui*) seeks not to (*à*) learn (= to not learn). 7. If we do not begin the lesson, we shall not have finished before to-morrow. 8. Let us not forget not to (*de*) shut the windows. 9. Why do you not answer? have you not heard? 10. Do I not answer? why will you not wait? 11. Let us not lose so much time. 12. Are you seeking to hear, or not to hear (*repeat à*)?

PARAPHRASE 5.

An old man had a bird which spoke and answered when one (*on*) called. I will pay a-visit to my old friend, and will play with his little bird. Thus spoke ( ) little Charles and went to his old neighbor's (house)[1]. When he arrived, the good man, as it[2] seemed, was not at home[1]. I will seize the bird and put him into my pocket, thought Charles. The host enters and finds his little friend in the room. Where art thou hidden, little bird? called he, seeking to[3] amuse the boy. Then the bird, which[4] was in Charles' pocket, cried, as always: Here I am.

[1] Use **chez**. [2] **il**, impersonal. [3] **à**. [4] **qui**.

REVIEW XI, a.

1. Where is my little dog? Have you seen (*vu*) him? 2. I have not seen him; I was looking for him: here he is. 3. Pardon me, sir; we had not heard you. 4. Here are some good apples: but do not eat them; my sister will carry them to the sick [woman]. 5. Shall I offend him if I speak to-him? I do not think (*crois*) *so*. 6. Here are some beautiful white silk gloves; at what (*quel*) price does the merchant sell them? 7. Do not speak to me; you have said (*dit*) it; I shall not forget it. 8. There he is; what (*que*) does he bring me (of) new? 9. We were friends, we are not now, I confess (it). 10. Marie is gentle and obedient, as (*comme*) a good girl ( ) is always. 11. Are you my dear friend's little daughter? I am, sir. 12. These exercises will be very useful to-you, if you keep them.

REVIEW XI, b.

1. Have you had my (*ma*) French grammar? I have not had it. 2. We should have much ( ) pleasure, if we had (*imperf.*) more money. 3. The soldiers would have had enough courage, if they had not had too little force. 4. I have received the books, but I have not read them. 5. If we had offended her, has she not pardoned us? 6. Have you not seen the friends who (are) arrived at-my-house (*chez*)? 7. I have seen them, but I have not spoken to-them. 8. Have the children obeyed their (*leur*) mother? They have not obeyed her. 9. Let us not be afraid; have more prudence, and you will succeed. 10. You are wrong; the letter which you have sent me has (is) not arrived. 11. I am ashamed of the affair; when will it take place? It has already taken place. 12. What is the matter with the child? He is sleepy; he has run and played too long (*longtemps*).

PARAPHRASE 6.

The page had in his pocket a paper, which the king saw. It was a letter which his mother had sent him. God will bless thee, my son, said she, for thy good conduct towards me. The king, having read the letter, slipped some gold into the page's pocket. Then he awoke the young man, and called him into his room. The page found the *gold* pieces in his pocket and burst into tears. These gold pieces, which I have found in my pocket, will ruin me, said he. God has sent them, answered the king; be not afraid: give them to thy mother.

REVIEW XII.

1. Here are some good apples; I have brought them to you; eat some. 2. I will not eat any to-day; I will eat them to-morrow. 3. If you have no pens, I will give you some very good [ones]. 4. John has *none;* give them to him: why do you not give them to him? 5. That is my friend's house; carry there the letter which I have given you. 6. He has received it; he spoke to me of it; but he will not answer *it*. 7. Where are Mary's books? She has lent them to me: I had asked *her for them*. 8. There-are my friends. I will present you to them, if you please. 9. He gave the books to you and to me; let us thank him *for* (91)

them. 10. If you have no water, I will bring you some to your room. Carry *some* there, if you please. 11. The teacher's scholars love and obey him : he loves and praises them. 12. Where are my gold pieces ? who has stolen them and hidden them from-me (*ind. obj.*) ?

PARAPHRASE 7.

The Roman triumvirs had condemned Cicero to death. It is not possible for-me to hope for *any* favor, said he. I will leave Rome, and (will) cross the sea to Brutus' camp. Afterwards he said : I have so often saved my country, I will die in-it. He reached a country-house, and remained there some days. His people tried to take him thence (*en*), in order to save him. You have not time (for it), said he ; those who seek me *have* already arrived. I order you not to defend me ; save yourselves (*vous*) ; let (*laisser*) me die.

REVIEW XIII.

1. John had left his slate at home (*chez*) ; but the servant has brought it to him. 2. Why have you sold your books ? we shall not sell ours. 3. This poor woman has lost her husband and ( ) child. 4. Good morning, cousin ; has ( ) father been here ? 5. I have not seen your father ; I have been at grandmother's (*chez*) all the morning. 6. The white house is John's ; the red [one] is mine. Do you not admire its beauty ? 7. Yes ; but I do not admire the color of its doors and ( ) windows. 8. Every country has its beauties and its defects, which are often different from our own (= ours). 9. Why do you close your eyes ? have you lost your senses ? 10. The poor man who fell from the tree and broke his (*se*) arm, is an old (*ancien*) friend of mine. 11. The physician has cut-off *his* hand, but we hope that (*que*) he will save his arm. 12. That just man was our friend and protector ; he was very good to (*envers*) me and mine.

PARAPHRASE 8.

( ) Marshal de Turenne, [a] French general, was scrupulous in his probity towards ( ) rich and poor. One evening, as (*comme*) he was-returning late home, some robbers stopped his carriage. The marshal had a gold ring, of

much value, which they wished (*voulaient*) to-take from-him (*ind. obj.*). I will give you twenty louis, said he, if you leave me it. The robbers accepted this proposition. He will fulfil his promise, we doubt (of) it not, thought they; and they let him go. The next day one of them presents himself at Turenne's (*chez*) and asks to (*à*) see him. Have you forgotten your promise of ( ) last evening? whispered he to him. The marshal counted-out the money to him, and the robber departed in peace.

REVIEW XIV, a.

1. It is true that (*que*) this man, this woman, these children, deserve ( ) pity. 2. These hats are better than those, it is certain; but those are dearer than these. 3. Those who are content with (*de*) what they have are not poor. 4. The wars of Alexander and those of Cæsar are very famous: the former was the greater general, the latter was the greater man. 5. She who does not obey her mother is not a good girl. 6. He is not a good citizen who does not obey the laws. 7. Why do you speak always of this and ( ) that? it is a bad habit. 8. It *is* not always the richest that are the happiest. 9. Is he a lawyer or a doctor? Is that (*là*) a reasonable question? he is a Catholic priest. 10. Is it too late? Yes: it is six o'clock. That is enough: it (*that*) is too late. 11. What (*ce que*) we admire always in the letters of this author, is his simplicity. 12. It is impossible to finish these exercises before midnight. No! it is easy enough: it is you that are too lazy.

REVIEW XIV, b.

1. Let us arrange our papers and begin our exercises. 2. It is a good mother who rears well her children. 3. He is not a good citizen who does not pay his debts. 4. What (*que*) are you eating? We are eating ( ) apples. 5. Where are you taking (*mener*) those children? I am taking them to ( ) school. 6. I prefer this house to that; do you prefer that (one)? 7. When the teacher raises *his* hand, we place our books on the table. 8. The number of the enemies who threatened (*pl.*) this young king did not (*sing.*) discourage him. 9. The Swedes called Bernadotte, [a] French general, to the throne of their country. 10. The English possessed once a large part of ( ) France; now they possess an empire

in Asia. 11. Let us not afflict our friend : let us not announce to him this sad news. 12. Let us hope in (*en*) God : it is he that protects and will protect us always.

PARAPHRASE 9.

The young prince, much (*bien*) afflicted by (*de*) this refusal, began to despair of his good fortune. The next morning, being very unhappy, he arose and called his little dog. They went-down to the garden, where the dog led him to the river. He is-walking along and thinking always of his misfortune, when suddenly a voice calls him. A large carp swims to the edge of the water, and speaks to him thus: The ring which I shall throw you is that which the princess has lost. The carp sinks in the water, and a beautiful gold ring falls at the prince's feet. He carried it to the princess, and she refused him no longer.

REVIEW XV, a.

1. Who is it (*ce*) ? whom do you call ? It is I ; I am calling you. 2. From whom have you received this letter ? by whom was it brought ? 3. What have you in *your* hand ? Give it to me. 4. What is the price of these books ? What ! that is too much. 5. What beautiful flowers ! to whom will you give them ? 6. What more dreadful than ( ) war ! How-many men perish in war ! 7. Who are these men ? whence are they ? what do they ask ? 8. To which of your scholars will you give the prize ? Which of them all is the most diligent ? 9. What are the pleasures of this life ? What misfortunes (= how many) *have* happened in a single (*seul*) day ! 10. What-an idea ! I know (*sais*) not what you are speaking *of*. 11. Why do you speak so fast ? What troubles you so-much ? 12. How beautiful these books are ! whose are they ?

REVIEW XV, b.

1. Why do you grieve ? I grieve because all my friends *have* departed. 2. The sun is-rising ; let us hasten to get-up. 3. At what o'clock (*hour*) do you go-to-bed ? I go-to-bed at 11 o'clock : formerly I went to bed before 10 o'clock. 4. I rejoice that you are well. How is your (**108**, note) father ? (I) thank you ; father is very well. 5. Hasten ;

do not stop; the enemy (*pl.*) are approaching the town. 6. When do you take a walk? We take-a-walk [in] the evening; we do not walk in the morning. 7. Do not flatter yourself; do not boast; we are not mistaken. 8. He ridicules me; we shall fight, do not doubt (of) it. 9. The finest fruits are found in France; they *are sold* (or —one sells them) everywhere. 10. The report spreads that the armies are approaching each-other; we expect a battle. 11. I do not rely on that report; I think that you are mistaken. 12. Why does he not wash *his* hands? He is-washing (*se les*) them now. I am glad of-it.

PARAPHRASE 10.

The king's horse, which he loves so-much, is sick; he is very sorry *for-it*. He calls an officer: Bring me news of the horse every hour, no matter where I am, said he to the latter. I announce to your Majesty that the poor animal will die soon; it is impossible to save him. I assure you, I shall hang him who shall announce to me his death. Who will offer himself to (*pour*) brave the king's wrath?—that (*là*) is the question. The next day a young officer enters the king's chamber, and stops all-at-once. My horse, said the king; is (**76**) my horse dead? I think (that) he is (**82**). Sire, it is not I that have announced this news to you; it was yourself.

REVIEW XVI, a.

1. The letter which you have brought me is from the young man of whom we were speaking. 2. The servant by whose hands he had sent it had forgotten my address. 3. The lady whose money you have found lives with (*chez*) me; here-is the purse in which she had left it. 4. Tell me all that (which) you desire—all that ( ) afflicts you—all that you have need *of*. 5. ( ) Great souls ennoble ( ) misfortune by the courage with which they support it. 6. It (*ce*) is this river on whose banks the Romans gained their first victories. 7. This author has written (*écrit*) a history of the last war, which is very celebrated. 8. (He) who relies on ( ) woman is very (*bien*) foolish; this is what a French king said (*disait*). 9. Tell (*dites*) me what pleases (*plaît*) you; and I will tell (*dirai*) you what you are. 10. What is just is just; I will not ask you of what you

accuse me. 11. Have you answered ( ) the letter ( ) my father sent you? 12. What pleases me ( ) is the kindness with which our old friend and companion speaks to us.

REVIEW XVI, b.

1. The girls have taken a walk in the garden. 2. They would have amused themselves more, if they had (*imperf.*) taken a walk with us. 3. Have the children got up? have they dressed (themselves)? 4. The city has surrendered—all the soldiers have escaped. 5. We were mistaken; we had boasted too much of our first victories. 6. I had expected it; I have been much grieved at-it. 7. The moon has risen; the sun will soon have set. 8. Have the boys washed *their* hands? They have not washed them (**98**, *a*, note). 9. The two friends have seen each other; they have not yet spoken to each other. 10. The merchant had some fine jewels; my sister has bought (herself) some (*en*). 11. Have you seen also the beautiful books which she *has* bought? 12. If they had relied on what I told them, they would not have been mistaken.

PARAPHRASE 11.

The poor girls alighted from the cart which had brought them. Their clothes were covered with the mud into which they *had* fallen. Then they presented themselves at a house and were repelled from it (*en*). They were forced to withdraw by the threats of the woman at whose door they had sat-down. Then they started sadly towards a church which they saw (*voyaient*) before them, at a little ( ) distance. At least, said they to each other, they (*on*) will not drive us from it. They found the door shut, and remained long (time) in a most painful situation. Some boys gathered around them and insulted them without pity.

REVIEW XVII.

1. I was waiting-for some-one; but nobody has been here: I have seen nobody at all. 2. Have you found anything ( ) new in that book? Everybody is-speaking of it. 3. I have found nothing new in-it (*y*); but I have found something very amusing. 4. *People* are-talking much of ( ) war; *it is thought* that *we* shall soon have war. 5.

What is the price of each (one) of these books? ( ) One costs two francs, the other three. 6. Will you buy either of them? I will buy them both. 7. These two women are always talking of each other; one would think them foolish. 8. Not one of these children has been at ( ) school; I have seen some *of-them* in the street. 9. Have you ever seen such a man, with such a beautiful wife? 10. If we (*on*) neglect *our* affairs for the affairs of others, *we* shall lose all. 11. The whole city was abandoned; nobody remained; all had fled. 12. Let us finish another (= one more) sentence. Then nothing will remain.

PARAPHRASE 12.

There are some doubts to-day; there will be none (of them) to-morrow. What will happen this night? that is what one must know—what no-one yet knows. The people (*sing.*) have a little ( ) powder, but *they* have no arms. The powder has been all distributed; but we lack (*impers.*) guns. There is no time to lose; we must have guns, and more powder. We must go and-take them; that will be hazardous; no matter. The great day *has* arrived: before 9 o'clock, all the people are on [the] march. The Bastille is attacked; it will be taken. Such is the reward of ( ) faith.

REVIEW XVIII.

WRITE ALL NUMBERS IN WORDS.

1. Twice 8 is (*font*) 16; four times 8 is 32; ten times 8 is 80; twelve times 8 is 96. 2. In a bee-hive there are usually 50,000 cells. 3. At the beginning of the fourteenth century the streets of Paris were about three hundred. 4. The National Library at Paris has a million and [a] half ( ) volumes; the Royal Library at Dresden has four hundred and thirty thousand volumes. In 1805 Napoleon gained the battle of Austerlitz; in 1806 he beat the Prussians at Jena. 6. In 1876 was celebrated the 100th anniversary of ( ) American independence. 7. He arrived a half-hour too late, and remained two hours and a half. 8. In one day we have lost several *hundreds* of dollars. 9. You will find these lines in *Athalie*, *a* tragedy by Racine, a French poet, 4th act, 2d scene. 10. The fourth of 200 is 50;

and five times 50 is 250. 11. I am the eighteenth, my brother is the eleventh, in the class. 12. Let us consider firstly the causes, and lastly the consequences, of this conduct. (Let exercises in numerals be continued until the student can read French numbers at sight.)

PARAPHRASE 13.

Aosta is an interesting city, whose southern part is but little (*peu*) inhabited. The Romans built there some ramparts to serve as (*de*) protection to the city. In an old ruined castle, outside of the gate, it is said (*on*) that a count once murdered his wife. We doubt the authenticity of this anecdote, but many persons believe it true. There are also the ruins of a tower which is called the Ghost Tower (= of, etc.). Formerly, it is said, this tower was long haunted by the murdered wife. In dark nights, about midnight, she came-out [with] a lighted lamp in her hand. Many old women of Aosta have seen her; at least the people believed it.

REVIEW XIX.

1. Napoleon was named First Consul on the 13th of December, 1799. 2. On the 5th of May, 1789, Louis XVI opened the States-General. 3. I shall pay you [a] visit on Monday, the 1st of June. 4. Francis I, king of France, was taken prisoner February 24th, 1525, by Charles V, king of Spain and emperor of Germany. 5. This cloth is a yard and a-half wide; it sells (*reflex.*) [at] six dollars *a* yard. 6. In the third Punic war, the Carthaginians built a dike (of) 500 feet long, by (*sur*) 122 feet broad. 7. It was twenty minutes to one when I arrived. 8. The bell rings at 12 o'clock and at half-past six, and again at 12-at-night. 9. He has more than two sons—I think ( ) he ( ) has three; the eldest is at least 21 years old. 10. There were *a* hundred men killed, and more than five hundred wounded, in the last battle. 11. There are twenty of us in the class—we have a French lesson every other day, or three times *a* week. 12. We shall arrive in a week, and shall remain in (*à*) Charleston more than a fortnight, or until the first of ( ) next month.

PARAPHRASE 14.

In this tower, about twenty years ago, was lodged a leper, who lived there long alone. He saw no one, except a priest and those who twice a day brought his food; these procured for him all the comforts that were possible in his sad situation. In 1797 an Austrian officer, who happened to be at Aosta, entered by chance into the leper's garden. The latter was leaning (*reflex.*) against a tree, and seemed to be plunged in (a) deep thought. As the officer entered, he raised his head and made a sign with his hand: Whoever you are, cried he, stop! You must not advance further. You see (*voyez*) before you the most unfortunate of ( ) men: I am afflicted with leprosy.

REVIEW XX, a.

1. The prince spoke politely and frankly to those who had so suddenly announced to him this terrible news. 2. The fox is naturally cunning; one does not easily deceive him. 3. Your exercise is well written (*écrit*); but your sister's (= that of, etc.) is better written, and more carefully copied. 4. Speak loud—still louder—you always speak much too low. 5. The poor woman was wholly surprised by this news; she is still quite inconsolable. 6. I often think of (*à*) you; I vividly recall (*reflex.*) our last meeting. 7. The wind was blowing fast; the rain beat violently against the windows. 8. The-more you work, and the more willingly you work, the easier your task will be. 9. Those pupils advance ( ) most slowly: they are so (*tant*) stupid. 10. How beautiful that young mother is! how tenderly she loves her little children! 11. Perhaps I *was* wrong; at least you will confess that I am right now. 12. Hardly *had* you departed when this letter arrived; so I have sent it to you immediately.

REVIEW XX, b.

1. Have you ever seen any one ( ) more charming? Never. 2. Never have I seen a man happier *or* prouder than he. 3. If he does not arrive to-day, I shall wait-for him no longer. 4. We shall not finish more than this exercise before 3 o'clock, if we do not work more rapidly. 5. No, we

have only a-few pages more (*de plus*) ; only let-us-make-haste (*se hâter*). 6. Neither his brother nor his sister will (*pl.*) speak to him ; he dares not speak to them. 7. The earth can (*peut*) not suffer two suns, nor ( ) Asia two kings, said Alexander. 8. In order (*pour*) not to be poor when we (*on*) are old, we must (*faut*) not be idle when we are young. 9. It is a year and a half since we were (*have been*) in France : we remained there only three weeks. 10. Why will you not pardon him ? who would not pardon such an unhappy man ! 11. He is much taller than he was ; but he is not more reasonable than he was last year. 12. No one has helped me in my lesson, nor in my exercise either.

PARAPHRASE 15.

These flowers seem to me very beautiful. Shall I run any risk in carrying them home ? No. I have planted them only to see them ; I do not touch them at all. If I even touched them, I should never dare offer them to *any-one*. From this retreat you clearly see all that passes, and no one ever sees you. How tranquil it is ! I cannot admire it enough. How many ( ) years have you been (*pres.*) here ? It is fifteen years since I have been out of this garden. I have never known (*connu*) *either* parents *or* friends. How monotonous would be the story of such a life, for a man like you !—you, who have known only ( ) happiness. The world does not always give happiness. Perhaps I am not so fortunate as you think.

PARAPHRASE 16.

Nero could not conceal his vices from Seneca, who had once been his teacher. I will deliver myself, thought he, from so odious a censor. So (**181**, *c*) he sought an opportunity *to do so* (*en*). A conspiracy had been formed against Nero : Seneca was suspected of taking part in it (*y*). He was condemned to die : a centurion announced to him *this* (= of it—the) order. Seneca was not disturbed *by-it*. Give me my will, says he ; I will add *to it* something in favor of my absent friends. I refuse you *that* permission, said the centurion. I have only to (*à*) obey ( ) the order of the emperor. Well, said Seneca, I leave to my friends the example of my life—this (*ce*) is a good which cannot be (*on*) taken from-them. Open now my veins, and let me die ; it is all that ( ) remains for-me to (*à*) do.

REVIEW XXI.

1. To refuse what you have consented to (*à*) do, would be risking (= to risk) too much: it is dangerous to hesitate even. 2. Eating, drinking, sleeping are his favorite occupations; sometimes he amuses himself by (*à*) writing. 3. A teacher must (*doit*) punish the child who dares [to] disobey him. 4. Before accusing me you should (*devriez*) consult your own conscience, without listening to ( ) others. 5. These young ladies delight in (*à*) singing and playing; they are too happy to think of (*à*) studying. 6. He likes better [to] walk and amuse himself than *to* read or study. 7. You have let the occasion pass; it is now too late to speak. 8. The words which I have heard spoken by her (= heard her speak), I shall never forget (them). 9. I saw (have seen) the letter written and I (have) heard it read. 10. What! not dare [to] speak:—the accusation is not to *be denied*. 11. Have you heard her sing? She sang this morning the same song that I have often heard her sing before. 12. The shoes that I have had mended are not fit to wear: it would have been better (*mieux*) to buy (*en*) new [ones].

REVIEW XXII.

1. Both Mr. B. and his brother are here, but neither Mrs. B. nor her sister ( ) have arrived. 2. Some one has stolen my watch while I was absent. 3. Whether to-day or to-morrow, you will have to consent at-last. 4. So-long as I shall have ( ) money, and ( ) you need any, I will lend it to you willingly. 5. If you desire [to] be happy, love virtue; it is the only happiness ( ) to (*de*) be virtuous. 6. Have you heard whether he will remain at home, or whether he will pass the summer in France? 7. I hope to receive a letter from you soon, and that you will arrive in a-few days. 8. If the Romans were brave, they were wise also. 9. Were he the greatest of all warriors, he would not dare [to] disobey ( ) his king. 10. When you have committed (*commis*) a fault, and *when* you have frankly confessed it, you should (*on doit*) *be pardoned* (it). 11. What a beautiful country ( ) Switzerland [is]; and what [a] pleasure ( ) to pass a summer there (*y*).

PARAPHRASE 17.

Athalie, *the* daughter of Ahab and ( ) Jezabel, was queen of the kingdom of Judah, which she had usurped. Once, while she was enjoying a profound peace, she had a horrible dream, which interrupted her happiness. In the darkness of the night, her dead mother, clad in pompous robes, showed herself to her. The ghost bent (*reflex.*) towards the bed, and Athalie extended her arms to embrace it. But she found nothing but bones and mangled flesh—*a* horrible mixture, which dogs were devouring and dragging in the mud.

REVIEW XXIII, a.

1. The finest rainbows are in the afternoons of summer. 2. ( ) Humming-birds of the most brilliant colors are found in the forests of ( ) Brazil. 3. The Indians, bareheaded and barefooted, were armed only with (*de*, **40**) tomahawks. 4. The masterpieces of the Raphaels, the Titians, the Correggios have made ( ) Italy the dream-land of ( ) artists. 5. Spain is proud of (*de*) *having* produced the two Senecas. 6. My grandfathers and my grandmothers were all French. 7. Where shall we find now the Corneilles and ( ) Miltons of ( ) modern poetry? 8. In the dining-rooms, on all the railroads of France, one finds most excellent coffee with milk. 9. New-born children, abandoned by (*de*) their parents, are often received into the hospitals of ( ) large cities. 10. In the Te-Deums, sung on (*aux*) holidays, one often hears (*de*) very fine solos. 11. This bird has a long and pointed beak (= the beak long, etc.) and gray-brown feet. 12. ( ) Poverty and chains have been the wages of many great men—forerunners of the greatest discoveries.

REVIEW XXIII, b.

1. Let not the guilty escape;—let them be punished for their crimes. 2. May our enemies not triumph over us! may Heaven preserve us from such a fate! 3. Should I (*dussé-je*) lose all (that) I possess, God grant that I may never betray a friend. 4. The teacher desires that we be more attentive; he asked that we should finish our exercises before he left. 5. I beg that you will accompany us when we (shall) start. We desired that your brother should

be with us, but I regret that that (*ce*) is impossible. 6. Mr. B. is the dearest friend (that) I have ever had ; this is the last letter I (have) received from him before his death. 7. Is it true that war has already begun? it seems our friends have heard nothing of it. 8. Whatever you may think of it, I shall continue in my course. I fear no one, whoever he may be. 9. It is important that you answer (*à*) this letter to-day. It was impossible that it should arrive earlier. 10. I seek some one who shall give me a good counsel—a counsel that shall make me happy. 11. Order him to (= that, etc.) depart, in order that we may be quiet. 12. If it is (*fait*) good weather to-morrow, and ( ) your father does not forbid it, let's start at 8 o'clock.

REVIEW XXIV, a.

1. Do you doubt that he is my friend? 2. I do not deny that he is your friend, but I doubt that his advice is good. 3. Do you fear that your letters have been lost? 4. I do not fear that they are lost, but I fear they will not arrive in (*à*) time. 5. Let us not fear (*craignons*) that we shall not be victorious; our army will prevent the enemy (*pl.*) from approaching (*que*, etc.) the city. 6. Let no one speak or (*ni ne*) raise *his* head, until (*que—ne*) I have given him ( ) permission. 7. So far from obeying (*loin que*) me, he pretended that he had not heard me. 8. He lent me the money without (*sans que*) my asking *him for it* (**187**, *d*). 9. I will lend you my book, in order that (*pour que*) you may study your lesson, provided (that) you return it to me promptly. 10. Take care that you do not lose it (*or* not to (*de*) lose it); it would be impossible that I should find another copy (or, for-me to find, etc.) [*use both forms*]. 11. There is no one that does not believe that he is immortal, though he may deny that he believes it. 12. This exercise is too long for us to (*pour que*) finish it before midnight, unless we work very rapidly.

REVIEW XXIV, b.

IN LIEU OF PARAPHRASE 18.

1. Were he here, I should tell him what I think of his conduct. 2. However great a man may be, he is not superior to the laws. 3. It is just that a criminal be punished for

(*de*) his crimes, whoever he may be. 4. She is the dearest friend ( ) I have ever had; it is impossible that she [should] betray me. 5. I am astonished that you have not yet received my letter; is it possible that it is lost? 6. A thief deserves to be (*de*) punished (or, that one, etc.) [*use both forms*]. 7. The Romans sent ambassadors to consult the oracles, whether they should be (*cond.*) victorious or not. 8. Choose words which shall express clearly your thoughts, whatever they may be. 9. Ask the servant to (*de*) wait (or, that, etc.) until I have finished my letter. 10. It was impossible for him to wait (or, that he should wait) longer; the mail had to go (*il fallut que*) at 3 o'clock. 11. Although you seemed so cheerful, I still feared that you were not happy. 12. He hid the book for fear the teacher would find it before we should return.

REVIEW XXV.

1. I shall not go to ( ) school to-day; I am-going to see the play. 2. How goes that affair of which you spoke (*comp. pres.*) to me yesterday? 3. I am going to the post-office; my father sends me there. 4. Go (*sing.*) there as quick as possible; it is going to rain. 5. Why do you not go and see your sick friend? he has sent-for you. 6. It is impossible for-me to (*use que*, etc.) go; I shall send him a physician. 7. I should go and see him myself, if I (*en*) had the time; but I must (*que*, etc.) go away this morning. 8. My mother *has* gone to the city; we shall send the carriage for her this evening. 9. Come! I am going to tell you a pretty story. 10. It is about-to strike 3 (*les trois*); it is time to (*de nous*) go away. 11. Let us not go away yet; let us send word (*dire*) to the teacher that we are about to leave. 12. Go (away); I will listen-to thee no longer.

REVIEW XXVI, a (233).

1. The enemy are-assailing the bridge; the cavalry is-covering the retreat of our army. 2. The plot is discovered; the letters of the conspirators have been opened. 3. The general orders that the spy shall-suffer ( ) death. 4. You have suffered much; I offer you the assurance of my sympathy. 5. One gathers no roses without thorns. 6. We

(*on*) discover ( ) new beauties every day, if we open *our* eyes on the works of ( ) nature. 7. We trembled with (*de*) horror on (*en*) opening that letter. 8. Gather me [some] of these flowers, if you please. 9. Why are all these windows open? who has opened them? 10. Our soldiers have covered themselves with glory. 11. He listened to me [with] *his* mouth and ( ) eyes open. 12. Do not ask that we suffer such an outrage; we will never suffer it.

REVIEW XXVI, b (234).

1. Why do you shun us? we do not shun you. 2. We slept profoundly the whole night; we should still be-sleeping, if you had not awaked us. 3. If you repent sincerely of your fault, I consent to (*à*) pardon you [it]. 4. Let us not go-out yet; I never go out before 10 o'clock. 5. Bring me some boiling water; this water does not boil. 6. The whole army was fleeing before the enemy, while the general slept. 7. Who(ever) makes use (*se servir*) of an injustice, repents of it (*en*) soon. 8. A little girl, clothed in white, ran up to us (**187**, note). 9. Let us not flee; let us all run (run all) to his aid. 10. A wolf clothed himself in a sheep's skin and ran towards the flock. 11. Run quick; your birds are-escaping (*s'enfuir*) from the cage. 12. He came near falling; he was running so fast (**180**, *b*).

REVIEW XXVI, c (235-6).

1. Washington died in 1799; the same year Napoleon became First Consul. 2. No one acquires a great fortune without industry. 3. The Romans conquered Britain, but they did not hold it long. 4. The dead come back no more. 5. I have just read a very interesting book: come *and* see me, and I will lend it to you. 6. If you go to (*en*) France, when will you come back? 7. That will not depend on us. 8. One remembers ( ) past joys with (*avec*) a pleasure mingled with (*de*) regret. 9. While I was holding her by (*à*) the hand, he happened to arrive. 10. He has just suffered a great misfortune; his eldest daughter died yesterday. 11. Here lie those who have died for ( ) liberty. 12. Nay! I hate thee not—I have never hated thee, princess.

REVIEW XXVII, a (240).

1. We are preserving some cherries: has your mother preserved any this summer? 2. The Jews circumcised all ( ) male children the eighth day. 3. Let it (*que*, etc.) suffice that he has (*subj.*) said it; but let him say it no more. 4. That will not suffice; tell him exactly what I have told you. 5. Say it and resay it (101), if you please; but you contradict yourself always. 6. Do you predict that we shall have good weather to-morrow? 7. It is said (*on*) that there will be soon a great war in Europe: what do you say of it? 8. Curse not your enemies; bless them that curse you. 9. What are you reading there? I am reading *Athalie*, a tragedy by Racine. 10. He read the letter in a loud voice, and reread it, without *saying* a word. 11. He begged that I should (*subj.*) read your letter, but I had read it already. 12. Cleveland was elected President in 1884 (*write in words*) and re-elected in 1892.

REVIEW XXVII, b (241–3).

1. Why do you laugh? I am not laughing at you. 2. I was laughing at what (144) your brother was saying. 3. ( ) Fortune smiles upon the brave. 4. Who laughs (the) last, laughs best (*adv.*). 5. Are you writing your translation? I have written mine. 6. No. I have written it; let us now write our exercises. 7. I *have* often said to myself, Why do men (*on*) write so many books? 8. Prescribe to me my duty: that will suffice. 9. These roses are full (*tout*) blown; the others will open soon. 10. Such a man should be (*il faut que*) excluded from ( ) good society. 11. Read the letter here enclosed, and write me what you shall conclude to (*à*) do. 12. This sentence concludes the exercise; let us write or (= nor) read no more at present.

REVIEW XXVIII, a (244–5).

1. All roads lead to Rome. 2. The first steam-engines were constructed in England. 3. That great age produced many great men; but the world has produced only one Homer. 4. Instruct well your children in order that (*pour que*) they may conduct themselves well in life. 5. The greatest German writers have been translated into (*en*) English. 6. The Romans destroyed the city and recon-

structed it afterwards. 7. All the stars were shining in a clear sky. 8. His bad conduct has injured his reputation and will injure his friends also. 9. Your noise displeases me; hush, if you please. 10. If what I say does not please you, I must (*faut*) displease you. 11. She had long been silent; would God (214) that she had never spoken. 12. We translated the exercise, but the translation did not please the teacher; we must translate (*subj.*) it again.

REVIEW XXVIII, b (245–6).

1. What are you doing? I am doing my translation: have you done yours? 2. ( ) Careless scholars make mistakes even in the easiest exercises: what shall we do to (*pour*) prevent it? 3. Let him do his duty, whether (*soit que*) it please him or not: I shall do mine. 4. Have you had your grammar bound? Why have you not had it bound? 5. I should have it bound to-day, if it were (*faire*) good weather. 6. I have made him do it; punish me for it (*en*). 7. The general marched (made march) the army all ( ) night, though there was (*faire*) a terrible rain. 8. I have had (*me—reflex.*) this coat made by a French tailor; how does it please you? 9. What wine do you drink? I drink only ( ) red wine: let-us-drink a glass together. 10. Believing himself lost, he drank the fatal poison. 11. When one has drunk too much wine, one will believe everything. 12. If I believed all that ( ) you believe, it would make me very unhappy: don't you think so (it)?

REVIEW XXIX, a (248–9).

1. Do you not recognize me? I knew you at Paris, several years ago (158, note). 2. I should not have recognized you: you appear to me to be much older than you were then (185, *b*). 3. *Athalie* appeared in 1691; but people (*on*) did not at first recognize its (*en*) great merit. 4. The power of Rome grew during several centuries and then decreased. 5. In the morning, when the sun reappears, everything revives (*renaître*) and grows. 6. Napoleon was born in 1759: he and Wellington were born the same year. 7. Where were you born and when? I was born in ——, in the year ——. 8. Do not fear; we shall extinguish the fire before going-to-bed. 9. I fear ( ) you have painted that door too red. 10. I should fear his resentment if

pity did not constrain him. 11. The woman complained of her husband: she is always complaining of somebody or something. 12. This great writer joins simplicity to eloquence: the war is wonderfully depicted in his last book.

REVIEW XXIX, b (250–254).

1. These dresses are badly sewn; you must unstitch them and sew them again (*recoudre*). 2. With a sewing-machine one person sews more now in a day than several persons ( ) sewed formerly. 3. We always buy ground coffee; the merchant grinds it for us. 4. The mills of the gods grind slowly, but they grind well. 5. We have solved the majority of these questions; but I beg that you will solve me this [one]. 6. Justice would often absolve those whom the law puts into prison or even condemns to die. 7. Follow [thou] me; let us follow together the example of the good and ( ) wise. 8. A great battle resulted; our army pursued the conquered enemy more *than* three hours. 9. My father lived over (= more than) 80 years; his oldest brother is still living. 10. Our soldiers took the bridge and put the enemy to flight (*en fuite*); the inhabitants have submitted (*reflex.*). 11. She promised to write to me; but she has omitted (*de*) to do *so*. I am much surprised at-it. 12. If one does not learn in advance, one must learn by experience, that flattery conquers all those who submit to-it.

REVIEW XXX, a (256–8).

1. What news (*pl.*) have you received? I have received nothing. 2. I receive every day letters from my children. 3. He is deceiving her; she does not perceive (*reflex.*) it *at-all*. 4. The benefits that one has received from the father, one owes (them) to the son. 5. He has deceived us once; we ought never to believe him more. 6. How much do you owe him? If I owed him the least thing, I should pay it at once. 7. I *have to* write a letter; I *ought to have written* it sooner[1]. 8. I had to do it; and I shall have to do it more *than* once again[1]. 9. It was raining all ( ) night; I think ( ) it will rain again to-day. 10.

[1] See Appendix II.

This little key moves the whole machine. 11. Why are you so moved? What is it that moves you thus? 12. Everything moves (*reflex.*) in nature and in history; not to move (**123**) is to be dead.

REVIEW XXX, b (259–261).

1. This debt falls-due [on] the 10th; the first half of-it has already fallen due. 2. Many authors who are now read by all, will soon decline; we (*on*) shall see them quite forgotten. 3. I saw him killed before my eyes; never have I seen so sad a spectacle. 4. When shall we see each other (*reflex.*) again? 5. Prudence will foresee danger and provide the defence. 6. Nature provided him with (*de*) the greatest talents, but we have seen them destroyed (**190**). 7. There are the two young ladies whom I saw (have seen) enter your house this morning. 8. Does this coat fit me? It does not fit you; it will not suit you at all. 9. Why do you not sit down? I beg that all the company [will] sit down (*subj.*). 10. She was seated on a wooden bench; we seated ourselves beside her. 11. Seeing that this affair is ended, the court will adjourn soon. 12. Here-is the end of the exercise; sit down and let-us-see if we have made any mistakes. Well—we shall see!

REVIEW XXXI, a (262).

1. The game is not worth the candle; that is to (*à*) say, an affair is not worth what it costs. 2. All these things are worth nothing; (*de*) such motives shall not prevail over me. 3. It is better to be seated than to be standing (*debout*); to be lying down (*couché*) than to be seated; to be dead than to be lying down, said (*impf.*) a Persian sage. 4. Should you like-to learn to (*à*) dance? 5. I should like it well, but I do not believe that it is (*subj.*) worth the trouble. 6. I should like to find some one to (*qui*, etc.) teach me what I wish to know. 7. Please read this letter; you will see in it (*y*) what my friend wished me to do (*que*, etc.). 8. We did not wish (*comp. pres.*) to come, but we have had to (*falloir*). 9. The queen must know what the Parliament wishes. 10. Our friends had to leave yesterday; they would have liked to stay longer, but they could

not (it). 11. You have all that you need; what do you wish (*de*) more? 12. God grant that he [may] listen to you; he must come soon, or his children will have to suffer much.

REVIEW XXXI, b (262–3).

1. We could not go yesterday; perhaps we shall-be-able-to go to-morrow (181, *c*). 2. I neither can nor will do what he asks. 3. If I wished, I could not tell you all that I have heard of the affair. 4. What do you wish me to say (*que*, etc.)? I cannot deny what I know. 5. I could not *have gone* with you[1], though I had wished [to do] it. 6. Who does what he can, can (*fut.*) what he will: *may* you (214) never forget that. 7. Know that the king wills it; will you disobey him? 8. This child can learn nothing; he does not yet know [how to] read. 9. The poor man never knows what he must say. 10. Do you know what that means? I could not grant what you ask, if I wished (it). 11. To *know* a man and to *know* a truth are not the same thing in French, as they ( ) are in English. 12. I would (it), if I could, but I cannot: it is impossible—at least so far as I know.

[1] See Appendix II.

REMARK.—The foregoing groups of sentences are intended only as examples and indications for the review of grammatical forms and constructions under the several topics, and may be varied and extended at will by teachers. They may be used equally for written or oral exercises.

Paraphrases like the foregoing, from whatever text the student may be reading, may serve equally for composition or conversation.

APPENDIX.

I. ORDER OF WORDS—SUMMARY.

The Order of Words in French is, generally, the same as in English. The more important exceptions are here collated for convenient reference.

1. *The Noun.*

a. When subject of an interrogative verb (**75**).

b. When subject of a relative clause—often (**147**).

c. As indirect object—*always* with preposition (**32**, *b*)—follows direct object. See also below, 4, *c*.

2. *The Adjective.*

a. Frequently follows the noun (**59**).

b. Sometimes with change of sense (**60**).

3. *The Pronoun.*

a. As object, direct or indirect, precedes the verb (**79**).

b. Except the imperative affirmative (**80**).

c. In the position of interrogative subject (**75**, **181**, *c*).

d. For the order of pronoun objects, see **98**, **99**.*

4. *The Verb.*

a. For the interrogative position, see above, **3**, *c*.

b. For position in relative clause, see above, 1, *b*.

c. Two verbs, in immediate dependence, stand *together* (**190**)—the object (pronoun) preceding, or (noun) following, *both verbs*.

---

* The following arrangement may be useful:
Me, te, se, nous, vous precede all others.
Le, la, les precede **lui, leur**, which precede
Y, which precedes **en**.

5. *The Adverb.*

a. Not between subject and verb (**180**).

b. Emphatic position, introductory (**180, 181, c**).

c. Negative partly before, partly after verb—except infinitive (**77**).

6. *The Preposition.*

a. Position always just before its object (**132**, note).

b. Usually, with indirect noun object, follows direct object (**32, b**).

PHRASES AND CLAUSES.—The order of *phrases* is usually the same as in English—the simpler preceding the more complex. For *clauses*, see **147.**

ELLIPSIS is less usual than in English:

a. The preposition (**à**) is never omitted before indirect noun object (**32, b, 187**).

b. The relative **que** (**146**) and the connective **que** (*that*) are never omitted (**196, d**).

REPETITION—as in English—depends often on position or emphasis. Note:

a. The article, or possessive, must be repeated with each noun (**30, 106**). Likewise an adjective preceding (**65, d**).

b. Pronoun objects must be repeated with each verb (**100**).

c. The prepositions **de, à, en** must be repeated with each object; other prepositions usually not, unless for emphasis.

d. For double or repeated negatives, see **182.**

II. SOME AUXILIARY IDIOMS.

The defectiveness, and in part the ambiguity, of certain English verbs, *can, may, must, shall, will, ought,* etc., give rise to some auxiliary expressions—or verb phrases—which require special attention, with reference to such French verbs as **devoir, falloir, pouvoir, vouloir.** The following examples will illustrate:

a. A past or future will often require paraphrase in English; as:

je dois—devrais—écrire, *I must—should—ought to write*
j'ai dû—devrai—écrire, *I have had to—shall have to write*
je devais—aurais dû—écrire, *I had to write—ought to have written*
vous pourrez—pouviez—aller, *you will be able to go—could have gone*

b. Certain English forms are sometimes merely auxiliary; sometimes of distinct *verbal* force; as, *shall, will; should, would; may, might;* as:

you shall—should—go, **vous devez—devriez—aller**
he will not—would not—go, **il ne veut pas—ne voulait pas—aller**
may I—might I—go? **puis-je—pourrais-je—aller?** etc.

—in contrast with their uses as signs of future (*shall, will*); or of conditional (*should, would*); or of subjunctive (potential, *may, might*); as, *I read that I may learn,* etc.

c. The same English form may itself be *indicative* or *subjunctive* (conditional); as:

he could not—would not—go, when invited, **pouvait—voulait**
he could not—would not—go, if invited, **pourrait—voudrait**
etc. etc.

In almost all such cases, the difficulty (or "idiom") is really in the English, while the French form is more explicit and more nearly regular. In general, the sense may be made clear by using a circumlocution, as in the last example: *he was not able,* or *would not have been able,* etc.

III. TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERB FORMS.

The following Table gives the usual Model Verbs, showing only the *irregular forms*. The parts not given (———) are regular, according to the usual rules, from the "principal parts" (114). See also 226. Principal parts not given are regular from the infinitive—as in donner, finir, rompre (vendre)—oir forms being given in full, as irregular (except as 255, Rem. 3). The usual rules of orthography (8, Rem.) are presumed. For verbs here omitted, see Alphabetical List, p. 191.

INFINITIVE.	PRES. PART.	PAST PART.	PRESENT.	PRETERIT.	FUTURE.	PRES. SUBJ.
absoudre	absolvant	absous	absous	absolus	———	———
acquérir	acquérant	acquis	acquiers	acquis	acquerrai	acquière
aller	———	———	vais, vas, va[1] 3 pl. vont	———	irai	aille
asseoir	asseyant	assis	assieds	assis	assiérai	——(eie)
boire	buvant	bu	——— 3 pl. boivent	bus	———	boive
bouillir	bouillant	———	bous	———	———	———
circoncire	circoncisant	circoncis	———	circoncis	———	———
conclure	———	conclu	———	conclus	———	———
conduire	conduisant	conduit	———	conduisis	———	———
confire	confisant	confit	———	confis	———	———
connaître[2]	connaissant	connu	connais	connus	———	———
coudre	cousant	cousu	———	cousis	———	———
courir	courant	couru	cours	courus	courrai	———

[1] Imperat., va (94).

[2] Has î always before t.

TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERB FORMS—*Continued.*

INFINITIVE.	PRES. PART.	PAST PART.	PRESENT.	PRETERIT.	FUTURE.	PRES. SUBJ.
craindre	craignant	craint	crains	craignis	———	———
croire	——(y)—	cru	———	crus	———	——(oie)
croître	croissant	crû	croîs	crûs	———	———
cueillir	cueillant	———	cueille	———	cueillerai	———
dechoir	{ déchéant / déchoyant }	déchu	déchois	déchus	décherrai	déchoie
devoir	devant	dû (due)	dois 3 pl. doivent	dus	———	doive
dire[1]	disant	dit	——— 2 pl. dites	dis	———	———
dormir	dormant	———	dors	———	———	———
éclore	éclosant	éclos	éclos 3 sing. éclôt	———	éclôrai	
écrire	écrivant	écrit	———	écrivis	———	———
envoyer	———	———	——(oie)	———	enverrai	——(oie)
faillir	faillant	———		———		
faire	faisant	fait	——— 2 pl. faites 3 pl. font	fis	ferai	fasse
falloir		fallu	il faut	il fallut	il faudra	il faille
feindre	[see craindre]					
fuir	fuyant	———	———	———	———	——(uie)

gésir	gisant		gît			
haïr	———	———	hais-s-t[2]	———	———	———
joindre	[see craindre]					
lire	lisant	lu	——	lus	———	———
luire	luisant	lui	luis	[not used]	———	———
maudire	maudissant	[see 240, *e*]				
mettre	———	mis	mets (37, *a*)	mis	———	———
moudre	moulant	moulu	———	moulus	———	———
mourir	mourant	mort	meurs 3 pl. meurent	morus	mourrai	meure
mouvoir	mouvant	mu	meus 3 pl. meuvent	mus	———	meuve
naître[3]	naissant	né	nais	naquis	———	———
ouvrir	ouvrant	ouvert	ouvre	———	———	———
partir	[see dormir]					
plaire	plaisant	plu	———[4]	plus	———	———
pleuvoir	pleuvant	plu	il pleut	il plut	il ——	il ——
pourvoir	[see voir]	———	———	pourvus	pourvoirai	———
pouvoir	pouvant	pu	puis, peux 3 pl. peuvent	pus	pourrai	puisse
prendre	prenant	pris	——— 3 pl. prennent	pris	———	prenne (8, R.)

[1] For compounds, see 240, *e*. [2] Imperat. hais. [3] For î, see connaître. [4] 3 sing. il plaît.

TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERB FORMS—*Continued.*

INFINITIVE.	PRES. PART.	PAST PART.	PRESENT.	PRETERIT.	FUTURE.	PRES. SUBJ.
recevoir	recevant	reçu	reçois 3 pl. reçoivent	reçus	———	reçoive
résoudre	résolvant	résolu	résous	résolus	———	———
rire	———	ri	———	ris	———	———
savoir	sachant	su	sais	sus	saurai	sache[1]
servir	[see dormir]					
suffire	suffisant	suffi	———	suffis	———	———
suivre	———	suivi	suis-s-t	———	———	———
taire	taisant	tu	———	tus	———	———
tenir	tenant	tenu	tiens 8 pl. tiennent	tins	tiendrai	tienne
traire	——(y)——	trait	———	(not used)	———	——(aie)
vaincre	vainquant	———	(37, *a*)	vainquis	———	——(que)
valoir	valant	valu	vaux-x-t	valus	vaudrai	vaille
vêtir	vêtant	vêtu	vêts	———	———	———
vivre	———	vécu	vis	vécus	———	———
voir[2]	voyant	vu	vois	vis	verrai	——(oie)
vouloir	voulant	voulu	veux-x-t 8 pl. veulent	voulus	voudrai	veuille[3] pl. veuillons, etc.

[1] Imperat. **sache**, impf. **savais**. [2] For compounds, see 260. [3] Imperat. **veuille**, **veuillez**.

IV. INFINITIVE AFTER VERBS (191, R.).

I. The verbs followed by infinitive without preposition, though few in number, are of most frequent use. The most important are (189, *b*):

a. Verbs of *motion* (in English often connected by *and* [189, note]), as:

aller	envoyer	venir [1]
courir (accourir)	mener	revenir, etc.

b. Verbs of *feeling*, *thinking*, *wishing*, *saying* (*sentiendi et dicendi*), as:

assurer	s'imaginer	savoir
avouer	jurer [2]	sembler
compter	nier [2]	sentir
croire	paraître	souhaiter [2]
déclarer	penser [2]	soutenir
désirer [2]	prétendre [2]	témoigner
entendre	regarder	voir
espérer [2]	reconnaître	vouloir, etc.

c. The *quasi-auxiliaries*: *dare*, *let*, *make*, *must*, *ought*, etc., as:

devoir	falloir (faillir)	oser
faire	laisser	pouvoir

d. Verbs of *comparison*—with **de** before second infinitive, as:

aimer mieux	préférer
valoir mieux	(que de, *than to*)

—and the idiomatic **avoir beau**, *to try* (*do*) *in vain*.

II. Verbs followed by **de** with infinitive:

a. Impersonals, where the infinitive appears as logical subject (191, *c*); as:

il s'agit	il coûte	il sied
il convient	il importe	il suffit, etc.

---

[1] See Idioms, p. 171. [2] Also with **de**. [3] Also with **à**.

b. Verbs implying senses of **de**: *from, of;* or (*cause*), *for, at, with,* etc.

c. Other verbs, where the sense gives hardly any clue (**de**, *to*).

These, for convenient reference, will be grouped together:

absoudre
abstenir (s')
accuser
achever
affliger (s')
appartenir
applaudir (s')
appréhender
avertir
aviser (s')
blâmer
censurer
cesser
chagriner (se)
charger
choisir
commander
conjurer
conseiller
contenter (se)
convaincre
corriger
craindre
décourager
dédaigner
défendre
dépêcher (se)
désespérer
désoler (se)
détester
détourner
différer
dire
dispenser
dissuader
douter
efforcer (s')
effrayer (s')
empêcher
empresser (s')
enrager
entreprendre
étonner (s')
éviter
excuser
feindre
féliciter
finir
flatter
frémir
garder
gémir
hasarder
hâter (se)
imputer
indigner (s')
inspirer
jurer (de, *to*)
méditer
mêler (se)
menacer
mériter
moquer (se)
mourir
négliger
offrir
omettre
ordonner
oublier
pardonner
passer (se)
permettre
piquer (se)
plaindre (se)
prescrire
presser
présumer
prier
promettre
proposer
protester
punir
rappeler (se)
rebuter
recommander
redouter
refuser
regretter
réjouir (se)
remercier
repentir (se)
répondre
reprendre
réprimander
reprocher
rire
risquer
rougir
scandaliser (se)
sommer
souffrir
soupçonner
souvenir (se)
suggérer
supplier
tenter
trembler
vanter (se)

—and others of like meanings: see also I, *b*, and IV.

III. Verbs followed by **à** with infinitive:

a. Verbs implying senses of **à**—*to*, *for*, *in*, *by* (*object*, *effort*, *means*), etc.

b. Other verbs, where the sense gives no clue (as *c*, above). As:

abaisser (s')	**décider**	**parvenir**
accorder (s')	**déterminer**	**passer**
accoutumer	**disposer**	**pencher**
admettre	**divertir (se)**	**penser**
aider	**donner**	**persister**
aimer	**employer**	**plaire (se)**
amuser (s')	**encourager**	**porter**
animer	**engager**	**pousser**
appliquer (s')	**enseigner**	**préparer**
apprendre	**entendre (s')**	**prétendre**
aspirer	**entreprendre**	**provoquer**
attacher (s')	**étudier**	**réduire**
attendre	**exceller**	**renoncer**
autoriser	**exciter**	**répugner**
avoir	**exhorter**	**résoudre (se)**
balancer	**haïr**	**rester**
borner (se)	**hasarder (se)**	**réussir**
chercher	**hésiter**	**risquer**
concourir	**induire**	**servir**
condamner	**instruire**	**songer**
condescendre	**intéresser**	**tarder**
consentir	**inviter**	**tendre**
consister	**mettre (se)**	**tenir**
conspirer	**montrer**	**travailler**
consumer	**obstiner (se)**	**user**
contribuer	**offrir (s')**	**vouer**

—and other verbs of like meanings. See also I, *b*, and IV.

IV. A few verbs are used without preposition, or with **de** or **à**:

a. In different senses (see foregoing lists).

b. Variably (**de** or **à**) without marked difference. As:

commencer (de, à)	**désirer (—, de)**	**se hasarder (de, à)**
continuer (de, à)	**s'efforcer (de, à)**	**jurer (—, de)**
contraindre (de, à)	**espérer (—, de)**	**laisser (—, de, à)**
convier (de, à)	**essayer (de, à)**	**manquer (—, de, à)**
défier, (de, à)	**être (de, à)**	**nier (—, de)**
demander (de, à)	**forcer (de, à).**	**obliger (de, à)**

s'occuper (de, à)	**prétendre (—, à)**	**tâcher (de, à)**
oublier (de, à)	**résoudre (de, à)**	**tarder (de, à)**
penser (—, à)	**souhaiter (—, de)**	**venir (—, de, à)**

—For details, in these cases especially, see dictionary.

NOTE.—Such lists can be only relatively complete:—the above include all verbs of frequent occurrence. Other like cases must be determined by analogy of meaning, or by reference to a good dictionary. In general, in doubtful cases, preference may safely be given to **de**.

VOCABULARY—FRENCH-ENGLISH.

Introductory Note.

The most regular inflections are presumed to be known; irregularities and special forms are given, or are indicated by reference to the grammar. For all irregular verbs, see List (264);—the *precise form* is left for the student to determine.

In order to aid the student to associate together kindred forms, words from the same stem are usually grouped under a common title—without intention, however, of indicating in every case formal derivation, and with observance, so far as possible, of the alphabetical order.

Attention is called, also, to the use of the line —, to indicate not only (as usual) the title-word when repeated, but also the English word when identical, or nearly so, with its French equivalent. The object is, to secure early the attention of the student to the resemblances and differences of French and English word-forms. But—for beginners—this plan also is not carried beyond such cases as may be obvious.

The abbreviations and notations used are only such as are generally known.

A

A, à, to, at, in, for, with, from (187).
abandonner, to —, forsake.
ab-oi, *m.*, barking; **-oyer**, to bark.
abord, *m.*, approach; **d'—**, at first.
absolument, absolutely.
accabler, to overwhelm, crush.
accepter, to —, receive.
accident, *m.*, —, chance.
acclamer, to acclaim, applaud
accompagnateur, *m.*, accompanist.
accomplir, to —ish, perform.
accorder, to —, grant; **s'—**, to agree.
acheminer (s'), to start, proceed.
acheter, to buy (124).
act-e, *m.*, —, action; **-ion**, *f.*, —.
adieu, —, farewell.
admir-er, to —; **-able**, —, wonderful.
ador-er, to —; **able**, —.
affaire, *f.*, —, business.
affliger, to afflict; **s'—**, to grieve.
affreu-x -se, awful, dreadful.

afin de, in order to (*infin.*); — **que**, in order that (*subj.*).
âge *m.*, —, old —; **âgé**, —ed, old.
agir, to act, do.
agré-able, —, pleasant; **-ment**, *m.*, pleasure, comfort.
aider, to —, help.
aïeul, *m.*, grandfather; *pl.*, **aïeux**, ancestors.
aile, *f.*, wing.
aille (aller).
ailleurs, elsewhere; **d'—**, moreover, besides.
aim-er, to love; — **mieux**, to prefer; **-able**, —ly, amiable.
ainsi, so, thus; — **que**, as well as.
aise, *f.*, ease.
ajouter, to add.
allègement, *m.*, alleviation.
allemand, German; *also noun.*
Allemagne, *f.*, Germany.
aller, *irr.*, to go; to be about to (*infin.*); **s'en —**, to go away, be gone.
allumette, *f.*, match.
alors, then.
ambassadeur, *m.*, —or.
âme, *f.*, soul, heart.
amener, to bring, lead (124).
am-er -ère, bitter.
ami, *m.*, **-e**, *f.*, friend.
amitié, *f.*, friendship.
amour, *m.*, love, —; **-eu-x -se**, in love, —ous.
amus-er, to —; **s'—**, to — one's self, trifle; **-ant**, —ing.
an, *m.*, year.
analogie, *f.*, —y.
ancien -ne, ancient, old, former; *as noun*, elder.
anecdote, *f.*, —.
ange, *m.*, angel.
anglais, English; *also as noun.*
Angleterre, *f.*, England.
animal, *m.*, animal (33)
année, *f.*, year.
annoncer, to —, proclaim (126).
antique, —, ancient.
Aoste, Aosta (city).
apparence, *f.*, —.
appartement, *m.*, —, room.
appartenir, to belong (tenir).
appeler, to call, name (124); **s'—**, to be named.
apporter, to bring.
apprendre, *irr.*, to learn, teach, inform.
approcher, to approach; **s'— de**, to approach, come near.
approuver, to —, commend.
appuyer, to support, lean (125);
après, after; *adv.*, afterwards; **-midi**, *f.*, afternoon (206).
arbre, *m.*, tree.
arc-en-ciel, *m.*, rainbow (206).
argent, *m.*, silver, money.
arm-e, *f.*, weapon; *pl.*, arms; **-ée**, *f.*, army; **-er**, to —, cock (a gun).
arracher, to snatch, tear (**à**, from).
arrêt, *m.*, arrest, decree; **-er**, to arrest, (make) stop; **s'—**, to stop.
arriver, to —, happen, befall.
asseoir, *irr.*, to set; **s'—**, to sit (down).
assez, enough, quite.
assis (asseoir).
assister, to —; **à**, to attend
assurément, assuredly.
assurer, to —, to ensure.
attachement, *m.*, —.
attaqu-e, *f.*, —ck; **-er**, to—.
attarder, to delay.
attend-re, to wait, wait for; **s'— à**, to expect; **-ant que**, until.
attraper, to catch.
attrouper (s'), to flock, crowd.
au (= à le).
aucun, any; *with* **ne**, no (one).

aujourd'hui, to-day, now.
aumonier, *m.*, almoner.
aune, *m.*, ell.
auprès, near, about; — **de**, near (to), in comparison with.
aussi, so, also, as; . . . **que**, as . . . as; **-tôt**, immediately; — **que**, as soon as.
autant, so much, as much (many); —**que**, as much (far) as.
auteur, *m.*, author.
authenticité, *f.*,—**y**.
autour (**de**), about, around.
autre, other (**152**); **-ment**, —wise.
autrui, others, other people.
aux (=**à les**).
avancer, to advance (**126**).
avant, before; — **de** (**193**); — **que** (**223**); **-cour**, *f.*, front-court.
avare, avaricious.
avec, with.
aventure, *f.*, ad—
avenue, *f.*, —.
avertir, to warn, inform.
avis, *m.*, advice, opinion, notice.
avocat, *m.*, lawyer, ad—e.
avoir, *irr.*, to have (*idioms*, **86**; *auxil.*, **87–9**).

B

Bague, *f.*, ring.
baguette, wand, rod.
baiser, to kiss.
bal-s, *m.*, ball (dance).
balancer, to —, hesitate (**126**).
baptême, *m.*, —ism.
bas -se, base, low; *adv.*, low (voice); **-cour**, *f.*, poultry-yard.
Bastille, *f.*, (the) —.
bataille, *f.*, battle.
bâtir, to build.
battre, to beat, strike, clap (**37**, *a*); **se** —, to fight.
beau -x, **bel -le**, fine, beautiful, handsome (**54**); **la Belle**, the Beauty.
beau-frère, *m.*, brother-in-law (**206**).
beaucoup, much, many (**de**).
bel -le, *see* **beau**.
besogne, *f.*, business, work.
besoin, *m.*, need, want; **avoir** — **de**, to need, want.
bête, *f.*, beast, fool; *adj.*, foolish.
bibliothèque, *f.*, library.
bien, *m.*, good, wealth, benefit.
bien, *adv.*, well, very, indeed; much, many (**41**); **-fait**, *m.*, benefit, kindness; **-tôt**, soon.
bijou -x, *m.*, jewel.
billet, *m.*, ticket.
blâm-e, *m.*, —; **-able**, —; **-er**, to —.
blan-c -che, white.
blesser, to wound, hurt.
bleu -s, blue.
blond, —, fair; **-ine**, *f.*, a — girl.
boire, *irr.*, to drink.
bois, *m.*, wood, forest.
bon -ne, good; **-heur**, *m.*, good-fortune, happiness; **-homme**, *m.*, goodman; **-té**, *f.*, goodness, kindness.
bord, *m.*, edge, brink, shore.
botte, *f.*, boot.
boue, *f.*, mud, dirt.
bourgeonné, budded, pimpled.
bout, *m.*, end; **venir à** —, to succeed.
branler, to shake, wag.
bras, *m.*, arm.
brav-e, —, good; **-er**, to —, defy.
brillant, —, bright.
broche, *f.*, spit.
broderie, *f.*, embroidery.

bruit, *m.*, noise, rumor.
brun, brown.
bûcheron, *m.*, wood-cutter.
butte, *f.*, hill.
buvant (boire).

Ça (cela).
Cabriole, *m.*, Frisk.
cacher, to hide, conceal (**à**, from).
calamité, *f.*, —y.
campagne, *f.*, country.
canal, *m.*, —, channel (**33**).
canne, *f.*, —, stick.
cantatrice, *f.*, singer.
capable, —, able.
capitaine, *m.*, captain.
car, for.
carabine, *f.*, carbine.
caractère, *m.*, character.
caresser, to —.
carpe, *f.*, — (fish).
carré, square.
carte, *f.*, card, map.
casser, to break; **casse-tête**, *m.*, tomahawk (**206**).
cause, *f.*, —; **à — de**, on account of.
causer, to chat.
ce, *pron.*, that, it (**118**).
ce. cet -te, ces, *adj.*, that, this.
cela, *pron.*, that.
celle -s, *f.*, *of:* **celui, ceux**, that, that one, he, etc.; **-ci**; **— -là** (**120**).
censeur, *m.*, —or.
cent, a hundred; **-aine**, *f.*, (about) a hundred (**162**); **centurion**, *m.*, —.
cependant, meantime, however, yet.
cérémonie, *f.*, —y.
certain, — (**60**).
cesser, to cease.
ces, cet -te (ce).
ceux (celui).
chacun, each (one).
chair, *f.*, flesh.
chambre, *f.*, —, room; **femme de —**, chambermaid.
champ, *m.*, field; **sur le —**, on the spot, immediately.
changer, to — (**126**).
chanson, *f.*, song.
chanter, to sing, —.
chapeau -x, *m.*, hat.
chapelle, *f.*, —el.
chapitre, *m.*, chapter.
chaque, each, every.
charge, *f.*, —, office.
chariot, *m.*, cart, wagon, —.
charm-e, *m.*, —, spell; **-er**, to —; **-ant**, —ing, delightful.
chass-e, *f.*, —, hunt; **-er**, to —, drive off; **—eur**, *m.*, hunter.
châtain, chestnut (color).
château -x, *m.*, castle.
chef, *m.*, chief, head; **— -d'œuvre**, *f.*, masterpiece (**206**).
chemin, *m.*, way, road.
cher, chère, dear (**60**).
chercher, to seek, look for.
cheval, *m.*, horse (**33**).
cheveu -x, *m.*, hair.
chez, at (to) the house of, with, among; *in idiom*, at home, *or* home.
chien, *m.*, dog; **-ne**, *f.*, bitch.
chose, *f.*, thing.
chou-fleur, *m.*, cauliflower (**206**); **-rave**, *m.*, turnip-cabbage (**206**).
chrétien -ne, Christian.
chronique, *m.*, chronicle.
ciel, cieux, *m.*, heaven, sky (**209**).
cinq, five; **-uième**, fifth; **-uante**, fifty.
cité, *f.*, —y.
citron, *m.*, lemon.
climat, *m.*, —e.
cœur, *m.*, heart.

colère, *f.*, anger.
collet, *m.*, collar.
colonne, *f.*, column.
combat, *m.*, --, fight; **-tre**, to —.
combien, how much, how many (**de**), how.
comme, as, how, as if.
commenc-er, to —, begin (**126**); **-ement**, *m.*, —, beginning.
comment, how.
commun -e, common, ordinary.
compagnie, *f.*, —ny.
composé, compound.
compter, to count, intend.
comte, *m.*, count (title).
condamner, to condemn.
condition, *f.*, —.
confiance, *f.*, confidence.
conjugaison, *f.*, conjugation.
conjuration, *f.*, conspiracy.
connai-s -ssais, *from:*
connaître, *irr.*, to know, be acquainted with.
connu-s (connaître).
conseil, *m.*, counsel, advice.
consentir, *irr.*, to consent (**sentir**).
considérable, —, important.
consulter, to —.
contemporain, —ary.
content, —, satisfied.
contester, to —, dispute.
continuer, to —.
contre, against; **contraire**, contrary; **au** —, on the —.
contrée, *f.*, country.
corail, *m.*, coral.
cordelette, *f.*, cord, string.
corps, *m.*, body, —.
corriger, to correct (**126**).
côté, *m.*, side, direction; **du** — **de**, in the direction of.
cotret, *m.*, fagot.
coucher, to lay down; **se** —, to lie down, go to bed, set.
coucher, *m.*, setting (of sun).
couler, to flow, melt, sink.
couleur, *f.*, color.
coup, *m.*, blow, stroke, time; **tout à** —, all at once, suddenly.
coupé, *m.*, coach (railway).
couper, to cut, cut off.
cour, *f.*, court, court-yard.
courant, *from:*
courir, *irr.*, to run; **cours**, *m.*, course.
court, short, brief; **-vêtu**, in short dress.
cousin, *m.*, **-e**, *f.*, cousin.
couteau -x, *m.*, knife.
coutume, *f.*, custom.
couvert (couvrir); *as n.*, cover, plate.
craign-ant -ais, *from:*
craindre, *irr.*, to fear; **crainte**, *f.*, fear.
crier, to cry, cry out.
croire, *irr.*, to believe, think.
croiser, to cross, cruise.
croître, *irr.*, to grow.
cru -s (croire).
crû -s (croître).
cuillère, *f.*, spoon.
cuisinier, *m.*, cook.
curi-eu-x -se, —ous; **-osité**, *f.*, —ty.
cyprès, *m.*, cypress.

D

Dame, *f.*, —, lady.
danger, *m.*, —; **-eu-x -se**, —ous; **-sement**, —ly.
dans, in, within, into.
danser, to —ce.
dater, to —.
davantage, more.
de, from, of, with, in, by, on, as; than (*num.*); to (*infin.*).
déborder, to overflow.
debout, standing, up.
découverte, *f.*, discovery.

défaire, *irr.*, to defeat, undo (faire).
défendre, to —, forbid; **défense**, *f.*, —, prohibition.
dégénérer, to degenerate (124).
déjà, already.
délacer, to unlace.
délivrer, to —er, release.
demain, to-morrow.
demander, to —, ask (for).
demeurer, to live, stay.
demi, half (162).
dent, *f.*, tooth.
dépit, *m.*, spite, anger.
depuis, since, for; — **que**, since (198).
derni-er -ère, last, utmost (60).
derrière, behind; *as n.*, rear.
des (= de les).
dès, from, just at (time); — **que**, as soon as.
descendre, to —, come down, alight; **descente**, *f.*, —, alighting.
désespérer, to despair (124).
désir, *m.*, —, wish; **-er**, to —.
désobé-ir, to disobey (à); **-issant**, disobedient.
désol-er, to —ate; **-ation**, *f.*, —.
dessus, above, upon; **au — de**, above, beyond; **là- —**, thereupon, upon it.
détail -s, *m.*, —.
deux, two; **-ième**, second.
devant, before, in front of; *n.*, *m.*, front.
devers, towards, near.
devise, *f.*, device, motto.
devoir, *irr.*, to owe, be obliged, ought; *as n.*, duty.
dévorer, to devour.
diamant, *m.*, —ond.
Dieu, *m.*, God; **dieu -x**, god.
difficile, difficult.
dîner, to dine; *noun*, *m.*, dinner.
dire, *irr.*, to say, tell,
dis-ais (dire).
dit-es (dire).
discours, *m.*, —e, speech.
disputer, to —, contend.
distribuer, to —ute.
divin-e, —, godlike.
dix-huit, eighteen; **-ième**, —th.
doigt, *m.*, finger.
dois (devoir).
domestique, *m.*, —ic, servant.
don, *m.*, gift.
donjon, *m.*, —, prison.
donner, to give.
dont, of, from, with, in whom, which; whose (140).
dorer, to gild.
dormir, *irr.*, to sleep.
doucement (doux), softly, gently.
douleur, *f.*, pain, grief.
dout-e, *m.*, doubt; **-er**, to doubt; **se — de**, to suspect.
doux, douce, sweet, soft, gentle.
douze, twelve; **douzaine**, *f.*, dozen.
dragon, *m.*, —.
drap, *m.*, cloth.
droit, straight, right; *n.*, *m.*, justice, law.
du (= de le), **dû, due** (devoir).
durer, to en—, last.

E

Eau -x, *f.*, water.
écarter, to discard, remove; **s'—**, to wander, separate.
échapper, or **s'—**, to escape (à, from).
éclat, *m.*, outburst, splendor.
écol-e, *f.*, school; **-ier**, *m.*, **-ière**, *f.*, scholar.
écouter, to listen (to), hear.
écraser, to crush.
écrier (s'), to exclaim.
écrire, *irr.*, to write; **écrivain**, *m.*, writer, author,

écri-t -vis (écrire).
écurie, *f.*, stable.
édit, *m.*, edict.
effet, *m.*, effect, fact.
effrayer, to frighten (125).
égal, equal (35).
église, *f.*, church.
eh, ah!
élégance, *f.*, —.
élever, to raise, erect, rear (124).
éloigner, to remove; **s'—**, to retire.
éloquemment, eloquently (175).
embarras, *m.*, —ment; **-ser**, to —.
embrasser, to embrace.
empêcher, to hinder, prevent.
empereur, *m.*, —or.
employer, to employ, use.
emporter, to carry off, win.
empresser (s'), to hasten.
en, *prep.*, in, into, to, like; while, by, etc. (171).
en, *adv.*, thence, off; *pron.*, of it, them, its, their, some, etc. (91, 95).
enceinte, *f.*, enclosure, circuit.
enchant-er, to enchant; **-ement**, *m.*, —.
encore, yet, still, again; besides, more.
endormir (s'), *irr.*, to go to sleep (dormir).
endroit, *m.*, spot, place.
enfant, *m.*, *f.*, child.
enfin, at last, finally, in a word.
enfler, to inflate, swell.
enfoncer, to thrust, sink (124).
enjambée, *f.*, stride.
ennemi, *m.*, enemy; *adj.*, hostile.
ennuyeu-x -se, annoying, tiresome.
ensemble, together.
entendre, to hear, understand, intend.
enterrer, to inter, bury.
enti-er, entire, whole; **-èrement**, —ly.
entourer, to surround.
entre, between, among; **-lacer**, to interlace.
entrer, to enter.
enverrai (envoyer).
env-ie, *f.*, —, desire; **-ieu -x -se**, —ous.
environ, around, about; **environner**, to surround.
envoyer, *irr.*, to send.
épais -se, thick.
épargner, to spare, save.
épaule, *f.*, shoulder.
épée, *f.*, sword.
épine, *f.*, thorn.
épou-x, *m.*, husband; **-se**, *f.*, wife.
escalier, *m.*, staircase.
esclave, *m.*, *f.*, slave.
Espagne, *f.*, Spain.
espér-er, to hope (124); **-ance**, *f.*, hope; **espoir**, *m.*, hope.
esprit, *m.*, wit, intelligence, spirit, ghost.
essayer, to try (125).
essuyer, to wipe (125).
étang, *m.*, pond.
état, *m.*, state, condition; (the) State; **—s-Unis**, United States.
été, *m.*, summer.
étendre, to extend, stretch (out).
étonner, to astonish, astound.
étourdi, *part. adj.*, giddy, awkward.
être, to be (102, *auxil.* 104); **— à**, to belong to.
étudier, to study.
étui, *m.*, box, case.
eux, they, them; **-mêmes**, themselves.
évanou-ir (s'), to swoon, faint; **-issement**, *m.*, swoon.
éveiller, to awaken; **s'—**, to wake up.

éventail -s, *m.*, fan.
éviter, to avoid, shun.
excellent, —.
excepté, *part. prep.*, except.
exemple, *m.*, —, copy.
exprimer, to express.
extrait, *m.*, extract.

F

Face, *f.*, —.
fâcheu-x -se, disagreeable, grievous.
facile, easy; -ment, —ly.
fagot, *m.*, —.
faibl-e, weak, —; -esse, *f.*, —ness.
faim, *f.*, hunger; avoir —, to be hungry.
faire, *irr.*, to make, do, cause (191); — voir, to show.
faisan, *m.*, pheasant.
fait -es (faire).
falloir, *irr.*, to be necessary (158).
famille, *f.*, family.
fange, *f.*, dirt, mud.
fasse (faire).
faut, faudra (falloir).
faute, *f.*, fault, mistake.
faveur, *f.*, —or.
fée, *f.*, fairy.
femme, *f.*, woman, wife.
fenêtre, *f.*, window.
fer, *m.*, iron; *pl.*, chains.
ferai-s (faire).
fermer, to shut.
festin, *m.*, feast.
feu -x, *m.*, fire.
feuille, *f.*, leaf.
fier (se), to trust, rely on (à).
filer, to spin.
fille, *f.*, daughter, girl.
fils, *m.*, son, boy.
fin, *f.*, end; -ir, to finish, end.
fin, fine, keen, sharp.
fis (faire).
flamme, *f.*, —.
flatt-er, to —er: -eu -r -se, —ing; *as noun*, —erer.
fleur, *f.*, flower.
fleuve, *m.*, river.
foi, *f.*, faith.
fois, *f.*, time; à la —, at once.
fol -le (fou); -lement, foolishly, madly.
fond, *m*, bottom, depth, end.
fonder, to found.
font (faire).
forcer, to force (126).
forêt, *f.*, forest.
former, to —.
fort, strong, loud; *adv.*, very, much.
fortune, *f.*, —.
fou -s, fol -le, foolish, mad (54).
foudre, *f.*, thunderbolt.
fourchette, *f.*, fork.
fournir, to furnish.
fourré, *m.*, thicket.
foyer, *m.*, hearth, fireside.
frais, fraîche, fresh, cool.
franc, *m.*, — (coin).
fran-c -che, frank, free; -chement, —ly.
français, French; *also noun*.
frapper, to strike, knock.
frayeur, *f.*, fright, terror.
frémir, to shudder.
frère, *m.*, brother.
friser, to curl.
froid, cold; avoir —, to be cold.
frotter, to rub.
fruit, *m.*, —.
fumer, to smoke.
fureur, *f.*, fury, rage.
fuseau -x, *m.*, spindle.
fusil, *m.*, gun.

G

Gagner, to gain, win, reach.
galetas, *m.*, garret.
garçon, *m.*, boy, fellow.

garde, *f.*, guard, watch; *m.*, (a) guard; **-er**, to guard, keep; **se — de**, to keep from (take care not to).
garnir, to —ish, furnish.
général, *adj.*, —; *noun*, *m.*, — (33).
Génève, *f.*, Geneva.
genou -x, *m.*, knee.
gens, *m.*, *f.*, people, servants.
gentil -le, gentle, noble; **-homme**, —man.
geôlier, *m.*, jailer.
gibier, *m*, game.
glacer, to freeze (126).
gloire, *f*, glory.
goutte, *f.*, drop.
gouvernante, *f.*, governess.
grâce, *f.*, —, charm; *pl.*, thanks.
grammaire, *f.*, grammar.
grand, —, great, large, tall (60); **-ement**, —ly; **grand'-mère**, *f.*, grandmother (206).
grimper, to climb.
grommeller, to grumble.
gros -se, big, coarse.
guerr-e, *f.*, war; **-ier**, *m.*, warrior
Guillaume, *m.*, William.

H

(Marked ', when aspirate, 15, *d*).

Habiller, to dress.
habit, *m.*, coat; *pl.*, clothes; **-er**, to inhabit, live; **-ant**, *m.*, in—; **-ude**, *f.*, —.
'hache, *f.*, axe.
'haie, *f.*, hedge, row.
'haïr, to hate (236); **'haine**, *f.*, hate, hatred.
'hameau -x, *m.*, hamlet.
'hasard, *m.*, —, chance; **-er**, to —, risk; **-eu-x -se**, —ous.
'hât-e, *f.*, haste; **se —er**, to —en, make haste.
'haut -e, high, tall; loud; ***noun***, *m.*, height, top; **-ain**, haughty; **-eur**, *f.*, height, —.
'hautbois, *m.*, hautboy.
hélas, alas!
heure, *f.*, hour, o'clock; **de bonne —**, early.
heureu-x -se, happy, fortunate.
hier, yesterday.
histoire, *f.*, —ory.
homme, *m.*, man.
honneur, *m.*, honor; **fille d'—**, maid of —.
'hont-e, *f*, shame; **avoir —**, to be ashamed; **-eu-x -se**, —ful, ashamed.
horr-eur, *f.*, —or; **-ible**, —.
'hors, out (of), except.
hôtel, *m.*, —; **— -Dieu**, hospital (206).
'hottée, basketful.
'huit, eight (160).
humeur, *f.*, —or, temper.

I

Ici, here.
idée, *f.*, —ea.
ignorant, —.
illustre, —ious.
image, *f.*, —; **imagin-er (s')**, to —, think; **-able**, —.
imiter, to imitate.
impatienter (s'), to become —.
importer, to —, matter.
importun, —ate.
impossible, —.
improviste, unforeseen; **à l'—**, suddenly.
imprudemment, —ntly (175).
incarnat, carnation (color).
incertain, un—.
ingrat, ungrateful; *n.*, ingrate.
innocent, —, harmless.
insensiblement, —bly.
instant, *m.*, —, moment.
instrument, *m.*, —.

insulter, to —, abuse.
intéress-er, to interest; **s'—**, to be —ed; **-ant**, *adj.*, —ing; **intérêt**, *m.*, interest.
interrompre, to interrupt.
irai-s (aller).
Italie, *f.*, —y.

J

Jalousie, *f.*, jealousy.
jamais, ever, never (**182**).
jamb-e, *f.*, leg; **-on**, *m.*, ham.
jardin, *m.*, garden; **-ier**, *m.*, —er.
Jean, John.
jeter, to throw (away), cast, utter (**124**).
jeune, young; **jeunesse**, *f.*, youth.
joie, *f.*, —, delight.
joindre, *irr.*, to join.
joli, pretty.
joue, *f.*, cheek.
jouer, to play; **joujou -x**, *m.*, plaything.
jouir, to enjoy (**de**).
jour, *m.*, day, light, life; **-née**, *f.*, day.
joyeu-x -se, —ous; **-sement**, —ly, gladly (joie).
juger, to judge (**126**).
juillet, *m.*, July.
jurer, to swear.
jusqu'à, up to, to, till; — **ce que**, *conj.*, until.
juste, —; *adv.*, —, exactly.

L

Là, there (**121**).
lac, *m.*, lake.
laisser, to leave, let, cause (**190**), cease (**de**).
lambeau -x, *m.*, rag.
lampe, *f.*, —.
large, —, broad; **largeur**, *f.*, breadth, width.
larme, *f.*, tear.
latin, Latin.
laurier, *m.*, laurel.
laver, to —, wash.
leçon, *f.*, lesson.
legs, *m.*, legacy.
lendemain, *m.*, morrow, next day.
lent, slow; **-ement**, —ly.
lèpr-e, *f.*, leprosy; **-eu-x -se**, —ous; *as noun*, leper.
lequel, which (**128**, **141**).
lettre, *f.*, —er.
leur, (to) them; *poss.*, their; **le —**, theirs.
lever, to lift, raise (**124**); **se —**, to rise, get up.
lévite, Levite.
lèvre, *f.*, lip.
libre, free.
lieu -x, *m.*, place, —.
lieue, *f.*, league.
lièvre, *m.*, hare.
lire, *irr.*, to read.
lit, *m.*, bed.
livre, *m.*, book.
livre, *f.*, pound.
livrer, to deliver.
loger, to lodge (**126**).
loin, far, afar; — **que** (*subj.*), far from (**223**).
Londres, *m.*, London.
long -ue, long; *n.*, length; **le — de**, along; **-temps**, long (time); **-ueur**, *f.*, length.
lors, then; **lorsque**, when.
louer, to praise.
loup, *m.*, wolf.
lu -s (lire).
lui, he, him; (to) him (her); **-même**, himself.
lumineu-x -se, —ous.
lunette, *f.*, telescope; *pl.* **209**

M

Ma (mon); **madame**, *f.*, —, Mrs.; **mademoiselle**, *f.*, young lady, Miss (**206**).

magnifique, —icent; **-ment**, —ly.
main, *f.*, hand.
maintenant, now.
mais, but.
maison, *f.*, house.
maître-e, *m.*, master, teacher; **-esse**, *f.*, mistress, sweetheart.
majesté, *f.*, —y.
mal, *m.* (33), evil, hurt, harm.
mal, *adv.*, ill, badly (179); **malheur**, *m.*, misfortune; **-eu-x -se**, unfortunate, unhappy; **-sement**, —ly.
malade, sick; *n.*, patient.
maltraiter, to mistreat, abuse.
manger, to eat (126).
manière, *f.*, manner.
manquer, to miss, fail, lack.
marbre, *m.*, marble.
marchand, *m.*, merchant.
march-e, *f.*, —, walk; **-er**, to —, walk.
mardi, *m.*, Tuesday.
marier, to marry; **se** — (137).
marmiton, *m.*, scullion.
marraine, *f.*, godmother.
martyre, *m.*, martyrdom.
massif -ve, —ve.
matin, *m*, morning.
mâtin, *m*, mastiff.
mauvais, bad (63).
maux (mal).
méchant, wicked, bad.
méde-cin, *m.*, physician; **-cine**, *f.*, —.
méditation, *f.*, —.
meilleur, better; **le** —, the best (63).
mélange, *m.*, mixture.
membre, *m.*, —er, limb.
même, self, very; **le** —, the same; *adv.*, even.
menac-e, *f.*, —, threat; **-er**, to — (126).
mener, to lead, conduct (124).
menteur, *m.*, liar; *as adj.*, lying, false.
mépriser, to despise.
mer, *f.*, sea.
mère, *f.*, mother.
méri-dien, *m.*, —an; **-ional**, southern.
mériter, to —, deserve.
mes (mon).
métier, *m.*, trade.
mètre, *m.*, —, meter.
mettre, *irr.*, to put, put on; **se** —, to begin (à, to).
meuble(s), *m.*, movables, furniture.
meurtrir, to bruise, mangle.
midi, *m.*, noon.
mien -ne, mine.
mieux, better; **le** —, the best (179).
militaire, —ary; *n.*, soldier, officer.
mille, a thousand; *noun*, *m.*, mile (160).
minuit, *m.*, midnight.
miroir, *m.*, mirror.
mis (mettre).
mode, *m.*, mood; *f.*, manner, fashion.
moi, I, me; **-même**, myself.
moindre, less; **le** —, the least (63); **moins**, *adv.*, less; **le** —, the least (63); **du** —, at least; **à** — **que**, unless (223).
mois, *m.*, month.
moitié, *f.*, half.
moment, *m.*, —.
mon (ma, mes), my.
monde, *m.*, world, people; **tout le** —, everybody.
monotone, —ous.
monsieur, *m.*, gentleman, sir, Mr. (206).
monter, to mount, go up (stairs).
montrer, to show; **montre**, *f.*, watch.
monument, *m.*, —.

moquer (se), to jest; — **de**, to ridicule.
mordienne, zounds!
mort, *f.*, death.
mort (mourir), dead, died.
mot, *m.*, word.
moulin, *m.*, mill.
mourir, *irr.*, to die.
mourrai -s (mourir).
moyen, *m.*, means.
mûr, ripe; **-ir**, to —en.
museau -x, *m.*, muzzle, nose.

N

Nager, to swim (126).
nain, *m.*, dwarf.
nation, *f.*, —.
nature, *f.*, —.
ne, not; *not trans.* (185).
né (naître), born.
néanmoins, nevertheless.
nécessaire, —ary.
neige, *f.*, snow.
neuf, nine.
neveu -x, nephew.
nez, *m.*, nose.
ni, neither; ... **ni**, ... nor (195).
nièce, *f.*, —.
nier, to deny.
noble, —.
noir, black, dark.
nom, *m.*, name.
nombre, *m.*, number.
nommer, to name, call.
non, no; — **plus**, neither.
nord, *m.*, north.
nos (notre).
notre, nos, our; **nôtre**, ours.
nouveau -x, -vel -le, new (54); *noun*, **-velle(s)**, *f.*, news.
nu, naked; **-pieds**, barefooted.
nuit, *f.*, night.
nul -le, no, not any; **-lement**, not at all.

O

Obé-ir, to obey (**à**); **-issant**, obedient.
occasion, *f.*, —.
occident, *m.*, —, west.
occuper, to —y; **s'—**, to busy one's self.
odieu-x -se, —ous.
œil, *m.*, *pl.*, **yeux**, eye (209).
œuf, *m.*, egg.
officier, *m.*, —cer.
offr-e, *m.*, offer; **-ir**, *irr.*, to offer.
ogre, *m.*, —.
oiseau -x, *m.*, bird.
ombre, *f.*, shade, shadow, ghost.
on (l'on), one, we, they, etc.; *or passive* (153).
oncle, *m.*, un—.
onze, eleven (22).
opéra, *m.*, —.
opinion, *f.*, —.
or, *m.*, gold.
orange, *f.*, —.
ordinaire, —ary; **-ment**, —ly.
ordonner, to order (**à**).
ordre, *m.*, —er, rank.
oreille, *f.*, ear.
os, *m.*, bone.
oser, to dare.
otage, *m.*, hostage.
ôter, to take off, take away (**à**, from).
ou, or; ... **ou**, either ... or.
où, where, when (146); **d'—**, whence.
oublier, to forget.
oui, yes.
ouïr, to hear.
outre, beyond, besides; — **que**, — that.
ouvert (ouvrir); *adj.*, open.
ouvrage, *m.*, work.
ouvrir, *irr.* to open.

P

Page, *m.*, — (boy).
page, *f.*, — (of book).

pain, *m.*, bread.
paix, *f.*, peace.
palais, *m.*, —ace.
palefrenier, *m.*, groom.
papier, *m.*, —er.
par, through, by, over; **-ce que**, because; **-tout**, everywhere.
parais-sais, *from:*
paraître, *irr.*, to appear, seem.
parc, *m.*, —k.
pardienne, zounds!
pardonner, to — (**à**).
parent, *m.*, —, kinsman.
parer, to deck, adorn.
parfait, perfect; **-ement**, —ly.
parler, to speak.
parole, *f.*, word, speech.
pars (partir).
partie, *f.*, part.
partir, *irr.*, to set out, start, go.
partout (*see* **par**).
pas, *m.*, step; *neg.*, not; — **de**, no, not any.
pass-er, to pass, surpass; **se —**, to happen; **-age**, *m.*, —, way; **-é**, *adj.*, past, last; *noun*, *m.*, the past.
patrie, *f.*, (one's) country.
pauvre, poor (**60**); **-ment**, —ly; **-té**, *f.*, poverty.
paver, to —.
payer, to pay, pay for (**125**)
pays, *m.*, country; — **-Bas**, Netherlands; **-an -ne**, country-man (-woman).
peine, ., —, penalty, trouble; **à —**, hardly.
peinture, *f.*, painting.
pendant, during, for; — **que**, while.
pendre, to hang.
pénible, painful.
penser, to think (**à**, **de**, of).
percer, to pierce (**126**).
perdre, to lose, destroy, ruin.
perdrix, *f.*, partridge.
père, *m.*, father.
perfection, *f.*, —.
périr, to —ish, die.
permettre, *irr.*, to permit, allow.
permission, *f.*, —.
persécuter, to —.
personne, *f.*, —; *m.*, any one, no one (**151**).
persuader, to —.
petit, little, small; **-maître**, *m.*, fop; **-fils**, *m.*, grandson.
peu, little, few (**de**); **un —**, a little (**de**).
peuple, *m.*, people.
peur, *f*, fear; **avoir —**, to be afraid; **de — de**, **que**, for fear of, that.
peut (pouvoir); — **-être**, perhaps.
pièce, *f.*, piece.
pied, *m.*, foot; **valet de —**, footman.
pierre, *f.*, stone, rock.
piquet, *m.*, stake, picket.
pire, *adj.*, worse (**63**); **pis**, *adv.*, worse (**179**).
pitié, *f.*, pity.
place, *f.*, —, square.
plaire, *irr.*, to please (**à**); **plaisance**, *f.*, pleasure; **plaisir**, *m.*, pleasure.
planter, to —.
plein -e, full.
pleurer, to weep.
plonger, to plunge (**126**).
pluie, *f.*, rain.
plume, *f.*, pen.
pluriel, *m.*, plural.
plus, more, the more (**180**); no more (**182**); **ne . . .**, no longer; **non —**, neither; **le —**, (the) most; **au —**, at most.
plu -s (plaire).
plusieurs, several.
plutôt rather.
poche, *f.*, pocket.
poil, *m.*, hair (animal).

point, *m.*, —; *neg.*, not (at all).
poire, *f.*, pear.
pomme, *f.*, apple.
pompeusement, —ously.
populaire, —ar.
porte, *f.*, gate, door.
porter, to carry, bear, wear; **se** —, to be (health).
poser, to place, put down.
post-scriptum, *m.*, — (**34**).
pot, *m.*, —.
poudre, *f.*, powder.
pour, for, on account of; *infin.*, in order to; — **que** (*subj.*), in order that; **pourquoi**, why; **pourtant**, however.
pourrai -s (pouvoir).
pourvu (pourvoir) **que**, provided that.
pousser, to push, drive, impel.
pouvoir, *irr.*, to be able, can, may; **se** —, to be possible; *noun*, *m.*, power.
prairie, *f.*, —, meadow.
pré, *m.*, meadow.
précaution, *f.*, —.
précéder, to precede (**124**).
précepteur, *m.*, —or.
précipiter, —tate, hurry; **se** —, to rush.
précis, precise, exact.
prédiction, *f.*, —.
préférer, to prefer (**124**).
premi-er -ère, first.
préparatif, *m.*, preparation.
près (**de**), near (to).
présent, —; **à** —, at —, now; **-er**, to —.
préserver, to —.
presser, to —, urge, crowd; **se** —, to hasten.
prêt, ready (**à**, to, for).
prêter, to lend.
prêtre, *m.*, priest.
prévoyant (prévoir), provident, prudent.
prier, to pray, beg, invite.
princ-e, *m.*, —; **-esse**, *f.*, —.
printemps, *m.*, spring (time).
pris (prendre).
prix, *m.*, price, prize.
prochain, near, next.
proche, near; — **de**, — (to).
procurer, to —.
produit, *m.*, product.
profond, —, deep; **-ément**, —ly; **-eur**, *f.*, depth.
promener, to lead; **se** —, to walk, take a walk (**124**).
promettre, to promise (mettre).
prompt, —; **-ement**, —ly.
pronom, *m.*, pronoun.
prospérité, *f.*, —ty.
provision, *f.*, —.
pu -s (pouvoir).
publier, to publish.
puis (pouvoir).
puis, then; **puisque**, since, as.
puiss-ant, powerful; **-ance**, *f.*, power.
punir, to —ish.

Q

Qualité, *f.*, —ty.
quand, when, though.
quantité, *f.*, —ty.
quart, *m.*, quarter, fourth (part).
quatre, four; **-ième**, fourth.
que, *pron.*, whom, which, that, what; *adv.*, than, as, how; *conj.*, that, as, when; *or not trans.* (**196**); **ne . . .**, only.
quel -le, which, what; **quel que**, whatever.
quelconque, whatsoever.
quelque, some; *pl.*, a few; *adv.*, however; **quelqu'un**, somebody, some one.
quenouille, *f.*, distaff.
quereller, to quarrel, scold.
qui, who, which, that; whoever.
quinze, fifteen; **-ième**, —th.

quitter, to —, leave.
quoi, what; **quoi que**, whatever.
quoique, although.

R

Rabattre, to beat down, lower.
raconter, to relate, tell.
rafraîchir, to refresh.
raison, *f.*, reason, right; **avoir — (86)**; **raisonnable**, —.
rang, *m.*, —k, row, turn; **ranger**, to —, arrange (**126**).
rapprocher (se), to draw near, approach (**de**).
rare, —; **-ment**, —ly, seldom.
rassurer, to reassure, assure.
ravage, *m.*, —, ruin.
rayon, *m.*, ray.
rebattu, worn out.
recevoir, *irr.*, to receive.
reçois (recevoir).
récolter, to gather, harvest.
récompense, *f.*, —, reward.
reconnaître, *irr.*, to recognize; **reconnaissance**, *f.*, gratitude.
reçu-s (recevoir).
redevable, indebted.
réduit, *m.*, retreat, nook.
réfléchir, to reflect.
réflexion, *f.*, —ction.
refus, *m.*, —al; **-er**, to —, reject.
regard, *m.*, —, look; **-er**, to —, look at.
règle, *f.*, rule.
règne, *m.*, reign; **régner**, to — (**124**).
regret, *m.*, —; **-ter**, to —.
reine, *f.*, queen.
rejeter, to reject, throw back (**124**).
rejoignis, *from:*
rejoindre, *irr.*, to rejoin, meet.
remarquable, —.
remède, *m.*, —y.
remettre, to replace (**mettre**).
rempart, *m.*, rampart.
remplir, to fill, fulfil.
rencontre, *f.*, meeting, occurrence; **-er**, to meet, meet with.
rendre, to —, restore, return, make; **se —**, to surrender, go.
rentrer, to re enter, return.
renverser, to overturn, overthrow.
répandre, to spread, shed; **se —**, to spread.
réparer, to repair, mend.
repentir (se), *irr.*, to repent (**de**, of); *as noun*, *m.*, repentance.
répéter, to repeat (**124**).
répondre, to respond, answer (**à**).
repos, *m.*, —e, rest.
reprendre, *irr.*, to retake, resume, reply.
repris (reprendre).
reproche, *m.*, reproach.
réserver, to reserve, keep.
résolu-s, *from*:
résoudre, *irr.*, to resolve, solve; **se —**, to resolve, determine.
respirer, to respire, breathe.
resplendissant, *part. adj.*, resplendent.
ressembler, to resemble (**à**).
ressortir, *m.*, to go out again.
reste, *m.*, rest, remainder; **de —**, over, remaining.
rester, to remain, stay.
retarder, to delay, go slow.
retour, *m.*, return.
retraite, *f.*, retreat.
réussir, to succeed.
réveiller, to awake; **se —**, to wake up.
revenir, *irr.*, to come back, return, recover; **revenant**, *part. noun*, *m.*, ghost (**venir**).
revue, *f.*, review.
riche, —; **richesse**, *f.*, —es.

rideau-x, *m.*, curtain.
rien, anything, nothing (151).
risque, *m.*, —k; **-quer**, to —.
rivière, *f.*, river.
robe, *f.*, —, dress.
roi, *m.*, king.
romain, Roman.
ronce, *f.*, briar.
ronfler, to snore.
rose, *f.*, —.
rossignol, *m.*, nightingale.
rouge, red; **rougir**, to grow —, blush.
rubis, *m.*, —y.
rue, *f.*, street.
ruine, *f.*, —.

Sa (son).
sabbat, *m.*, —th, revel.
sachant (savoir).
sage, —, wise, modest, good; **sagesse**, *f.*, wisdom, modesty, goodness.
sais (savoir).
salle, *f.*, hall; — **des gardes**, guard-room.
salon, *m.*, —oon, parlor.
sang, *m.*, blood.
sans, without, but for.
sauter, to leap.
sauvage, savage, wild; *also n.*
sauver, to save.
savoir, *irr.*, to know, know how (to).
secours, *m.*, succor, aid.
secr-et, **-ète**, —.
seize, sixteen.
selon, according to; — **que**, — as.
semaine, *f.*, week.
sembl-er, to seem; **-able**, similar, like (à).
semer, to sow (124).
sentence, *f.*, —.
sentier, *m.*, path.
sentir, *irr.*, to feel, smell.
sept, seven.
serv-ir, *irr.*, to serve, be of use; **se** — **de**, to make use of, use; **-ice**, *m.*, —.
ses (son).
seul, alone, only, single; **-ement**, only.
si, *conj.*, if, whether.
si, *adv.*, so, as.
siècle, *m*, century, age.
sien -ne, his, hers, its, one's.
signe, *m.*, —.
silence, *m.*, —.
simple, —; **ment**, —ly, merely.
sire, *m.*, — (title).
situation, *f.*, —
six, —.
sœur, *f.*, sister.
soi, *reflex.*, one's self.
soie, *f.*, silk.
soigneusement (soigneux), carefully.
soin, *m.*, care; **avoir** —, to take care.
soir, *m.*, evening.
soit (**que**), whether . . . or (whether).
solaire, —ar.
soldat, *m.*, soldier.
soleil, *m.*, sun.
solitaire, —ary; *also noun.*
solo, *m.*, —.
sombre, —, dark.
sommeil, *m.*, sleep; **avoir** —, to be sleepy.
son (**sa**, **ses**), his, hers, its, one's.
song-e, *m.*, dream; **-er**, to —, think (126).
sonner, to sound, ring.
sorcier, *m.*, sorcerer.
sort, *m.*, fate, lot.
sorte, *f.*, —, kind, manner; **de** — **que**, so that.
sortir, *irr.*, to go (come) out, issue.
souffrir, *irr.*, to suffer, permit.
soupçonner, to suspect.
souper, to sup.

sous, under.
souvenir (se), *irr.*, to remember (**de**).
souvent, often.
souverain, *m.*, sovereign; *also adj.*
souvins (souvenir).
spectacle, *m.*, —, show, play.
stoïque, stoic.
subitement, suddenly.
sud, *m.*, south.
suis (être *or* suivre).
suisse, *m.*, Swiss, doorkeeper.
suite, *f.*, succession, sequel.
suivre, *irr.*, to follow.
sujet, *m.*, subject.
sur, upon, on, over, near.
surnom, *m.*, surname (additional).
surprendre, *irr.*, to surprise.
surpris (surprendre).
survivre, *irr.*, to survive (**à**).
su-s (savoir).
susceptible, —, capable.

T

Table, *f.*, —.
tableau -x, *m.*, picture, —.
tâcher, to try.
taire (se), *irr.*, to be silent, hush.
talent, *m.*, —.
tant, so much, so many (**de**), so; — **que**, as long as.
tante, *f.*, aunt.
tapisserie, *f.*, tapestry.
tard, late.
tarir, to dry up.
tasse, *f.*, cup.
Te Deum, *m.*, — (**34**).
teint, *m.*, tint, complexion.
tel -le, such (**155**).
témoigner, to testify.
tempe, *f.*, temple (head).
temple, *m.*, —.
temps, *m.*, time, weather.
tendre, —er.
tendre, to stretch.
tenir, *irr.*, to hold, keep (**235**).
terminer, to —ate.
terre, *f.*, earth, ground, land.
terrible, —.
testament, *m.*, —, will.
tête, *f.*, head.
théâtre, *m.*, —.
thème, *m.*, —, exercise.
timbre-poste, *m.*, postage-stamp (**206**).
tirer, to draw, take (off), shoot.
tomber, to fall.
tome, *m.*, —, volume.
tort, *m.*, wrong; **avoir** —, to be —.
tortue, *f.*, tortoise.
tôt, soon.
toucher, to — (*sometimes* **à**).
toujours, always, ever.
tour, *m.*, turn, trick.
tour, *f.*, tower.
tourner, to turn; **se** —, to — (round).
tout, tous, every, all, (the) whole (**154**); *as noun*, *m.*, everything, all; *adv.*, all, quite; very (**177**); — **à coup**, suddenly; — **à fait**, quite; **pas du** —, not at all.
tradition, *f.*, —.
trahir, to betray.
traîner, to drag, draw.
tranquille, —il, quiet.
trav-ail -aux, *m.*, work, labor; **-ailler**, to work, labor.
traversée, *f.*, crossing, passage.
traverser, to —, cross.
trembler, to —.
trente, thirty.
très, very, very much.
triste, sad; **-ment**, —ly.
trois, three; **-ième**, third.
tromper, to deceive; **se** —, to be mistaken.
trop, too, too much, too many (**de**).

trotter, to —.
trouble, *m.*, —; **-er**, to —, disturb.
trouver, to find; **se —**, to be.
tuer, to kill.
tuteur, *m.*, —or.

U

Un, one, an, a; **les uns**, some; **unique**, —, only; **unir**, to unite.
us-er, to use (up), wear out; **-age**, *m.*, —, use.
utile, useful.

V

Va-s (aller).
vaillant, —, brave.
vainqueur, *m.*, conqueror.
vais (aller).
vaisseau-x, *m.*, vessel, ship.
valet, *m.*, —, servant.
val-oir, *irr.*, to be worth, be; **-eur**, *f.*, —or, value, worth.
vapeur, *f.*, —or, steam.
vécu (vivre).
veille, *f.*, vigil, eve (before).
veine, *f.*, —.
vendre, to sell.
venger, to avenge, revenge (126).
venir, *irr.*, to come; *with infin.* (235, *c*).
vent, *m.*, wind.
vérité, *f.*, —y, truth.
vermeil -le, vermilion (red).
verrai -s (voir).
verre, *m.*, glass.
vers, towards.
vertu, *f.*, virtue.
viande, *f.*, meat, food.
vice, *m.*, —.
victoire, *f.*, —ory.
vie, *f.*, life.
vieil -le (vieux); *noun*, *f.*, old woman; **vieillesse**, *f.*, old age.
vien -s -drai (venir).
vieux, vieil -le, old (54).
vif, vive, alive, lively, quick.
ville, *f.*, city.
vin, *m.*, wine.
vingt, twenty.
vins (venir).
violon, *m.*, —in.
vis (vivre *or* voir).
visage, *m.*, —, face.
visite, *f.*, —.
vite, fast, swift(ly).
vivre, *irr.*, to live.
voici, see here, here is (are) (81).
voilà, see there, there is (are) (81).
voir, *irr.*, to see.
voisin, *m.*, **-e**, *f.*, neighbor; *also adj.*
voiture, *f.*, carriage.
voix, *f.*, voice.
vol-er, to steal, rob; **-eur**, *m.*, thief, robber.
volontiers, voluntarily, willingly.
vont (aller).
vos (votre).
votre, vos, your; **vôtre**, yours.
vouloir, *irr.*, to wish, will, be willing; *as noun*, *m.*, will, wish.
voyage, *m.*, —, journey.
voyager, to travel.
vrai, true; **-ment**, —ly, indeed.
vu (voir).
vue, *f.*, sight, view.

Y

Y, *adv.*, there, thither; *pron.*, at, to it, them (93); **y avoir** (158, *b*).
yeux (œil).

VOCABULARY—ENGLISH-FRENCH.

As in the French-English Vocabulary, related words are frequently grouped under a common title; but here, to avoid possible mistake, the line — is used only where the equivalent words are quite identical, and in a few other obvious cases. The article (**32**, note) is generally used to show gender. The parts of speech are distinguished only in cases of possible ambiguity. The general rules of inflection are presumed to be known; others are indicated by references. All irregular verbs may be found in the List (**264**).

A

A, an, un; *idioms* (**30**); (= each, **29, 166**); **-other**, un autre, encore un (**152**).
abandon, abandonner.
able, capable (de); **to be — to**, pouvoir, *irr.*
about, environ, (concerning) sur; **— to**, *see* aller.
above, *adv.*, dessus; *prep.*, au dessus de, sur; (more than), plus de.
absent, —.
absolve, absoudre, *irr.*
accompany, accompagner.
accuse, accuser; **-ation**, une —.
acquire, acquérir, *irr.*
act (to), agir; *n.*, un acte; **-ion**, une —; **-ive**, actif (**50**).
address, une adresse.
adjourn, surseoir, *irr.*
admire, admirer.
advance (to), avancer, s'—; **in —**, d'avance.
advice, un conseil; **advise**, conseiller.
affair, une affaire.
afflict, affliger.
afraid (to be), avoir peur.
after, *adv.*, *prep.*, après (infin. **193**, *c*); *conj.*, après que; **-noon**, une après-midi; **-wards**, après, ensuite.
again, encore.
against, contre.
age (person), âge, *m.*; (time), le siècle; **-ed**, âgé.
ago, il y a (**158**, *b*).
agreeable, agréable.
Ahab, Achab.
aid, aide, *f.*; to —, aider.
Alexander, —dre.
all, tout, *pl.*, tous (**154**); *adv.* (**177**); **at —**, du tout.
alone, seul; *adv.*, —ement.
along, au long, en avant; *prep.*, le long de.
already, déjà.
also, aussi.
although, quoique, bien que (**223**).
always, toujours.
ambassador, un —eur.

America, l'Amérique, *f.*
amuse, amuser; **-ing**, —ant.
ancestor, un aïeul (**33**, *d*).
ancient, ancien -ne.
and, et; (go) **and**, etc., *tr. by infin.*
animal, un — (**33**).
annivers-ary, un —aire.
announce, annoncer (**126**).
answer (to), répondre (à); *n.*, une réponse.
any, *adj.*, quelque, aucun, *or partitive* (**39**); *pron.*, en (**91**); **-body**, **-one**, quelqu'un, personne; **-thing**, quelque chose, rien (**151**).
appear, paraître, *irr.*
apple, une pomme.
approach, s'approcher (de).
arm (limb), le bras; (weapon), une arme; **to** —, armer.
army, une armée.
around, *adv.*, autour; *prep.*, autour de.
arrange, ranger, arranger (**126**).
arrive, arriver (*être*).
artist, un artiste.
as, comme; **as . . . as**, aussi . . . que.
ashamed, honteux (**50**); **to be** —, avoir honte.
Asia, l'Asie, *f.*
ask, demander (**of**, **for**, **187**, *d*), (= beg, invite) prier (**to**, de).
assail, assaillir, *irr.*
assure, assurer; **-ance**, une —.
astonish, étonner; **-ing**, —ant.
at, à, dans, en; — **home**, chez (moi, lui, etc.).
attentive, attentif (**50**).
aunt, la tante.
Austria, l'Autriche, *f.*; **-an**, —ien (**51**).
author, un auteur.
awake, éveiller; *intrans.*, s'—.

B

Back (come), revenir, *irr.*, retourner (both *être*).
bad, mauvais, méchant; **-ly**, mal.
ball, la balle; (dance) le bal -s.
bank (river), le bord.
bare, nu; **-footed**, nu-pieds, pieds nus; **-headed**, nu-tête, tête nue.
base, bas (**51**).
battle, la bataille.
be, être, *irr.*; *idioms* (be cold, etc.), avoir (**86**); (health), se porter; (weather), faire, *irr.*; **there is, are** (**81**, **158**).
beak, le bec.
beat, battre (**37**, *a*).
beautiful, beau (**54**); **-ty**, la beauté; (person) la Belle.
because, parce que.
become, devenir *irr.* (être); (suit), seoir, *irr.* (à).
bed, le lit; **to go to** —, se coucher.
bee, une abeille; **-hive**, la ruche.
before (time), avant (*infin.* de); *adv.*, auparavant; *conj.*, avant que; (place), devant.
beg, prier (**to**, de).
begin, commencer (**to**, à, **126**), se mettre (à); **-ing**, le commencement.
believe, croire, *irr.*
bell, la cloche.
below, sous, au dessous de; *adv.*, dessous.
bench, le banc.
bend, plier, fléchir; *intr.*, se —, se pencher.
benefit, le bienfait.
beside, auprès de, à côté de.
besides, *prep.*, hors, excepté; *adv.*, d'ailleurs.
best, *see* better.

betray, trahir.
better, **best**, *adj.*, meilleur, le —; *adv*, mieux, le —.
bind, attacher, (a book) relier.
bird, un oiseau (**33**).
bitter, amer (**51**).
bless, bénir.
blind, aveugle.
blow, souffler, (flower) éclore, *irr.*
boast, se vanter (de).
boil, bouillir, *irr.*; *tr.*, faire —.
book, le livre.
born (to be), naître, *irr.* (*être; idioms*, **248**).
both, l'un et l'autre, tous (les) deux; *conj.*, — . . . **and**, et . . . et.
bottle, la bouteille.
bouquet, le —.
brave, —; **to** —, braver.
Brazil, le Brésil; **in** —, au —.
bread, le pain.
break, rompre, casser.
bridge, le pont.
brilliant, brillant.
bring, apporter.
Britain, la Bretagne.
broad, large, de largeur.
brother, le frère; — **-in-law**, beau-frère (**206**).
build, bâtir, construire, *irr.*
but, **mais**; *adv.* (= only), ne . . . que.
butter, le beurre.
buy, acheter (**124**).
by, par, de (**164**), à; *with pres. part.*, en (**171**).

C

Cæsar, César.
cage, la —.
call, appeler (**124**. *b*), nommer.
can, *forms of* pouvoir, *irr.*; savoir, *irr.*
candle, la chandelle.
capital (city), la capitale.
care, le soin; **to take** —, avoir soin; **to take care not to**, se garder de; **-ful**, **-ly**, soigneu-x, -sement; **-less**, négligent.
carriage, la voiture, le carrosse.
carry, porter.
Carthaginian, carthaginois.
cat, le chat.
Catholic, catholique.
cause, la —, la raison.
cavalry, la cavallerie.
cease, cesser (**to**, de; **184**).
celebrate, célébrer (**124**, *b*); **-ed**, célèbre.
cell, la cellule.
century, le siècle.
certain, — (**60**).
chain, la chaîne; **-s** (irons), les fers.
charm, charmer; **-ing**, —ant.
cheerful, joyeux (**50**), gai.
cherry, la cerise.
child, enfant, *m.*, *f.*
choose, choisir.
circumcise, circoncire, *irr.*
citizen, le citoyen.
city, la ville.
clad, vêtu (vêtir, *irr.*).
class, la classe.
clear, clair; **-ly**, —ement.
clock, un horloge; **o'—**, heure(s).
close, fermer, clore, *irr.*
cloth, le drap.
clothe, vêtir, *irr.*; *reflex.*, se —, se revêtir.
coat, un habit.
coffee, le café.
cold, froid; **to be** —, avoir —; (weather), faire — (**158**).
color, la couleur.
come, venir, *irr.* (*être*; infin. idioms, **235**); **come!** allons; — **back**, revenir, *irr.* (*être*); — **near**, faillir de (*infin.*); — **out**, sortir, *irr.* (*être*).
commit, commettre, *irr.*

companion [illegible]
complain, se plaindre, *irr.*
conclude, conclure, *irr.*
condemn, condamner.
conduct [illegible], conduire, *irr.*; *n.*, la conduite.
confess, confesser.
conquer, conquérir, *irr.*; (defeat), vaincre, *irr.*
conscience, la —.
consent, consentir, *irr.*
consequence, la suite.
consider, considérer (124).
conspirator, le —eur.
constrain, contraindre, *irr.*
construct, construire, *irr.*
consul, le —.
consult, consulter.
contented, content (de).
continue, continuer (to, à).
contradict, contredire, *irr.*
copy (to), copier; *n.*, la copie, (of book), un exemplaire.
corn (Indian), le maïs.
Corregio, le Corrège (*with the art.*).
correct, corriger (126).
cost, coûter.
could, *forms of* pouvoir, *irr.*
counsel, le conseil.
country, le pays, (native) la patrie, (not town) la campagne.
courage, le —
course, le cours, la —.
court, la cour.
cousin, le —, la —e.
cover, couvrir, *irr.* (**with**, de).
crime, le —; **-inal**, —inel; *or n.*
cruel, — (51); **-ly**, —lement.
cunning, *adj.*, rusé, fin.
curse (to), maudire, *irr.*
cut, couper; — **off**, couper.

D

Dance (to), danser; *n.*, la danse.
danger, le —; **-ous**, —eux.
dare, oser 124.
dark, obscur, —sombre, —té, *f.*
daughter, la fille. **-in-law**, belle-fille.
day, le jour. **-s**, les jours, la vie; **-break**, le point du jour.
dead, mort, décédé.
dear, cher 69.
death, la mort.
debt, la dette.
deceive, décevoir, *irr.*, tromper.
decline, déchoir, *irr.* (*être*).
decrease, décroître, *irr.*
defect, le défaut.
defend, défendre; **defense**, la —.
delight, enchanter; *intr.*, se plaire, *irr.* (in, à).
deny, nier (222).
depart, partir, *irr.* (*être*).
depend, dépendre (on, de), tenir, *irr.* (à).
depict, dépeindre, *irr.*
descend, descendre (*être*); **descent**, la descente.
deserve, mériter (de, to).
desire, désirer; *n.*, le désir (de).
destroy, détruire, *irr.*
die, mourir, *irr.* (*être*).
different, différent (de).
difficult, difficile.
dike, la digue.
diligent, —.
dine, dîner; **-ing-room**, salle à manger.
disappear, disparaître, *irr.*
discourage, décourager (126).
discover, découvrir, *irr.*; **-y**, la découverte.
disobey, désobéir (à); **-obedient**, désobéissant.
displease, déplaire (à).
do, faire, *irr.*; (health) se porter.
doctor, le —eur, médecin.
dog, le chien.
dollar, le —.
door, la porte.

[illegible] (to), [illegible] 288. 2. [illegible] [illegible].
[illegible] [illegible] [illegible].
[illegible] [illegible] 69.
[illegible] (to), [illegible] 285; 2. [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible].
[illegible] [illegible] [illegible].
[illegible] [illegible] [illegible].
[illegible] [illegible] [illegible].
[illegible] [illegible] [illegible].
[illegible] [illegible] [illegible].

E

Each, chaque; [illegible], [illegible] — other, l'un l'autre 288, se 136, d.
early, de bonne heure.
earth, la terre.
easy, facile; -ly —ness.
eat, manger 129.
egg, un œuf.
eight, huit; -th, -fold, -fty, -teen, -ty quatre-vingts.
either, l'un ou l'autre 182 conj., ou . . . ou ne.
elder, ainé.
eldest, aîné.
elect, élire, irr.
eleven, onze 169.
Elisa, Élise.
eloquence, —, f.; —ent, —. -ly, éloquemment, avec éloquence.
empire, un —.
enclosed, inclus (243).
end (to), finir; n., la fin.
enemy, un ennemi, (the) les ennemis.
England, l'Angleterre, f.
English, anglais.
enjoy, jouir (de); (one's self) se réjouir (de).
ennoble, ennoblir.
[illegible], [illegible] —.
[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] —[illegible] irr.
[illegible], s'[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] à [illegible].
[illegible] [illegible] [illegible].
[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [

companion, le compagnon.
complain, se plaindre, *irr.*
conclude, conclure, *irr.*
condemn, condamner.
conduct (to), conduire, *irr.*; *n.*, la conduite.
confess, confesser.
conquer, conquérir, *irr.*; (defeat) vaincre, *irr.*
conscience, la —.
consent, consentir, *irr.*
consequence, la suite.
consider, considérer (**124**).
conspirator, le —eur.
constrain, contraindre, *irr.*
construct, construire, *irr.*
consul, le —.
consult, consulter.
content(ed), content (de).
continue, continuer (**to**, à).
contradict, contredire, *irr.*
copy (to), copier; *n.*, la copie, (of book) un exemplaire.
corn (Indian), le maïs.
Corregio, le Corrège (*with the art.*).
correct, corriger (**126**).
cost, coûter.
could, *forms of* pouvoir, *irr.*
counsel, le conseil.
country, le pays, (native) la patrie, (not town) la campagne.
courage, le —
course, le cours, la —.
court, la cour.
cousin, le —, la —e.
cover, couvrir, *irr.* (**with**, de).
crime, le —; **-inal**, —inel; *or n.*
cruel, — (**51**); **-ly**, —lement.
cunning, *adj.*, rusé, fin.
curse (to), maudire, *irr.*
cut, couper; — **off**, couper.

D

Dance (to), danser; *n.*, la danse.
danger, le —; **-ous**, —eux.
dare, oser (**184**).
dark, obscur; **-ness**, —ité, *f.*
daughter, la fille. [journée.
day, le jour, (continuous) la
dead, mort (mourir).
dear, cher (**60**).
death, la mort.
debt, la dette.
deceive, décevoir, *irr.*, tromper.
decline, déchoir, *irr.* (*être*).
decrease, décroître, *irr.*
defect, le défaut.
defend, défendre; **defense**, la —.
delight, enchanter; *intr.*, se plaire, *irr.* (**in**, à).
deny, nier (**222**).
depart, partir, *irr.* (*être*).
depend, dépendre(**on**, de), **tenir**, *irr.* (à).
depict, dépeindre, *irr.*
descend, descendre (*être*); **descent**, la descente.
deserve, mériter (**de**, to).
desire, désirer; *n.*, le désir (de).
destroy, détruire, *irr.*
die, mourir, *irr.* (*être*).
different, différent (de).
difficult, difficile.
dike, la digue.
diligent, —.
dine, dîner; **-ing-room**, salle à manger.
disappear, disparaître, *irr.*
discourage, décourager (**126**).
discover, découvrir, *irr.*; **-y**, la découverte.
disobey, désobéir (à); **-obedient**, désobéissant.
displease, déplaire (à).
do, faire, *irr.*; (health) se porter.
doctor, le —eur, médecin.
dog, le chien.
dollar, le —.
door, la porte.

doubt (to), douter (**222**); *n.*, le doute.
dozen, la douzaine (de).
dreadful, affreux (**50**).
dream (to), songer (**126**); *n.*, le songe, rêve; **-land**, le pays des rêves.
Dresden, la Dresde.
dress, habiller, vêtir, *irr.*; *intr.* as reflex.; *n.*, la robe, les habits, *m.*
drink, boire, *irr.*
due, dû (devoir).
dumb, muet (**51**).
during, pendant.
duty, le devoir.

E

Each, chaque; (one), chacun; — **other**, l'un l'autre (**152**), se (**136**, *d*).
early, de bonne heure.
earth, la terre.
easy, facile; **-ly**, —ment.
eat, manger (**126**).
egg, un œuf.
eight, huit; **-th**, —ième; **-ty**, quatre-vingt(s).
either, l'un ou l'autre (**152**); *conj.*, ou . . . ou (or).
elder, **eldest**, aîné.
elect, élire, *irr.*
eleven, onze (**160**).
Eliza, Élise.
eloquence, —, *f.*; —ent, —; **-ly**, éloquemment, avec éloquence.
empire, un —.
enclosed, inclus (**243**).
end (to), finir; *n.*, la fin.
enemy, un ennemi, (the) les ennemis.
England, l'Angleterre, *f.*
English, anglais.
enjoy, jouir (de); (one's self) se réjouir (de).
ennoble, ennoblir.
enough, assez (de).
enter, entrer (dans—*usually être*).
escape, s'échapper (de, *place;* à, *danger*).
Europe, l'Europe, *f.*
even, *adv.*, même.
evening, le soir, (continuous) la soirée.
ever, jamais, (always) toujours.
every, chaque, tout (**154**); **-body**, **-one**, tout le monde; **-thing**, tout; **-where**, partout.
exact, —; **-ly**, —ement, juste.
example, un exemple.
excellent, —.
exclude, exclure, *irr.*
exercise, (theme) le thème.
expect, attendre, s'attendre à.
experience, —, *f.*
express (to), exprimer; *adj.*, exprès.
extinguish, éteindre, *irr.*
eye, un œil (**33**, *d*).

F

Faithful, fidèle; **-ly**, —ment.
fall (to), tomber (*être*); — **due**, échoir, *irr.* (*être*).
famous, fameux (**50**), célèbre.
fan, un éventail -s.
far (*adv.*), loin (de); — **from** -ing, loin de (*infin.*), loin que (*subj.*); **so** — **as**, tant que.
fast (firm), ferme; (speed) vite (**176**).
fatal, —, *pl.*, -s.
fate, le sort.
father, le père.
fault, la faute.
favorite, favori (**52**).
fear (to), craindre, *irr.* (**222**, *b*); *n.*, la crainte, peur; **for** — **of**, **that**, de crainte (peur) de (*infin.*), que (*subj.*).

few, peu (de); **a** —, quelques (uns, **150**).
fif-teen, quinze; **-th**, cinquième.
fight, combattre, **se battre** (**37**, *a*).
find, trouver; **be found**, se trouver.
fine, beau (**54**).
finish, finir.
first, premier, (*in comp.*) unième; *adv.* (**-ly**), premièrement; **at** —, d'abord.
fit, *adj.*, propre (**à**); *v.*, seoir, *irr.* (**à**).
flatter, flatter; **-y**, la —ie.
flee, fuir, (away) s'enfuir, *irr.*
flock, le troupeau (**33**).
flower, la fleur.
follow, suivre, *irr.*
foolish, fou (**54**).
foot, le pied; **on** —, à pied.
for, *prep.*, pour, (during) pendant, (since) depuis; *conj.*, car.
forbid, défendre (**à**; **to**, de).
force, la —.
forerunner, un avant-coureur (**206**, *b*).
foresee, prévoir, *irr.*
forest, la forêt.
forget, oublier.
former, premier; **the** —, celui-là (**120**); **-ly**, autrefois.
fortnight, quinze jours, une quinzaine.
fortune, la —.
fourteen, quatorze.
fox, le renard.
France, la —.
franc (coin), le —.
frank, franc (**51**); **-ly**, franchement.
Francis, François.
French, français.
fresh, frais (**51**).
friend, un ami, une amie.
from (*usually*) de; (*ind. obj.*) **à** (**187**, *b*); (*time*) depuis.
fruit, le —.

G

Gain (to), gagner; *n.*, le gain.
game (play), le jeu (**33**), (food) le gibier.
garden, le jardin.
gather, cueillir, *irr.*
general, *adj.*, —; *n.*, le — (**33**).
Geneva, la Génève.
gentle, doux (**53**).
German, allemand; **-y**, l'Allemagne, *f.*
get (obtain), obtenir, *irr.*; *intr.* (become) devenir, *irr.* (*être*); — **up**, se lever (**124**).
ghost, une ombre, le revenant (revenir).
girl, la (jeune) fille.
give, donner.
glad, aise, content (de); **to be** —, se rejouir (de).
glass, le verre.
glory, la gloire.
glove, le gant.
go, aller, *irr.*; — **away**, s'en aller; — **down**, descendre; — **out**, sortir; — **to-bed**, se coucher (*all être*).
God, (le) Dieu; **god**, dieu (**33**).
gold, or, *m.*
good, *adj.*, bon (**51**); *n.*, le bien; **-ness**, la bonté.
grammar, la grammaire.
grand, —; **-father**, grand-père, aïeul (**209**); **-mother**, grand' mère (**206**).
grant, accorder; **God** —, Dieu veuille (**262**, *c*).
gray, gris; **-brown**, gris-brun (**208**).
great, grand; **-ness**, la grandeur.
grieve, affliger; *intr.*, s'affliger (de, **126**).

grind, moudre, *irr.*
grow, croître, *irr.*
guilty, coupable.

H

Habit, une habitude.
half, demi (**162**); *n.*, la moitié (de).
hand, la main.
happen, arriver (*être*), se passer; — **to**, venir à (**235**); — **to be**, se trouver.
happy, heureux (**50**); **-iness**, le bonheur.
hardly, à peine (**181**, *b*).
haste, la hâte; **-en**, **make** —, se hâter (de).
hat, le chapeau (**33**).
hate (to), 'haïr (**236**); *n.*, la haine.
haunt, 'hanter.
have, avoir (*as aux. often* être, **105**, **148**); (cause) faire (**190**); — **just**, venir de (**235**); — **to**, devoir (**256**, *b*).
he, il, lui, celui (qui).
head, la tête, le chef (chief).
hear, entendre, ouïr.
heaven, le ciel (**33**, *d*).
help, aider (**to**, à), secourir, *irr.*
Henry, 'Henri.
her (*pers.*), la, lui, elle; *poss.*, son; **-s**, (le) sien, à elle; **-self**, elle-même, se, soi.
here, ici, —ci (**117**); — **is**, **are**, voici (**81**).
hero, le héros.
hesitate, hésiter.
hide, cacher; *intr.*, se cacher (**from**, à).
high, 'haut, élevé; **on** —, en haut.
him, le, lui, celui; **-self**, lui-même, se, soi.
his, *adj.*, son; *pron.*, (le) sien, à lui.
history, une histoire.
hold, tenir, *irr.*
holiday, un jour de fête.
home, la maison; *adv.*, **at** —, **home**, chez (lui, elle, etc.).
Homer, Homère.
hope (to), espérer (**124**); *n.*, une espérance, un espoir.
horror, une horreur.
horse, le cheval (**33**).
hospital, un hôtel-Dieu (**206**).
host, un hôte.
hot, chaud; **to be** — (person), avoir —; (weather) faire —.
hour, une heure.
house, la maison; **at**, **to**, **one's** —, chez (lui, elle, etc.).
how, comment; (exclamation) comme, que (**180**, *b*); — **many**, **much**, combien (de).
however, *conj.*, cependant; *adv.*, quelque . . . que (*subj.*).
hum, bourdonner; **-ing-bird**, un oiseau-mouche (**206**).
husband, le mari, époux.
hush, se taire, *irr.*; (make) —, faire taire.

I

I, je, moi.
idea, une idée.
idle, oisif, paresseux (**50**).
if, si (**220**).
immediately, sur le champ, tout de suite.
immortal, —tel (**51**).
important, —; **to be** —, importer.
impossible, —.
in, dans, en, à, (*after superl.*) de; — **it**, **them** (*often*) **y** (**93**).
inconsolable, —.
increase, croître, s'accroître, *irr.*
independence, —ance, *f.*
Indian, indien (**51**).

industry, la diligence; **-ious**, diligent.
inhabitant, un habitant.
injure, nuire (à), *irr.*
injustice, une —.
ink, encre, *f.*
instruct, instruire, *irr.*
interest (to), intéresser; **-ing**, —ant; *n.*, intérêt, *m.*
into (see **in**).
iron, le fer.
it, il, elle; le, la, lui; **ce** (122); **-s**, son, en (110); (le) sien; **-self**, lui (elle-) même, soi-même, se.
Ital-y, l'Italie, *f.*; **-ian**, —ien (51).

J

Jena, Iéna.
Jew, le Juif.
jewel, le bijou (33).
John, Jean.
join, joindre, *irr.*
joy, la joie.
Judah, Juda, *m.*
July, le juillet.
June, le juin.
just, *adj.*, juste; *adv.*, juste, exactement; **to have** —, venir de (*infin.*).
justice, la —.

K

Keep, (se) garder, (se) tenir, *irr.*
key, la clef.
kill, tuer.
kindness, la bonté.
king, le roi; **-dom**, le royaume.
know, (by sight, etc.) connaître, *irr.*; (in the mind), savoir, *irr.*; — (how to), savoir.

L

Lady, la dame.
lamp, la lampe.
large, grand, gros (51).
last, dernier (60); **-ly**, —ièrement; **at** —, enfin.
late, tard.
latter, dernier, celui-ci (120).
laugh, rire, *irr.* (**at**, de).
law, la loi; **-yer**, un avocat.
lazy, paresseux (50).
lead, conduire, *irr.*, mener (124).
learn, apprendre (**to**, à).
least, *adj.*, le moindre; *adv.*, le moins; **at** —, du moins.
leave, laisser, (depart) partir, *irr.* (*être*).
leg, la jambe.
lend, prêter.
less, *adj.*, moindre; *adv.*, moins.
lesson, la leçon.
let, laisser, permettre (à), *irr.*; *often idiom* = imperat., *or* que with subj.
letter, la lettre.
liberty, la liberté.
library, la bibliothèque.
lie, (falsely) mentir, *irr.*; (down) se coucher; (epitaph) gésir, *irr.*
life, la vie.
light (to), allumer; *n.*, la lumière.
like, *adj.*, semblable (à); *adv.*, comme.
like (to), aimer (**to**, à), vouloir, *irr.*
line, la ligne.
listen, écouter; — **to**, écouter.
little, *adj.*, petit; *adv.*, peu (de); **a** —, un peu (de).
live, vivre, *irr.*, (dwell) demeurer.
London, Londres, *m.*
long, *adj.*, long (51); *adv.* (time), longtemps; **as** — **as**, tant que; **no -er**, ne . . . , plus.

look, look at, regarder; — **for**, chercher.
lose, perdre.
loud, haut; *also adv.*
love (to), aimer (**to**, à); *n.*, amour, *m.*
low, bas (**51**).

M

Machine, la —; **sewing** —, — à coudre.
mail, la poste.
majority, la plupart.
make, faire, *irr.*, rendre.
male, mâle.
man, un homme, (*coll.*) les hommes.
many, beaucoup (de), bien (des).
map, la carte.
march, marcher; *tr.*, faire marcher; *n.*, la marche.
Mary, Marie.
master, le maître; **-piece**, le chef-d'œuvre (**206**).
matter, la matière; **no** —, n'importe; **what is the** —? (**86**).
may, *forms of* pouvoir; *or subj. mood.*
mean, vouloir, *irr.*, vouloir dire, *irr.*
meat, la viande.
medicine, la médecine.
meet, rencontrer; **-ing**, la rencontre.
mend, raccommoder.
merchant, le marchand.
merit (to), mériter; *n.*, le mérite.
midnight, le minuit.
mile, le mille.
milk, le lait.
mill, le moulin; **wind**—, à vent.
million, un million (de).
mine, (le) mien, à moi.
mingle, mêler (**with**, de).
minute, *n.*, la —.
misfortune, le malheur.
Miss, mademoiselle.
mistake, *n.*, une erreur, une faute; **to be** —**en**, se tromper.
modern, moderne.
money, argent, *m.*
month, le mois.
moon, la lune.
more, plus (de), davantage, encore (**179**); **no** —, ne . . . (pas) plus (**182**, *b*); **the** —, plus (**180**).
morning, le matin; **good** —, bonjour.
morrow (the), le lendemain; **to** —, demain.
most, *adv.*, le plus; (*absol.*) très, fort (**62**).
mother, la mère.
motive, le motif.
mouth, la bouche, (river) embouchure, *f.*
move, mouvoir, (moral) émouvoir; *intr.*, se —.
Mr., Mrs., monsieur, madame.
much, beaucoup (de); **as** —, autant (de); **so** —, tant (de); **how** —, combien (de); **too** —, trop (de).
murder, tuer, assassiner.
must, *forms of* falloir, devoir, *irr.*
my, mon, à moi; **-self**, moi-même, me.

N

Name, *n.*, le nom; **to** —, nommer, appeler; **to be** —**ed**, s'appeler (**124**).
Naples, Naples, *m.*
Napoleon, Napoléon.
nation, la —; **-al**, —**al** (**35**).
nature, la —.
nay! non, va!

near, près (de), auprès (de).
need, *n.*, le besoin; **to —**, avoir besoin (de).
neglect, négliger (**126**).
neighbor, le voisin, la voisine.
neither, ni l'un ni l'autre; **— . . . nor**, ni . . . ni (ne, **182**).
nephew, le neveu (**33**).
Nero, Néron.
never, ne . . . jamais, jamais (**182**).
new, nouveau (**54**); **-born**, nouveau-né.
news, la nouvelle.
next, *adj.*, prochain; *adv.*, après, ensuite.
niece, la nièce.
night, la nuit.
no, non, pas; *adj.*, pas un, ne . . . pas (de); **-body, — one**, ne . . . personne, personne (**182**)
noise, le bruit.
none, *see* **no**; (*for noun omitted*) en (**91**).
nor, ni (ne, **182**).
not, non, (non) pas; ne . . . pas (point, **182**).
nothing, ne . . . rien, rien (**182**).
now, maintenant, à présent.
number, le nombre.

O

Obedient, obéissant.
obey, obéir (à).
occasion, une —.
occupation, une —.
o'clock, heure(s).
of, de, à.
offend, offenser.
offer, offrir, *irr.*
often, souvent.
old, vieux (**54**), ancien (**51**); *idioms* (avoir, **86**); **older** (= elder) ainé; **— age**, la vieillesse.
omit, omettre, *irr.* (**to**, de).
on, sur, (*pres. part.*) en (**171**).
once, une fois, (formerly) autrefois; **— more**, encore une fois; (**all**) **at —**, tout à coup.
one (*num.*), un; (*indef.*) on (**153**); **one's**, son; **-self**, soi-même, se.
only, *adj.*, seul, unique; *adv.*, seulement, ne . . . que (**182**).
open, ouvrir, *irr.*; *adj.*, ouvert.
opera, opéra, *m.*
or, ou; (*neg.*) ni (**187**, *e*).
oracle, un oracle.
order, ordonner (à; **to**, de); *n.*, un ordre; **in — to**, pour, afin de (*infin.*); **in — that**, pour que, afin que (*subj.*).
other, autre; **-s**, les autres, autrui; (= more), encore (un, etc.).
ought, devoir, *irr.*
our, notre; **-s**, (le) nôtre, à nous; **-selves**, nous-mêmes.
out (of), hors, hors de.
outrage, un outrage.
outside, *adj.*, extérieur; *adv.*, au dehors (de).
over, sur; (number) plus de.
owe, devoir, *irr.*
own, propre (or omitted).

P

Page (book), la page.
paint, peindre, *irr.*
palace, le palais.
paper, le papier.
pardon (to), pardonner (à).
parent(s), père et mère, les parents.
Paris, Paris, *m.*
parliament, le parlement.
part, la partie.
pass, passer; (occur) se passer.
past, passé, dernier; **the —**, le passé.

pay, payer; — **for**, payer (125); — **a visit**, rendre visite.
peace, la paix.
pear, la poire.
pen, la plume.
pencil, le crayon.
people, le peuple; (*indefin.*), on, l'on (153).
perceive, apercevoir, s'apercevoir de, *irr.*
perhaps, peut-être (181, *c*).
perish, périr.
permit, permettre, *irr.* (à; to, de); **-mission**, la —.
person, la personne.
Persian, persan **-e**.
physician, le médecin.
picture, le tableau (33).
piece, la pièce, (bit) le morceau (33).
pity, la pitié; **to** —, avoir pitié (de).
place (to), placer (126); *n.*, la place, le lieu; **to take** —, avoir lieu.
play (to), jouer; *n.*, le jeu (33), (theatre) le spectacle.
please, plaire (à); — (do), veuillez (*infin.*); **if you** —, s'il vous plaît.
pleasure, le plaisir; **to take** — **in**, se plaire à.
plot, le complot.
poet, le poète; **poetry**, la poésie.
point, le point; **-ed**, pointu.
poison, le poison.
polite, poli; **-ly**, —ment.
pompous, pompeux (51); **-ly**, —sement.
poor, pauvre (60).
possess, posséder (124).
possible, —.
post-office, le bureau de poste.
pound, la livre.
poverty, la pauvreté.
power, le pouvoir, (might) la puissance.
praise, louer.
predict, prédire, *irr.*
prefer, préférer (124).
prescribe, prescrire, *irr.*
present (to), présenter; *n.*, le présent; *adj.*, présent; **at** —, à présent.
preserve, préserver; (fruits) confire, *irr.*
president, le président.
pretend, prétendre, (feign) feindre, *irr.* (**to**, de).
pretty, joli.
prevail, prévaloir, *irr.*
prevent, prévenir, *irr.*, empêcher (222, *b*).
price, le prix.
priest, le prêtre.
prince, le —; **-ess**, la —esse.
prison, la —; **to put in** —, mettre en —; **-er**, le prisonnier.
prize, le prix.
produce, produire, *irr.*; *n.*, le produit.
profound, profond; **-ly**, —ément.
promise, promettre (à; **to**, de).
prompt, —; **-ly**, —ement.
protect, protéger (124); **-ion**, la —; **-or**, le —eur.
proud, fier (51; **of**, de).
provide, pourvoir; **-ed that**, pourvu que (223).
prudence, la —.
Prussia, la Prusse; **-ian**, —ien (51).
punish, punir.
pupil (scholar), écolier **-ère**, élève, *m.*, *f.*
purse, la bourse.
pursue, poursuivre, *irr.*
put, mettre, *irr.*; — **on**, mettre.

Q

Queen, la reine.
question, la —.
quick, vite (176).

quiet, tranquille.
quite, tout (177), tout à fait.

R

Railroad, le chemin de fer.
rain, pleuvoir, *irr.*; *n.*, la pluie; **-bow**, un arc-en-ciel (206).
raise (lift), lever, (rear) élever (124).
Raphaël, —.
rapid, rapide; **-ly**, —ment.
rather, plutôt; (have) —, aimer mieux (191).
read, lire, *irr.*
reappear, reparaître, *irr.*
rear, élever (124).
reason, la raison; **-able**, —nable.
recall, rappeler, (remember) se rappeler (124).
receive, recevoir, *irr.*
recognize, reconnaître, *irr.*
reconstruct, reconstruire, *irr.*
red, rouge, (hair) roux (51).
re-elect, réélire, *irr.*
refuse, refuser (**to**, de).
regret (to), regretter (**to**, de); *n.*, le regret.
rejoice, se réjouir (de).
rely, se fier (**on**, à).
remain, rester (*être*).
remember, se souvenir, *irr.* (de).
repent, se repentir, *irr.* (de).
report (rumor), le bruit.
reputation, la réputation.
reread, relire, *irr.*
resay, redire, *irr.*
resentment, le ressentiment.
resolve, résoudre, *irr.*
result, résulter, s'ensuivre, *irr.*
retreat, la retraite.
return, (give back) rendre, (come back) revenir, *irr.* (*être*); *n.*, le retour.
revive, revivre, *irr.*
reward, la récompense.
rich, riche.
ridicule, se moquer (de); *n.*, le —.
right, droit, juste; **to be** —, avoir raison.
ring, (bell) sonner.
ring, *n.* (finger) la bague.
rise, se lever (124).
risk, risquer; *n.*, le risque.
river, la rivière.
road, le chemin.
robe, la —.
Rome, —, *f.*; **-an**, —ain.
room, (house) la chambre; **dining** —, salle à manger.
round, *adj.*, rond; (around) autour (de).
royal, — (47).
ruin (to), ruiner, perdre; *n.*, la ruine.
run, courir, *irr.*; — **up**, accourir, *irr.*

S

Sad, triste; **-ness**, la —esse.
sage, *adj.*, —; *n.*, un sage, philosophe.
same, (the) le même.
save, sauver.
say, dire, *irr.*
scene, la scène.
scholar, écolier, -ère, *m.*, *f.*
school, une école.
seat, asseoir, *irr.*; **-ed**, assis; — **one's self**, **take a** —, s'asseoir, *irr.*
see, voir, *irr.*; **-ing that**, vu que.
seek, chercher (**to**, à).
seem, sembler, paraître, *irr.*
self, (*in comp.*) même.
sell, vendre; *intr.*, se vendre.
send, envoyer, *irr.*; — **for**, — chercher.
Seneca, Sénèque.
sense, le sens.
sentence, la —.

serve, servir, *irr.*; **-ant**, le domestique, la servante.
set (put), mettre, *irr.*; (sun) se coucher.
several, plusieurs.
sew, coudre, *irr.*; **-ing machine**, une machine à coudre.
sheep, le mouton.
shine, luire, *irr.*
shoe, le soulier.
show, montrer, **faire voir**, *irr.*
shun, fuir, *irr.*
shut, fermer.
sick, malade.
silent (to be, keep —), se taire, *irr.*
silk, la soie.
simplicity, la —té.
since, *prep.*, depuis; *conj.* (time) depuis que, (reason) puisque.
sincere, sincère; **-ly**, —ment.
sing, chanter.
sir, monsieur.
sister, la sœur.
sit (down), s'asseoir, *irr.*
skin, la peau (**33**).
sky, le ciel (**209**).
slate, une ardoise.
sleep, dormir, *irr.*; **go to —**, s'endormir; *n.*, le sommeil; **to be —y**, avoir sommeil.
slow, lent; **-ly**, —ement.
small, petit.
smile, sourire, *irr.* (**at**, de; **on**, à).
so (thus), ainsi; —. . . **as**, aussi, si . . . que; —**far**, **much** . . . **as**, tant que; (it) le (**33**).
society, la société, le monde.
soldier, le soldat.
solo, le solo.
solve, résoudre, *irr.*
some, *adj.* (part. art. or prep., **39**), (few) quelque(s); *pron.*, quelques-uns (de), en (**91**); **-body**, **-one**, quelqu'un; **-thing**, quelque chose (**151**); **-times**, quelquefois.
son, le fils.
song, la chanson.
soon, bientôt; **-er**, plus tôt.
sorry (to be), s'affliger (**for**, de).
soul, une âme.
Spain, l'Espagne, *f.*
speak, parler.
spectacle, le —; **-s**, les lunettes, *f.* (for the eyes).
spread, répandre, se répandre.
spy, un espion.
star, une étoile.
start, (depart) partir, *irr.* (*être*).
state, état, *m.*
stay, rester (*être*), demeurer.
steal, voler.
steam, la vapeur; **-engine**, machine à —.
still, *adj.*, tranquille; *adv.*, encore (**181**, *b*); *conj.*, cependant.
stop, arrêter, s'arrêter.
story, un conte, une histoire.
street, la rue.
strike, frapper; (hour) sonner.
study, étudier; *n.*, une étude.
stupid, stupide, sot (**51**).
subject, *n.*, un sujet.
submit, se soumettre (à), *irr.*
succeed, réussir, (follow) succéder (à).
such, tel; — **a**, un tel; — (before adj.) si (**155**).
sudden, subit; **-ly**, —ement, tout à coup.
suffer, souffrir, *irr.*
suffice, suffire, *irr.* (à).
sugar, le sucre.
suit, convenir (à), (fit) seoir, *irr.* (à); **-able**, convenable, propre (à).
summer, un été.
sun, le soleil.
superior, supérieur.
support, supporter, soutenir, *irr.*

surprise, surprendre, *irr.*, *n.*, la surprise.
surrender, rendre; *intr.*, se rendre.
Swede, le suédois; **-en**, la Suède.
Switzerland, la Suisse.
sympathy, la sympathie.

T

Tailor, le tailleur.
take, prendre, *irr.*, (lead) mener (**124**), (remove) tirer; — **a seat**, s'asseoir; — **a walk**, se promener.
talent, le talent.
talk, parler.
tall, haut, (person) grand.
task, la tâche.
tea, le thé.
teach, enseigner, instruire, *irr.* (**to**, à); **-er**, le maître.
Te Deum, le Te-Deum (**34**).
tell, dire, *irr.* (person, à), (relate) raconter.
ten, dix.
tender, tendre; **-ly**, —ment.
terrible, —.
than, que; (*infin.*) que de; (*num.*) de.
thank, remercier,
that, *adj.*, ce; *pron.*, ce (là), cela, celui (là); *rel.*, qui, que, lequel; *conj.*, que, que . . . ne (**222**); — **which**, ce qui, ce que.
the (*def. art.*), le, la, les; — **more** (**180**).
thee, te, toi.
them, les, leur, eux, elles; **-selves**, eux(elles)-mêmes, se.
then, (time) alors, (sequence) puis.
there, là, y (**93**); — **is, are**, voila (**81**); il y a, il est (**158**).
they, ils, eux, elles; ceux (qui).
thief, le voleur.
thing, la chose.
think, penser (**of**, *opinion*, de; *object*, à), (believe) croire, *irr.*
this, *adj.*, ce (-ci); *pron.*, **ceci**, celui-ci; — **is**, voici (**81**).
thorn, une épine.
thou, tu, toi.
though, quoique, bien que (**223**).
thought, la pensée.
threaten, menacer (**126**).
three, trois.
throne, le trône.
thus, ainsi.
time, le temps, (repetition) la fois.
Titian, le Titien (*with art.*).
to, à, en; (*infin*) de, à; (purpose) pour.
to-day, aujourd'hui.
together, ensemble.
tomahawk, le casse-tête (**206**).
too, *adv.*, trop; — **much, many**, trop (de); *conj.*, aussi.
towards, (place) vers, (person) envers, (time) sur, vers.
town, la ville; **in** —, **en ville**.
toy, le joujou (**33**).
tragedy, la tragédie.
translate, traduire, *irr.*; **-tion**, la traduction.
tree, un arbre.
tremble, trembler, tressaillir, *irr.*
triumph, triompher (**over**, de).
trouble (to), troubler; *n.*, la peine.
true, vrai; **-ly**, -ment; **-th**, la vérité.
try, essayer (**to**, de; **126**), chercher (**to**, à).
two, deux; **twice**, deux fois.

U

Uncle, un oncle.
under, sous, dessous.

unhappy, malheureux (**50**).
unite, unir; **-ed States**, les États-Unis.
unless, à moins que . . . ne, que . . . ne (**223**).
unstitch, découdre, *irr.*
until, jusqu'à (ce que), que . . . ne (**223**).
upon, sur.
us, nous.
useful, utile.
usual, ordinaire; **-ly**, -ment.
usurp, usurper.

V

Very, très, fort, bien; *adj.*, même.
vice, le vice.
victory, la victoire; **-ious**, victorieux (**50**).
violent, — ; **-ly**, violemment.
virtue, la vertu; **-ous**, -eux (**50**).
visit, une visite.
vivid, vif (**50**); **-ly**, vivement.
voice, la voix.
volume, le —, le tome.

W

wages, les gages, *m.*
wait, attendre; — **for**, attendre.
walk, marcher, aller à pied (*être*); (take a —) se promener (**124**).
want, (need) avoir besoin de; (wish) vouloir, *irr.*
war, la guerre; **-ior**, le guerrier.
wash, laver.
watch, (time) la montre.
water, eau, *f.*; *v.* (flowers) arroser, (cattle) abreuver.
wear, (clothes) porter.
weather, le temps (**158**, *c*); good —, beau —.
week, la semaine.
well, *adv.*, bien.
what, *adj.*, quel; *int. pr.*, quoi, que; *rel. pr.*, ce qui, ce que; **-ever**, *adj.*, quelconque, quel que; *pron.*, quoi que.
when, quand, lorsque, où, que (**196**).
whence, d'où.
where, où.
whether, soit (que) . . . ou (que); si (**199**).
which, *adj.*, quel; *pron.*, lequel, qui, que; ce qui, ce que.
while, pendant que.
white, blanc (**51**).
who, qui, lequel, celui qui (*indef.*); **-ever**, quiconque, qui que, qui (**145**).
whole, entier (**51**), tout (**154**); *adv.*, **wholly**, tout (**177**).
whom, *int.*, qui; *rel.*, que, qui, (of) dont.
whose, *int.*, de qui, à qui; *rel.*, dont, duquel (**142**).
why, pourquoi, que (**184**).
wide, large, de largeur.
wife, la femme, épouse.
will (to), vouloir, *irr.*; *n.*, la volonté.
William, Guillaume.
willingly, volontiers.
window, la fenêtre.
wind, le vent.
wine, le vin.
wise, sage, prudent.
wish, vouloir, *irr.*, souhaiter.
with, (company) avec, (means, manner) de, (among) chez.
without, sans (**187**, *e*); *conj.*, sans que (**223**).
woman, la femme.
wonderful, merveilleux (**50**); **-ly**, -sement.
wood, le bois; **-en**, de bois.

word, le mot; **to send —**, envoyer dire (à).
work, travailler; *n.*, (labor) le travail (**33**), (product) un ouvrage, (book) une œuvre.
world, le monde.
worse, *adj.*, pire; *adv.*, pis (**179**).
worth (to be), valoir, *irr.*; **worthy**, digne.
would, (cond.) **200**; (vouloir) **262**, *c*; — **God**, (plaire) **214**, *b*.
wound, blesser.
wrath, la colère.
write, écrire, *irr.*; **-er**, un écrivain.
wrong, tort; **to be —**, avoir tort.

Y

Yard, le mètre.
year, un an; (continuous) une année.
yes, oui.
yesterday, hier.
yet, *adv.*, encore; *conj.*, cependant.
you, vous, tu, toi, te (**71**).
young, jeune.
your, votre; **-s** (le) vôtre; **-self**, vous-même, vous (*or* tu, etc., **71**).
youth, la jeunesse.

INDEX.

The index is by topics, chiefly; but a few individual words of special importance are listed. The reference is to sections. R = Remark; N = Note.

A, **à**, repeated, 32 N; ind. obj., 32, *b*; (= *from*) 187, *b*; infin. 191; in comps. 207.
Accents, 2, 8 R, 124.
Adjectives, plur. 35, 47; fem. 48–54; position, 57–61; compn. 62–4; syntax, 65; compd. 208.
Adverbs, 175–7; compn. 178–80; position, 181.
Articles, forms, 24–8; uses, 29, 30; for poss. 108, *b*.
Auxiliaries, 173; idioms, Appendix II.
Avoir, conj. 84; idioms, 86; aux. 87–9; impers. 158, *b*.

Bien (art.) 41 N; compn. 179.

Capitals, 3 N.
Cardinals (for ordin.) 165.
Case, 32, *b*.
Ce, idioms, 122–3.
Comparison, adj. 62–4; adv. 178–80.
Compound nouns, 206–7; adjs. 208; verbs, 229.
Conditional, form, 56; use, 200.
Conjugations, regular, 111; synopsis, 115; irreg. 224, etc.
Conjunctions, 194–6; with subj. 223.
Countries, names of, 29, *c*, 187, *f*.
Dans, 187, *f*.
Dates, 166.
De, rep. 32 N; part. 39–41; w. **en**, 92; w. indefs. 151 N; with nums. 166; w. pass. 164; *than*, 168; w. infin. 191; in comp. 207.
Demonstratives, adj. 116–7; pron. 118–23.
Devoir, aux. idioms, Appendix.

Elision, 23.
En (prep.), rep. 32 N; w. pres. part. 171; w. nouns, 187, *f*.
En (pron.), 91, 95; poss. 110.
Être, conj. 102; idioms, 103; aux. 104–5, 148.

Faire, idioms, 158, *c*, 191, 245.
Faut (il), idioms, 262, *b*.
Future, form, 55; use, 199; comp. 203.

Gender, 32, 219.
Gerund, 171.

H (mute or aspirate), 15, *d*.
Hour (o'clock), 166, *c*.

Il, idioms, 122, 156.

Imperative, form, 38, 94; pron. obj. 80, 101; use, 205.
Imperfect, form, 43; use, 198; comp. 202; for cond. 204.
Impersonal verb, 155–8.
Indefinites, 150; special forms, 151–5.
Indicative tenses, 197–204.
Infinitive, 188; without prep. 189–90; w. prep. 191–3; dep. on verbs (lists), p. 237.
Interrogative verb. 74–6, 181; adj. 127; pron. 128–131.
Intransitive verb, 105, 173.
Irregular nouns, 33–4, adjs. 50–4, 63; adv. 175, 179; verbs (List), 264; Table, p. 233.

Là, pron. 121.
Le, expletive, 82–3.
Lequel, interr. 128; rel. 141–2.
Linking (*liaison*), 22, 23 R.
Liquids, 19.
L'on, 153 N.
L'un (l'autre, etc.), 152.

Mood, indic. (tenses) 197–204; infin. 188–193; imperat. 205; subjunct. 210–223 (and footnotes, pp. 59, 60); alternative forms, 193 R, 215 R, 218 R.

Nasals, 16.
Ne, 77, 181; alone, 184, 221; not tr. 185, 222.
Negative verb, 77–8; idioms, 182–5; 221–2.
Ni . . . ni, 182, *d*, 195.
Nouns, gender, 32, 219; case, 32, *b*; plur. 33–4, 209; comp. 206–7.
Numerals, card. 159; ord. 161; other forms, 162; idioms, 165–8.

Object, noun, 32, *b*, 187; pron. (single) 79–80; (complex) 96–9; (repeated) 100–1; of combined verbs, 191.
O'clock (hour), 166, *c*.
On (l'on), indef. 153; for pass. 163.
Order of Words, Appendix I.
Ordinal numerals, 161.
Orthography (special forms), 8 R; conj. I, 124–6.
Ou . . . ou, 195.
Où, pron. 132, 146.

Par, (pass.) 163.
Participles, 67–9; pres. 170–1; past. 172; (in comp. tenses) 173–4.
Partitive, art. 39; prep. 41; pron. 91.
Passive, form, 104; use, 163.
Personal (see pronouns).
Plural nouns, 33–4; adj. 35, 47; comp. 206–8; special forms, 209.
Plus (de), 41; compn. 62, 178; (correl.), 180; neg. (ne), 182; (ne—pas), 182, *c*, N.
Position (order of words), Appendix I.
Possessive, adj. 106; pron. 107; idioms, 108–9.
Pouvoir, aux. idioms, Appendix II.
Prepositions, rep. 32 N; position 132 N; use, 186–7; with infin. 191–2; in comps. 207; special cases, see the titles.
Present tense, form, 37; use, 197; comp. 201.
Preterit tense, form 45; use, 198; comp. 202.
Pronouns, 70; pers. 71; disj. 72–3; conj. (single), 79, 90–5; (expletive), 82–3; (complex), 96–7; (repeated),

100–1. For other classes, see titles (demonst., etc.).
Proper nouns, 34; adjs. 3 N.

Quantity (vowels), 6, 15 R; advb. of, 41.
Que, in compn. 64; interr. 130; exclam. 131; rel. 139, 144; conj. 196; expletive, 196, *c*; repeating **si**, 220.
Qui, interr. 129; rel. 139; indef. 145.
Quoi, interr. 130; exclam. 131; rel. 143.

Reflexive, pron. 73 N; verb, 132; (simple), 135; (comp.), 148; idioms, 136–8; direct or indir. 148 N.
Relatives, 139–47; comp. 144–145; syntax, 146–7.
Repetition, art. 30; adj. 65; pron. obj, 100–1; prep. 32, *b*.

Sans (neg.), 187, *e*; infin. 193; — que, 223.
Self, emphatic, 73; reflex. 134.
Si (*if*), omitted, 195, *b*; mood, 220.
Stress (vocal), 5.
Subject (position of), see Order of Words.
Subjunctive mood, defined, 210–3; of contingency, 214; emotion, 215; indef. limit, 216; after neg. 217; after impers. 218; in conditions, 220; with **ne** only, 221; with **ne** not tr. 222; with conjs. 223.
Syllables, 4.

Tant (de), 41; exclam. 180, *b*.
Tel (un tel), 155.
Tenses, formation, 114; of indic. (simple), 197–200; (comp.), 201–4; of subj. 212.
Time, idioms, 166.
Titles, 3 N, 29, *d*; 108 N.
Tout, adj., pron. 154; adv. 177.
Towns, names of, 29, *d*; 187, *f*.
Tu, 71 N.

Un, art. 27; pron. 152; num. 160.

Verbs, reg. conj. 36, 111–3; interr. 74–6; negat. 77–8; pass. 104, 163; intrans. 105; reflex. 133–5 (idioms, 136); (comp.), 148; impers. 155–8; irreg. 224 (List, 264); comp. 229.
Venir, infin. idioms, 235.
Voici, **voilà**, 81.
Vous, 31 N; **vous-même**, 73.

Y, pron. 93, 95.
Y, vowel, 8 R, 125.
You, 31 N, 71 N; *yourself*, 73.